THE DABISTÁN,

OR

SCHOOL OF MANNERS.
PARIS.—PRINTED BY Mme De DONDEY-DUPRÉ,
PRINTER TO THE ORIENTAL TRANSLATION FUND OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND,
46, rue Saint-Louis, au Marais.
THE

DABISTÁN,

OR

SCHOOL OF MANNERS,

TRANSLATED FROM THE ORIGINAL PERSIAN,
WITH NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

BY

DAVID SHEA,

OF THE ORIENTAL DEPARTMENT IN THE HONORABLE EAST INDIA COMPANY'S COLLEGE;

AND

ANTHONY TROYER,

MEMBER OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETIES OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND, OF CALCUTTA AND PARIS, AND OF THE ETHNOLOGICAL SOCIETY OF PARIS;

EDITED, WITH A PRELIMINARY DISCOURSE, BY THE LATTER.

VOLUME III.

PARIS:

PRINTED FOR THE ORIENTAL TRANSLATION FUND OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

SOLD BY

BENJAMIN DUPERAT, BOOKSELLER TO THE BIBLIOTHEQUE ROYALE.

7, RUE DU CLOître SAINT-RENOY.

AND ALLEN AND CO., LEADENHALL-STREET, LONDON.

1843.
THE DABISTÁN,

OR

SCHOOL OF MANNERS.

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE RELIGION OF THE SA DÍKÍ'ÁHS.

These sectaries are followers of Musáylima. The people of Islam, "the true faith," qualify Musáy-

---

1 In the before quoted Memoir of H. T. Colebrooke (As. Res., vol. VII p. 342), we read, as taken from the account of Núrúkah of Shúster, what follows: "The Sadíks'ýáhs are a tribe of the faithful in Hindustan; "pious men, and disciples of Sayyad Cabíru 'ddín, who derived his "descent from Ismáil, son of Imám Jafér. This tribe is denominated "Sadíks'ýáhs, by reason of the 'sincere' (sádik) call of that Sayyad. "Although that appellation have, according to received notions, a "seeming relation to Abá hekr, whose partisans give him this title; yet "it is probable that the sect assumed that appellation for the sake of "concealment. However no advantage ever accrues to them from it: "on the contrary, the arrogant inhabitants of Hind, who are Hindús, "being retainers of the son of the impious Hind (meaning Hinda, the "mother of Máviyeh), have discovered their attachment to the sect of "Shíahs, and have revived against them the calumnies which, five hundred "years before, they broached against the Ismáilás. They maliciously

v. III.

1
lima as "the Liar." These sectaries call themselves also Rahmáníah; as they gave to Musaylima the title of Ríhm, "commiserator;" they assert, that the words: Bismilla hirrehma nírrehim, "in the name of the bountiful and merciful God," relate to him, that is: a God is the merciful Musaylima. Muhammed Kuli, the man so named, contracted friendship with the author of this work in the year of the Héjira 1055 (A. D. 1645) at the holy sepulchre. After charge them with impiety. Such is indeed their ancient practice. In short, nearly thirty thousand persons of this sect are settled in provinces of Hindustan, such as Multan, Lahóre, Déli, and Gujrat. Most of them subsist by commerce; they pay the fifth part of their gains to the descendants of Sayyad Cabir, who are their priests: and both preceptor and pupil, priest and layman, all are "zealous Shiás.

It will be evident that the author of the Dabistán speaks of a sect which bears the same name, but which owns another founder and another Koran, although possessing some tenets common to other sects.

Musaylima once professed the creed of Muhammed, before whom he appeared as one of the deputies sent by the tribe Henaifs, when they offered their submission to the prophet. But in A. D., 634 Musaylima declared himself a prophet in the country of Yamama, and gained a great number of followers; he dared even offer himself in a letter to Muhammed, as a partner of his prophetic mission, but received a refusal, with this address: "From Muhammed, the Apostle of God, to Musaylima, the Liar."

Mashhad, signifies properly any place where a martyr has been buried, and is particularly applied to the burying places of Imâms, such as that of Kerbela, near Kufa, before mentioned. But the town of Tûs, in Khorassan, has almost exchanged its proper name for that of Mashhad. "sepulchre," because the Imám Risa, son of Musa al Kâdem, was buried near that place. Is it that which is meant above? Al-
some friendly intercourse, he said: "To a true be-
believer, it is necessary to acknowledge Musaylima as
the bringer of the true intelligence and a prophet;
and if one does not so, his faith is not the true."
For a confirmation of this assertion, he adduced as
evidence some verses of the Koran, and said: "Mu-
saylima was in the divine mission a partner of the
dignity of the prophetic asylum, Muhammed, in
the same manner as Harun was with Moses."
He further maintained: "Two prophets are required
as being witnesses, and evidence wants two per-
sons, and if there be more, so much the better."
He then highly extolled his virtues and miracles,
such as his calling the moon until she came down
and before the eyes of his companions sat down on
his lap; as his going to dry trees, and praying so,

though the author says (Vol. II. p. 364), that he was in 1033 (1643) in
Lahore, which is about 1200 miles distant from Tus, his visiting, the same
year, both towns, is far from impossible. In the same year, we find him
in Kirtpur, in the mountainous part of the Panjab (ibid., p. 416), and in
Kabul, which is on the road from Lahore to Tus.

The moon acts a conspicuous part in the prestigious exhibitions of
magicians. There appeared during the reign of Muhammed Mahadi, the
third khalif of the Abbasides, from the year of the Hijra 158 to 169
(A. D. 774-785), in the town of Nekshab, in Khorassan, an impostor,
called Hakem ben Hasham, whose surname was Sassindah mah, "moon-
maker." Having but one eye, he used to hide his deformity under a
silver veil, or mask, whence he was called al Mokanna, "covered by a
veil." So concealed, he pretended nobody could bear the effulgence of
his face, like that of God himself. At the head of a numerous party, he
was not without difficulty reduced by the ruling Khalif. Hakem's par-
that they all became green; as having, when a new-
born child, given testimony of his prophetic gift, so
that a class of noble persons professed their faith in
his divine mission. That man besides said, that the
Koran is Muhammed's miracle, by which he bound
the tongue of emulation to all the eloquent men of
Arabia; and in like manner the Almighty God sent to
Musaylima a book, which they call the first Fārūk,
"separator;" this also became a binder of tongues
to the eloquent; and no man, except Muhammed
and Musaylima, is capable of understanding these two
books, the reading of which affords salvation in this
and in the other world; but to expound them is a
great crime. The Almighty God bestowed upon
Musaylima the favor of another necessary and vener-
able book, entitled "the second Fārūk," to the com-
mands of which it is indispensable to conform our
actions. What Muhammed had revealed is all
truth, and Musaylima, too, chose his way in that
direction; if some precepts of the latter and his
celestial book are contrary to the statements of Mu-
hammed, it is because Musaylima survived Muham-
med\(^1\) (upon whom be peace!), and cancelled some

\(^1\) Muhammed died on the 8th June, A. D. 632; Musaylima did not
long survive him. He was killed, with ten thousand of his soldiers, under
the reign of Abu-bekr, in A. D. 632, in a battle against Khaled, the son
of Valid, who was sent with an army against him. Although the party
of them by the command of God, as in like manner, during Muhammed’s life, some of his precepts have been obliterated. The man quoted from the heavenly book of Musaylima the following words: “Adopt the belief (O men!) that our God is the God of the world, and know, that he is the Creator of the universe and of its inhabitants; that he is above the creatures, none of whom is like him; say not, that he has no body; for it may be that he has a body, although not one like a body of his creatures: hand, eye, and ear of God are mentioned in the Furkán¹ which came from Muhammed; and what is stated in the first Fáruk, which is the book of Musaylima, is all truth; but the hand, the eye, and the ear of God are not like the hand and foot, and eye and ear of the creatures. Thus faith is required for an intercourse with God, and contemplation of the Creator; yet, whatever was found existing can be seen, but the vision of the eye, and the want of it, ought not to be taken in a confined sense, as faith is to be entertained that God shows himself to his servants in whatever manner he wills.” The man further proceeded to say: “Avoid discussions about antiquity, tra-

¹ Furkán, separating, discriminating, is another name for the Koran; and signifies any sacred book discriminating the right from wrong.
dition, and duration, and the evanescence or de-
struction of the world, because the world is the
creation of God, and as to the last judgment and
resurrection after death, attach your faith to them,
and be confident that you shall be raised to life,
and in that fix your thoughts, that it will be with
the same or another body, in this or in another
house, to heaven or to hell, to beatitude and re-
pose, to recompense or punishment; attach your
faith to this, and avoid diving too deep into it,
whether it will be in this or in another habitation;
believe in the angels of God, but say not that they
have wings and feathers, or that, although this
form be not essential to them, they nevertheless
show themselves in this form, and know that good
and bad, fine and ugly, are existing; but do not
say, that this is good and that bad; for that which
you call bad may be good, and inversely: but
whatever is commanded, that do.” The man
proceeded to say: “In the time of Muhammed no
Kiblah was fixed: men turned their faces some-
times towards Jerusalem, sometimes towards the
Kâbah of Mecca, and sometimes towards any
other place. After Muhammed, his companions
established by force that Kâbah should be the
Kiblah. After Muhammed it was ordered by Mu-
saylima, that turning the face towards the great
altar, or any determined object, is impiety, and a
sign of infidelity, because as no figure of whatever likeness from among living beings ought to be made a Kiblah, why should it be permitted to make a Kiblah of a house? Further, at the time of prayer, one may turn his face to whatever side he chooses, provided it be with this intention: I address myself to thee, who hath neither side nor figure." At the three daily prayers which Musaylima has prescribed, the worshipper turns his face to no particular side; so if he turned himself at midday-prayer to the east, before sunset he prays towards the west; never towards a fixed place, nor to a fixed house, because this is infidelity. These sectaries do not call the Kâbah "the house of God," as the Almighty God has no house, otherwise he would have a body. They do not use the prayers of the Sunnites, as prayer with them is that which God has prescribed, and not that which the prophet likes. When they feel a desire to worship God, they read the divine words, and then reassume their work; but in their prayer, they never pronounce the name of the prophet; because it is contrary to sound doctrine to mix the veneration of a creature with the service of God, and in the prayer nothing comes upon their tongue but the word of God, not even the sayings of the prophet. Moreover, this sect prays three times a day; for, of the five prayers ordered by Muhammed, Musaylima, by God's com-
mand, dispensed with the evening and morning prayer to Sahâh,¹ his wife, who was a prophetess, and sent to the people as the reward of an excellent genius: this was one of the suitable favors of the Lord to Musaylima, who himself was a prophet, and his mate, also a prophetess.

As to what is said, that God commanded Iblis to adore Adam, and that, because he disobeyed, Iblis was expelled from the celestial court—this tale is impious; because God does not command prostration before another object, nor induce any body to undue worship, as he did not create Iblis for the purpose of throwing men into error. In the second

¹ Thomas Erpenius, the translator of Elmacin, calls her Thegjazis (Hist. Saracenica, p. 19); her true name was Sijah, the daughter of Haret, of the tribe of the Tamimites, or Taalabites, according to Elmacin (loco citato). She declared herself a prophetess, and gained ascendancy in the country of Bahrein, along the south-western shores of the Persian gulf, and in almost the whole tract between Mecca and Bassora. She offered herself as wife to the new prophet, in Yamâmá, who married her, but she soon abandoned him.—(See Abulfeda, vol. i. pp. 208, 209.)

² We find in the Koran, chap. ii. v. 28, the following passage: 'When thy Lord said unto the angels: I am going to place a substitute on earth, they said: Wilt thou place there one that will do evil therein, and shed blood? but we celebrate thy praise, and sanctify thee. God answered: Verily, I know that which ye know not.—29. And he taught Adam the names of all things, and then proposed them to the angels, and said: Declare unto me the names of these things, if ye say truth.—30. They answered: Praise be unto thee; we have no knowledge but what thou teachest us, for thou art knowing and wise.—31. God said: O, Adam! tell them their names. God said: Did I not tell you that I know the secrets of heaven and earth; and know that what ye discover, and that which ye
Fářúk, it is stated that Iblis does not exist; the Almighty God gave man free choice, and the faculty of acting well or ill: wherefore he takes account of his good and bad conduct.

This sect also maintains that, for marriage, neither witnesses nor ceremonies are required; acquiescence and agreement of two persons in a retired place are sufficient. Further, although in the time of Muhammed (the blessing and peace of God be upon him!) it was permitted to ask in marriage the daughter of relations, such as that of a paternal or maternal uncle, yet, after Muhammed, it was prohibited; likewise, connexion between consanguineous individuals, which was wont of old, became forbidden in Muhammed's time. By Musaylima came the com-

conceal?—32. And when he said unto the angels: Worship Adam; they all worshipped him, except Iblis, who refused, and was puffed up with pride, and became of the number of unbelievers.—In Chapter VII. v. 11. God said unto him: What hindered thee from worshipping Adam, since I commanded thee? He answered: I am more excellent than he; thou hast created me of fire, and hast created him of clay.—42. God said: Get thee down therefore from paradise: for it is not fit that thou behave thyself proudly therein; get thee hence; thou shalt be one of the contemptible.—13. He answered: Give me respite until the day of resurrection.—V. 14. God said: Verily, thou shalt be one of those who are resipated.

—13. The devil said: Because thou hast degraded me, I will wait for men in thy strait way.—16. Then I will come upon them from before and from behind, and from their right hand and from their left, and thou shalt not find the greater part of them thankful.—17. God said unto him: Get thee hence, despised, and driven far away; verily, whoever of them shall follow thee, I will surely fill hell with you all, etc., etc.

(Sale's Translation.)
mand of God to take to wife the daughter of one, between whom and the suitor not the least relationship is known. To contract marriage with more than one woman is not legal, but if any one wishes more, he may take another on the condition of temporary cohabitation.

To purify before prayer with sand or dust, when water cannot be had, is not right.

When one possesses a slave, male or female, who is an unbeliever, this slave, adopting the true faith, becomes free without requiring the leave of his master.

Whatever animal feeds upon filth which pollutes, this to eat is not allowable. Domestic fowls are not to be eaten, because they are winged pigs.

Musaylima forbade to keep the fast of Ramezan, but instead of this he prescribed the fast at night, in such a manner that, from sunset to sunrise, nothing may be eat nor drunk; and also abstinence from sexual intercourse.

Moreover, he abolished circumcision, for avoiding resemblance with the Jews. He prohibited all intoxicating liquors, such as those produced from the palm-tree, opium, nuts, and the like.

Muhammed Kuli used to read much in the second Fárûk, the book of Musaylima, which, having collected, he recited, and said: this doctrine came to me from my father and my ancestors, who enjoyed
the noble society of Musaylima. He said and enjoined that, after the birth of a son, the first observance is not to approach one's wife; the woman and man ought to turn their mind to God, and if one cannot effect it, he ought at least not to see his wife but once a day. According to the second Fārūk, it is allowable to have intercourse with another woman, inasmuch as it is another sort of contract. Muhammed Kuli said: "I saw Musaylima repeatedly in dreams, in which he disclosed what was unknown to me, and said: When by orders of Abu-bekr, Musaylima underwent the death of a martyr; and other Khalifs were movers of this event, therefore the Almighty God made them suffer the curse of mankind; in the same manner as he threw the Jews, on account of the murder of Jesus, into error and perdition.

"The murderers of Musaylima are liars and vilians, and so are the murderers of Sáid Al Shāhāí Hamzah.""

1 Hamzah was an uncle of Muhammed, and one of the first abettors of the prophet; he was killed by a servant of the Habeshi race, called Vahshi, in the battle of Bedr fought by Muhammed against the Koreish, in the third year of the Hejira (A. D. 624); the same Vahshi killed Musaylima with the same spear with which he had pierced Hamza.-(Abul-feda, vol. I. pp. 93. 243).
CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE RELIGION OF THE VĀHADĪ H AND IMĀNA,

IN FOUR SECTIONS.

Section I. Of the appearance of the Individual Vahed, and an account of his person.

Section II. Upon some of the tenets of Vahed.

Section III. Upon some of the sayings of Vahed.

Section IV. Upon certain customs, forms of speech, and traditions of this sect.

Section I. — Of the appearance of the individual Vahed, and an account of his person.

Vāhed Mahmūd was born in Masjuan, a village in the country of Gilān.¹ He was learned, active, abstinent, austere, and eloquent; he appeared in the year of the Hejira 600 (A. D. 1205-6).² It is said

¹ A country between the Caspian and Euxine seas.
² Herbelot mentions (under the article Gogathai Khan, p. 363) a Mahmūd, surnamed Tarabi, from his native place Tarab, near Bokhara, as an impostor, who by tricks and false miracles gained so many followers as to be able to seize upon the town of Bokhara, and to make war upon the Moghuls, in the year of the Hejira 630 (A. D. 1232). This date makes him a contemporary with the Mahmūd of our text, in which, however, nothing more is to be found for enabling us to identify the one with the other. Such was the terror which the name of Mahmūd Tarabi inspired, that the Tartars, being led against his camp, were seized by a panic, and took to flight, in which many thousands of them were slaughtered by the
that when Muhammed’s body had attained a greater perfection, from it Mahmūd arose:

"We shall resuscitate thee in a place Mahmūd: praiseworthy."

The meaning of it is this: When in an elemental matter, the energy conjoins in such a manner that by it an exuberance results in the composition of the mineral form; then it may happen that it assumes such a superior aptness as to invest itself with a vegetable guise; when its faculty and fitness gains a further increase, then the animal vest adapts itself to a suitable shape, and becomes worthy, that the elemental matter, fitted for the dignity of a human constitution, converges to such an excellence as to manifest itself in the perfection of mankind. In this manner, the parts of the human body from the appearance of Adam were progressing in purity, until they attained the dignity of a Muhammed, who is the top of the ladder. In this time, as the perfection and purity advanced, Mahmūd appeared. On that account it was said:

"From Muhammed is the flight to Mahmūd:
As in the former there is less, and in the latter more (perfection)."

pursuing soldiers of Mahmūd, whilst he himself had been killed in his camp, by a random shot of an arrow from the Tartarian army. But his death remained concealed, and his friends spread the rumor of his voluntary but temporary disappearance. His brothers, Muhammed and Ali, were put at the head of the party, which was soon after overthrown by the Moghuls.
And the words which the lord of the prophetic asylum, Muhammed, addressed to Ali:

"...I and Ali proceed from one light; thy flesh is my flesh, and thy body is my body."

have this meaning: that the purity and energy of the bodily parts were collected in the prophets and the saints; and from them the bodies of Muhammed and Ali were kneaded, in such a manner that the chosen parts of Muhammed's and Ali's bodies being conjoined and mixed together, the person of Mahmidd was formed.

Section II.—An account of some of their tenets.

The author of this book heard from a person who was one of the safā, "pure" Durvishes, from the Durvish Bakáī Váhed, from the Durvish Ismáīl, and from Mizra Takí, from Shaikh Látef illa, and Shaikh Shahább, who belonged to the Imaná, what follows: Any single person is a being which longs after earth; but other elements also exist with an abhorrence of earth. These sectaries consider the sun as the spirit of fire, and call it the Kábah of worship, the fire-temple of obedience to the holy being. Hakím Khákani says:

"O Kábah of the traveller of heaven, ... O zemzem,¹ sacred well of fire to the world."

¹ Zemzem is the name of a famous well at Mecca. According to the
They hold the heaven to be air, and the moon to be the spirit of water. They agree upon transmigration in the following manner: when a man dies and is buried, the component parts of his body manifest themselves in the shape of minerals or vegetables, until the latter become the food of animals, or serve as aliment to mankind. These sectaries subjoin: in the food may reside intelligence and action; for the dispersed ingredients of a body are in the food; intelligence and action collect all in

Muhammedans, it was formed from the source which God made appear in favor of Ismâil and Hagar, his mother, whom Abraham drove from his house, and obliged to retire to Arabia. When afterwards the patriarch came to visit his banished son Ismâil, and built the square temple, called Kâbah, he bestowed upon him the possession of it and the surrounding country, since called Mecca. This place became an object of contest between Ismâil’s posterity and the Arabian tribe of Jorhamides. The latter, after having possessed themselves of it, were attacked by the former, but before yielding it, they threw the sacred black stone, with the two gazelles of massive gold which an Arabian king had presented to the temple, into the well, and then completely filled it up. So it remained until the time of an ancestor of Muhammed, called Abdal mothleb; he was admonished by an heavenly voice to clear the well, the situation of which was at the same time indicated to him. This was near the idols Assat and Neilah, which were first to be removed, in spite of their adorers, the Korâshites. The latter, having ceded the well, claimed to share the treasure which Abdal mothleb had found in it. The new contest was to be decided by Ebn Sâïd, a famous prophet, who lived on the confines of Syria. Upon the way to him, through a desert, when both parties were dying of thirst, a fountain which sprung up beneath the foot of Abdal mothleb’s camel brought about a reconciliation between them; the well was cleared; the treasure found was consecrated to the temple, which in after times gained so much celebrity.—*Herbelot after Khondemir.*
one place, where they experience no dispersion, although the conformation of the body may be dis-
joined; whether in the producing of a mineral, a vegetable, an animal, or a man.* They do not
agree upon the existence of a rational unsubstan-
tial soul. They know of no heaven without the elements, and believe the necessary original prin-
ciple to be a point of earth. Instead of Bismilla
hirrehma nurrehim, "in the name of the bountiful
and merciful God," they write "Istédin ba ne fseg
illazi la illah hú, "I assist myself of thy essence
which alone is God;" and instead of láysa kamsil-
lah shaya, "nothing is like it;" they say Ana merkeb
almabin, "I am the vehicle of him who explains the
truth."

SECTION III.—UPON SOME OF THE SAYINGS OF VAHED.
—The Mizán, "balance," is a book which Váhed
composed with many others; it is distinguished by
the word naskh and "treatise;" and each naskh and

* In the translation of this obscure passage between the two asterisks
(edit. of Calcutta, p. 375, l. 17, 18) I followed the manuscript of Oude,
which reads a little differently:
treatise has a particular name. In the Mizán, which is reputed among the naskhs, it is stated, that the materials of the world existed from the very beginning, which signifies from the first appearance of afrād, "rudimental units (monades?)," which are primordial, that is to say, the root of the before-said state, until the time when these rudimental units, tempered together, became vegetables; thence rose animals, which are called dabtah ul ares, "the rep-" "tiles of the world." Thus it existed until man was formed. The first mentioned state might have extended to sixteen thousand years; so that eight thousand years of the said number may be the period of Arabia, which is the superior, and eight thousand years the period of Ajem (Persia), which is the inferior period. In the sequel, when the said world, which is the era of the first mentioned rudimental units, had been so constituted as to admit the formation of man; then the duration of life, comprising the period of man, was to be also sixteen thousand years; of which eight thousand years should revolve for eight perfect prophets of Arabia, and other eight thousand years for eight perfect teachers of Ajem. Further, when the cycle of the two formations shall be completed, then the turn of the fundamental units is to reappear. After twice the said eight thousand, that is, sixteen thousand years, according to simple computation, when a perfect cycle of mankind and
the world, in sixty-four thousand years, on conditions exterior and interior, manifest and hidden, shall have been completed, then an entire period shall have received the seal.

**SECTION IV. ON CERTAIN CUSTOMS, FORMS OF SPEECH, AND TRADITIONS OF THIS SECT.**—Mahmid has treatises and rules conformable to the law of the prophet; but he interpreted the Koran according to his own creed. Of his established customs are the following: One living in solitude is called *vahed*, "recluse."

---

1 The period of rudimental units, vegetables, and
reptiles .................................. 16,000 years.
The period of mankind ....................... 16,000 —

Both periods .................................. 32,000 —
Multiplied by .................................. 2 —

Total .................................. 64,000 years.

2 It is not clear whether above is meant a *hermit*, or a *monk* of a distinct order. Monachism is not sanctioned by the strict rule of Islam, but it appears to be the natural spontaneous growth of Asia. In the first year of the Hejira (A. D. 622) forty-five citizens of Mecca associated with forty-five inhabitants of Medina in a sort of confraternity, and pledged themselves to community of property, and to a regular daily performance of religious practices in a spirit of penitence and mortification; they were called *Sufis*, of whom hereafter. Abu Bekr and Ali formed and presided over similar congregations. The latter conferred the presidency of it, under the mysterious name of *Khila'fat*, upon *Hassan Bas'ri* (mentioned in vol. II. p. 389, note 1). Some of their successors deviated from the rules of this first establishment, and, in the course of time, a multitude of monastic orders were founded, each headed by a chief called
Praises are due to the man devoted to this state, whose whole life is spent in holiness, poverty, and retirement; who feels no inclination for connexion; takes little, and no more than necessary, food; such a man will rise to perfection, and become a "váhéd," attaining the divine dignity which leads to that of a "teacher." If the pious person feels himself inclined to connexion with a woman, let him enjoy her once in his whole life; if he cannot otherwise, once in one year; if he requires more, once in forty days; if this be not enough, once in a month; if still more, once in a week.

A váhéd is reported to have given the following information: When one descends from the state of a man to the state of an irrational animal, or from that to a vegetable, or from a vegetable becomes a mineral; in this manner, by reaction of impressions and dispositions, he receives in each state a mark (mahs), which he bears from formation to formation:

"Fear the intelligence of the believer, because he sees by the light of God."

*Pir or Sháikh.* One of the most celebrated orders was that founded in the year of the Hijra 37 (A. D. 657) by Uweis Karni, a native of Karn, in Yemen. The most distinguished in the Ottoman empire are thirty-two in number, founded between the years of the Hijra 149 and 1164 (A. D. 776 and 1730). Three of them descend from the congregation of Abu Bekr, and the rest from that of Ali.—(See *Tableau général de l'Empire ottoman*, tome IVme, 1re partie, par d'Ohsson, p. 617 et seq.)
Mahn in the dictionary is interpreted "a computer," but in the idiom of this tribe it signifies (as just said) that every individual, in his disposition and action, bears a vestige of the disposition of a former state. It is a part of their persuasion, that, when an individual enters for the first time in a society, the name of whatever in the three kingdoms of nature he first brings upon his tongue, is supposed to be the *ihs*a, or "mark," that in a former state he had been the very thing the name of which had fallen from his tongue.

These sectaries hold, that pilgrims exercise the profession of cheats, wearing a garment marked with stripes, which they call the vest of Kerbála; and that they practise but hypocrisy and deceit. When, according to their low disposition, they descend to the state of brutes, they become animals, which the Hindus call *Galhari*, "squirrel;" and when transformed into vegetables, they become striped pumpkins, or weak jujube-trees; when they undergo the transformation into minerals, they are onyxes. In this sense this sect interprets the *mahn*, or "mark." Lawyers and governors, who wash hands and mouth, friends of white garments, be-

 strftime -> 1

1 *mahn* and *ihs*a, are derived from the same root, *has*, "making an impression;" *ihs*a is interpreted in Richardon’s Dict., new ed., "numbering, computing."
come geese, which at every moment plunge their head into water; in the state of vegetables, they assume the form of sticks for rubbing teeth, of reading-sticks, and of mats to cover the place of prayer; and in the state of minerals, they figure as hard stones, stones of sepulchres, and magnets. The glow-worms are torch-bearers, who, descending by degrees, came to take this shape. A dog, having been in his former state a Turk of the tribe Kazel-bâsh, and his crooked sword having become his tail, betrays his Turkish origin by coming forth at the call khach: which in Turkish means "forth." These sectaries further say, that the iron by which a prophet or a saint has been killed, is that which acquires excellence.

"Saints, when they desire the voyage to the eternal kingdom,
Desire from the edge of thy blade the takbir, magnifying
' exclamation,' of death."

They also hold, that the Imám Hossain from state to state descended from Moses, and that Yezíd (his murderer) descended from Pharaoh. Moses, in his time, drowned Pharaoh in the waters of the Nile, and obtained the victory over him; but in the latter state Moses, having become Hossain, and Pha-

---

1 This Turkish word signifies "red head," and is applied by the Turks to the Persians, who, since the time of Ismâil Sofi, the founder of the present dynasty of Persia, wear a red turban with twelve folds around it, in honor of the twelve Imâms.

2 This consists in exclaiming "God is greatest."
raoh, Yeziıd, the latter did not give to Hossain the water of the Ferât, "Euphrates," but with the water of the sharp steel, deprived his body of life.

These men further assert that, whatever sorts of minerals, vegetables, and animals are black, were formerly black-faced men, and whatever are white, were men with a white skin.

These sectaries all venerate the sun, and profess that he is the Kiblah; and the door of the Kâbah facing the sun refers to this meaning, that the sun is the true Kiblah; they have a prayer which they chant with their face turned towards the sun.

They maintain that, when the period of Ajem takes place, men will direct their road to God, and they venerate these men, and hold human nature to be divine. Their salutation is: Alla, alla. When the period of Ajem is completed, men will remain, and they think that the men whom we venerate were superior in rank to those who now exist; on which account the latter continue to form idols similar to men, and worship them. The worship of idols will prevail, until the period of Ajem returns, and this will be its mode of continuance.

Mahmûd called himself a Vâhed, and declared himself to be the Mahdy promised, whose appearance was predicted by the prophet; he said, that the religion of Muhammed is cancelled, and that now the true faith is that of Mahmûd: as was said:
"The time is come; the accomplishment of sayings is Mahmūd:
"Whatsoever reproach the Arab threw upon Ajem, it is over."

His disciples are dispersed in the four quarters of the world, and in the whole country of Iran a great number of them resides, but they dare not make themselves known, because the King, now the inhabitant of heaven, Shah Abás, son of Shah Khodábendah Sáfavi, put many of them to death. The belief of the Mahmúdián is, that Shah Abás, when he had met Taráb and Kamál, who were perfect Váhadís, and taken information from them, wanted to publish them as his own, and on that account killed them both. They subjoin that, although he had great pretensions, yet he never attained perfection; because, on account of the world and ostentation, he had destroyed the perfect. The author of this work heard from an Amín: "Shah Abás was a perfect Amín, and killed whom-ever he did not find well founded in this creed. "Thus, he admitted me to his society, and desired me to remain in Is fahán; when I did not consent to it, he granted me the expenses of my journey to India." It is said, that in these times Shah Abás came on foot to visit the place of Hossein's martyrdom, that is, Kerhála, where he said to Taráb: "I feel pain from my foot journey." Taráb answered: "This is owing to the inconsistency of thy natural intellect; for if the Imám for whose
sake thou hast performed the journey joined God, why seekest thou the nether place of his martyr-
dom; and if he has not joined God, what hast thou
to hope from him? Find thou a living Imám.” The Shah asked: “Who is the living Imám?” The saint answered: “I.” The king replied: “Well, I shall fire a ball from a gun upon thee; if it
takes no effect, I will follow thee.” Tārāb gave this answer: “Your Imám, Rizá, died by the grain
of a grape; how shall I resist the ball of a gun?” At last the Shah fired upon and killed him. As Kamāl openly professed the creed of Tārāb, the king associated him with the latter.

It is reported, that one of the Imanás came to Hosséin Khan, of Shám, and having converted him

1 Shah Abbas I. has been already mentioned in a note (vol. II. p. 146), where, according to sir John Malcolm’s History of Persia, the duration of his reign is stated to have been forty-three years; his age seventy; and the date of his death A. D. 1628; somewhat differently from Herbelot, who makes his reign forty-five, his age sixty-three, and the date of his death A. D. 1629. Abbas I., called the Great, on account of his magnificent buildings, and his skilful interior policy, was very much attached to the religion of Ali, which was always, until our days, dominant in Persia; his taking possession of Baghdád, Nudjef, Kerbelah, Kásmin, and Sámerah, where the remains of Ali and his descendants are buried, was more agreeable to the Persians than the whole of his other conquests; dressed with the mantle of the saints of Arbeli, that is of Sofá and Haidar, ancestors of the present Persian kings, Abbas was almost adored by his subjects. This renders the recital above, respecting his religious zeal, very probable. It will be remembered that this Shah sent sir George Shirley as his ambassador to England; and that king James I. dispatched sir Drodmore Cotton on an embassy to Persia, in 1626.
to his creed, he heard the following speech from him: "One day, when during the Maheram they read the history of the martyrdom of Hossein, and he too (Hossein Khan) was weeping, Shah Abás said: 'You, why do you cry, as if it were the Shambilus (that is to say, the natives of Shām) who did the action?' The answer was: 'We do not cry on account of Hossein: but because from our number also fine youths were killed.'"

"With the same eyes with which you look on us, With the same eyes is it, that we look on you."

The Duniahs, a particular sect, so called in the language of the Imanahs, think slightly of Hossein. On account of their meanness, they made no progress in the religion of Mahmūd. Azīzi, one of the Muselmāns of Shirāz, told the author of this book in Lahore: "I once reviled Mahmūd; at night I saw him in a dream; he approached me with a lightning-flashing face, and said: 'Hast thou perused my works?' I answered, 'I have.' He subjoined: 'Why dost thou speak abusively of me? If thou perseverest in this manner, I will chastise thee.'"

It is reported by the Vāhadiš, that Khajah Háfiz of Shirāz professed also this creed. As Mahmūd dwelt a long time upon the border of the river Rūdāres, the Khajah said:

"O zephir! when thou passest over the border of Rūdāres,"
"Imprint kisses upon the ground of that river, and perfume the air

with musk."

A person called Fakher eddin, who was one of this sect, gave the information that, according to the report of the Duniah. Mahmud threw himself into aqua fortis;¹ but this rumor is false, and proceeded from rancor. A great number of learned and pious persons, who were contemporaries of the founder of this sect, or lived soon after him, followed and professed his doctrine.

CHAPTER IX.

OF THE RELIGION OF THE ROSHENIAN: IN THREE SECTIONS.

Sect. I.—Of the appearance of Miyán Bayezid, and some of his sayings.

Sect. II.—Some account of his proceedings.

Sect. III.—Account of his sons.

SECTION I.—Of the appearance of the lord Miyán Bâyezid.

¹ This was the manner of death chosen by Mokanna, in the year of the Hejira 563 (A. D. 776). This upstart prophet (see note 1, p. 3), being pent up in a mountain-castle by the forces of the khalif Mohadi, without hope of escape, poisoned the garrison and his family, and then plunged into a vessel full of aqua fortis, which consumed every part of his body except his hair; he hoped that, from his disappearance, he should be
In the Hālmāneh, a true work from Bāyezid's pen, it is stated that the lord Miḥyān Bāyezid Ansārī was the son of Shaikh Abdullah, who descended in the seventh generation from Shaikh Sirāj-eddin Ansārī, and that, in the latter time of the dominion of the Afghans, he was born in the town of Jalandher in the Panjab.¹ A year after this event, the blessed lord Zahir-eddin Bāber Pādshāh, having obtained a victory over the Afghans, conquered Hind. In the history of the Moghuls it is recorded that, in the year of the Hejira 952 (A. D. 1525)² the blessed lord

supposed to have been taken up to heaven. One of his concubines, who by concealment had escaped destruction, and had seen everything, revealed what had taken place; but many of his followers continued to believe in his divinity and future reappearance.

I shall here remark, that destroying human bodies by means of aqua fortis is an ancient practice, mentioned in the Desārīr (Engl. transl., p. 20), and accounts for the fact of so many funeral urns being found in Asia without ashes in them.

¹ Ansār signifies "protectors, defenders," and is a word particularly applied to the citizens of Madina who assisted Muhammed when he was obliged to fly from Mecca. Herbelot mentions as one of the most illustrious who bore this surname Abul Abbas Ahmed ben Abdullah, without the date of his birth or death, a Spaniard who wrote a Commentary upon the Modilakat, or poems suspended in the temple of Mecca; another who wrote upon physiognomy; and a third who composed a treatise upon coffee. The last was, according to Silvestre de Sacy (see Chrestom. ar., t. 1. p. 441), originally from Madina, a native of Jejireh, and wrote in the year of the Hejira 966 or 996 (A. D. 1458 or 1487). The family and native place of the above-mentioned Ansārī, were in the Panjab, although his ancestors might have come from Arabia.

² This was in 1526.—See vol. ii., p. 249.)
Báber Pádshah defeated Ibráhím Khán Afghán. In the before-said Hálnámeh is to be found that the mother of Miyán Báyezíd was called Bání, and that the father of Bání and the grandfather of Abd ullah were brothers, and had their residence in the town of Jalendher. Miyán Báyezíd was born in this place. The father of Abdullah asked Bání, the daughter of Muhammed Amin, in marriage for his son Abd ullah. The father of Báyezíd Abd ullah resided at Kánígaram, which is situated in Kóhistan (the hilly country) of the Afghans. When the conquests of the Moghuls began to extend, Bání also came with Báyezíd to Kánígaram. Abd ullah had no liking for Bání, on which account he repudiated her; and Miyán Báyezíd experienced many sufferings from the enmity of another wife of Abd ullah, and from the son of the wife of Yàkub, besides the carelessness of his father.

It was the custom of Miyán Bayezíd that, whenever he went to tend his own field, he took care also of the fields of others, and guarded them. From his infancy he felt a disposition towards the first cause, so as to investigate—“the heavens and the earth are here; but where is God?” When Khájjah Ismá’il was blessed in a dream by a revelation, he devoted himself to austere practices of

1 The district of Kanigaram is on the borders of Kandahar.
piety, and many persons who partook in his exercises, derived benefit from them. Báyezid wished to become his disciple; but Abd ullah forbade it, saying: "It is a disgrace to me that thou shouldst be the disciple of the meanest of our relations; go to the sons of Shaikh Bahá-eddín Zakariá." Báyezid replied: "The character of a Shaikh is no inheritance." Finally, Báyezid was called by a mysterious influence to sanctity, and passed through the gradations of sheridát, "external law;" hakiket, "real" ality;" märifet, "true knowledge;" kurbet, "prox- imity;" vásalet, "union;" and sekiúnat, "dwelling in God." Many men joined him, at which the envious were vexed, and he invited to him the crowd which had not attained the same degree. With Báyezid lineage obtained no respect, but only knowledge and virtue were valued, as

"Paradise belongs to the servants of God, let them
"Be habshís, 'negroes,' and hell is for the depraved,
"Let them be saíds of Koresh extraction."

He saw God manifest:

"Peradventure you may see your God made manifest."

This Shaikh was born A. D. 1169, in Kot-Karor, a town in Multan. After having travelled, and acquired celebrity as a saint, he returned to Multan, where he made a great number of disciples. His posterity preserved the fame of their ancestor to the times of Bayazid.—(See Mémoire sur la Religion musulmane dans l'Inde, par M. Garcin de Tassy, p. 98.)
And the order was given to Bâyezîd to say:

"I have seen thee by thee; I have heard thee from thee."

God said to him further:

"The disgrace of this world is lighter than the disgrace
Of thy future world; haste towards what is good; be slow
Towards what is bad."

And the Lord God announced to him:

"I have established as duties the exterior and the interior worship:
The exterior worship as a duty for acquiring knowledge, and the
Interior worship as a perpetual duty."

Bâyezîd was perplexed: "If I offer prayers I am
an idolator, and if I neglect them I am an infidel;
for it is said:

"The offering of prayers is idolatry, and the neglect of them
infidelity."

Then the command arrived: "Perform the prayers
of the prophet;" he asked: "What prayers
are these?" The Almighty God said: "The
praise of the Divinity." Afterwards he chose this
prayer, as it is said:

"The worship of those who are attached to the unity of God is, before
men, like the worship of worshippers; but before God, it participates
in the object of worship itself."

Bâyezîd devoted himself so much more to secret
practices of piety, about which the prophet has said:

"The best remembrance of God is secret remembrance, and the best
food is that which is sufficient."

And again:

"Remember your God morning and evening; and be not one of the
negligent."
His friends saw in a night dream, and he himself heard the voice, that Báyezid should be called Miyán Róshen, and he obtained eternal life, according to the words of God:

"Say not of him who is slain in the way of the Lord, that he is dead,
"but that he is alive; but you cannot distinguish the deaf, the dumb,
"and the blind; nor can they reply to you: for they are deaf in hearing
"the truth, dumb in speaking the truth, and blind in seeing the truth."

He made himself free of the crowd of such description; and frequently divine inspiration came upon him. Now, according to the prophetic saying:

"Inspiration is a light which descends into the heart, and displays the
"real nature of the things according as they are."

And Jabrîl also descended to him; we read in the Körán:

"I send down angels and the spirit, at my pleasure, on whomsoever
"I please among my servants."

God Almighty elected him also for an apostle, and conferred upon him the gift of prophecy:

"I have sent none before thee, excepting those persons who have
"received revelation."

The lord Miyán Róshen, that is, Báyezid, was extremely righteous in his conduct, as it is said:

"When God intends the good of one of his creatures, he gives him an
"admonisher in his spirit, and a restrainer in his heart; so that, of his
"own accord, he admonishes and restrains himself."

Miyán Róshen, that is, Báyezid, said to the learned: "What says the confession of the faith?" The reply was: "We bear testimony that there is
"no god but God;" that is: we testify that there is no god worthy to be worshipped but God Almighty. Míyán Báyazíd said: "If one is not acquainted with Lord Almighty, and says: 'I am acquainted with him,' he is a liar; as it is said:

"He who sees not God, knows not God."

Móuláná Zakariá said to Míyán Báyazíd: "Thou sayest that thou art acquainted with the heart, and thou proclai mest thyself the master of opening the hearts; give me information of my heart, and if this proves to be true, I shall then place my confidence in thee." Míyán Róshan Báyazíd replied: "I am the master of opening the hearts; but there is no heart in thee; if thou hadst possessed a heart, I should have given thee information about it." Then Móuláná Zikeriá declared (to those about him): "Kill me first; if a heart comes forth from my body, then put Báyazíd to death, and if none appear, then let him be safe." Míyán Báyazíd said: "The heart which thou mentionest will come forth if a calf, a kid, or a dog be killed; but that lump of flesh is not the heart. The Arabian prophet says:

"The heart of the faithful is more elevated than the ninth or empty heaven; and more spacious than the extent of the ninth heaven (the throne of God)."

"And again:

"Hearts bear witness of hearts."
Moulána Zakariá said to him: "Thou takest thyself for a master of opening the tombs; let us go together to a burying ground, that the dead may converse with thee." Miyán Báyezíd replied: "If thou didst listen to the voice of the dead, I should not call thee an infidel." The author of this work observed to Miyan, who was attached to the Roshi-nian persuasion: "If, instead of these words, the lord Miyân had said: When I hear your voice, it is the voice of the dead, and proceeds from the tomb of the corporeal members, it would have been better." Being pleased with this observation, the Miyân wrote down upon the margin of the Háláméh, that this also is the speech of the lord Miyân. The Móbed says:

"Between our friends we saw and we gave
To the searchers of the road a mark without a mark."

Then the learned said to Miyán Báyezíd: "By what word or deed of thine shall men believe in thee?" Miyán Róshen Báyezíd replied: "Let there be one of your number, the best and ablest, who applies to science and practises devotion; let him join me, and according to my direction perform exercises of worship and piety; if he find a superior advantage, then believe in me."

A person named Malik Mirzá said: "O Báyezíd, beware of arrogant speech, and call not men detestable; whoever likes, may follow thy path, but if
"he does not like it, let him remain away from it." Miyán Róshen Báyezíd answered: "I will propose a simile: if in a house which should have but one door, a great number of persons had fallen asleep, and in that house fire had broken out; if by accident one person should be awake, ought he to awake the others, or not?" His adversaries said: "O Báyezíd, since God Almighty has charged thee with his orders, declare, 'Jabriyil descended to me, and I am the Mahdi;' but call not the people infidels and detestable."

Miyán Róshen Bayazíd did not think it right to eat of the flesh of an animal killed by a person whom he did not know, and who did not adhere to the rule of the unity of God. Báyezíd knew that:

"A worldly wise man, before man, is living, but before God, dead; his form is like the form of a man, but his qualities like the qualities of beasts; whilst a man, knowing God, is living before God; his form is like the form of a man, and his qualities are like the qualities of the merciful God."

Báyezid said to his father Abdullah: "The Arabian prophet has declared:

"Sheriá't, the law, is like night; Taríkat, religious rule, is like the stars; Hakiket, the truth, is like the moon; and Márifet, the true knowledge, like the sun; and nothing is superior to the sun."

Miyán Báyezíd Róshen said: "The matter of the law rests upon the five fundamental principles of the Muselmáns."

1 These are: 1. the profession of the faith; 2. the stated prayers; 3.
Pronouncing the words of the faith, and joining to the words the belief in their truth; these are the actions of the law. The *tasbih,* "rosary;" the *tahlil,* "praise of God;" the being constantly employed in the verbal commemoration of the *attributes of God;* the guarding of the heart from temptation: this is the business of *tarikat,* "religious rule."

To keep the fast of the month Ramazan, and to abstain from eating, drinking, and sexual intercourse; this is the business of *sheri'dt,* "the law." Fasting beyond the demands of duty; not filling the belly, but training it to a scanty diet; and restraining the body from what is bad: this is the business of *tarikat.*

The *Zacat,* "stated alms," and the giving of the tithe, is the business of *sheri'dt;* but the distribution of food and raiment to the fakirs and performers of fasts, and the taking by the hand the distressed, is the business of *tarikat.*

To perform the circuit around the house of the friend of God,¹ and to be free from wickedness, and crime, and warring, is the business of the *sheri'dt;* but to perform the circuit of the house of the friend of God, to wit the heart,² to combat bodily propen-

religious fasting; 4. *Haj,* "the pilgrimage;" 5. *Zacat,* "the stated alms."

¹ Abraham, the supposed builder of the Kâbah.
² We find in the fifth sermon of Sâdi: "He who travels to the Kâbah on foot makes the circuit of the Kâbah; but he who makes the pilgrimage
sities, and to worship the angels, is the business of tarikat.

To meditate constantly on the Almighty God, to place confidence in the instructions received, to discard from the heart the exterior veil, and to fix the view on the perfection of the celestial object of our affection: this is the business of hakikat, "truth."

To view the nature of God with the eye of the heart, and to see him face to face in every mansion and on every side, with the light of the intellect, and to cause no injury to the creatures of the All-Just: this is the business of marifat, "true knowledge."

To know the All-Just, and to perceive and comprehend the sound of the tasbih, "rosary:" this is the business of kurbet, "proximity to God."

To choose self-abnegation, to perform every thing in the essence of the All-Nourisher, to practise renunciation of all superfluities, and to carry in one's self the proof of the true sense of the divine union: this is was'allet, "union with God."

To annihilate one's self before Deity absolute, and in God to be eternal and absolute; to become one with the unity, and to beware of evil: this is the business of tawhid, "coalescence with God."

To become an inmate and resident, to assume the

of the Kábáb, in his heart, is encircled by the Kábáb.—(Transact. of Lit. Soc. of Bombay, vol. I. p. 181.)

* We see here the fundamental ideas of that mysticism which was formed into a particular system by the Sufis, of whom hereafter.
attributes of God absolute, to divorce from one's own attributes: this is the business of saciunat, "in-dwelling in God," and there is no superior station beyond saciunat.

The terms kurbat, vasalek, vahek, and saciunat are peculiar to the style of the lord Miyán Róshen Báyezid, who places them higher than sheridat, térkat, and márifat.

At that time it was the custom, when friends had been separated and met again, on meeting, their first inquiries were about the health, wealth, and children of each other. But the friends of Miyán Róshen Báyezid first inquired about each other's faith, religious thoughts, zeal, love, and knowledge of the All-Just, and afterwards about their health and welfare. When they made inquiry about any other person, it was in the following manner: "How is he with respect to religion and faith? " does he keep the affection of the friends of God?" and in these things they rejoiced. The words of the prophet are:

"Verily, God does not regard your forms nor your wealth,
"But he regards your hearts and your actions."

Miyán Báyezid, in his early years, used to conform to the five fundamental principles of the Muslim faith, such as the confession of faith, to say prayers five times a-day, and to keep the fasts; but as he was not possessor of a sufficient estate, it was
not necessary for him to give the stated alms. He was desirous to perform the pilgrimage, but he was then too young for it, so it was postponed until he attained the truth of his religion. The words of God Almighty are:

"Verily, I am near to mankind, nearer than their own necks; there is no separation between me and mankind; and I am one with mankind; but mankind know it not: nor can a man attain the knowledge of me, unless by the means of the assiduous perusal of the sacred volume, and not by much travel of the feet; but he may attain the knowledge of me by ardent meditation, and, by obedience, a man becomes perfect."

Thus far from the Hál-námeh of Miyán Báyazid.

SECTION II.: AN ACCOUNT OF THE HISTORY OF THE LORD MIYÁN ROŠHEN BÁYAZÍD.

Báyazid felt himself a prophet, and invited mankind to religious austerity; he caused them to say prayers, but indicated them no determined quarter to which they ought to turn, as the sacred text says:

"Wherever you turn, you turn towards God."

He said, religious bathing in water is not necessary; for, as soon as the wind blows upon us, the body is purified; inasmuch as the four elements are equally pure. He said, whoever knows not himself and God, is not a man; and if he be hurtful, he may
be accounted to have the nature of a wolf, tiger, serpent, or scorpion. The Arabian prophet has said:

"Kill a harmful creature before it causes harm."

If such a person is well-behaved, and says prayers, he has the disposition of an ox, or sheep, and to kill him is lawful. On that account he ordered his self-conceited adversaries to be killed, as they were to be regarded as brute beasts; thus it is stated in the Koran:

"They are like brute beasts, nay worse."

He said: whoever does not know himself, and has no notion of eternal life, and everlasting existence, is dead, and the property of a dead man, whose heirs are also as the dead, reverts to the living. On that account he ordered also the killing of the ignorant. When he found a Hindu knowing himself, he valued him higher than a Muselman. He and his sons practised for some time highway robbery. Of the wealth which he took from the Muselmans and others, he deposited the fifth part in a store-house, and when it was wanted, he distributed it among the most deserving people. He and his sons kept themselves all remote from adultery, lewdness, and unbecoming actions, as well as from despoiling the unitarians of their property, and refrained from using violence towards those who saw but one God.

He composed a great number of works in the
Arabic, Persian, Hindi, and Afgháni, languages. The Maksíúd al Múmenín, "the desire of the right believers," is in Arabic. They say, that the All-just God conversed with him without the intervention of Jabril. He composed also a book entitled Khár-al-bián, "the good news, or the gospel," and this in four languages: the first in Arabic, the second in Persian, the third in Hindi, and the fourth in Pashtú, that is, the Afgháni language: the same purport is conveyed in the four languages. The address is from the All-just All-mighty God to the lord Báyezíd, and this they believe a work of divine inspiration. He is also the author of the Hánáméh, in which he has given an account of himself.

The most astonishing circumstance therein is, that he was an illiterate man, and yet expounded the Korán, and uttered speeches full of truth, so that learned men were astonished at them.

It is said that Báyezíd received the divine command for the destruction of those who know no God. Three times the all-just God had given him the order, and he put not his hand to the sword;

1 Bayezid Ansari is said to have been the first author who wrote in the Pashtu, or Afghan language.

2 ين مانچی جبریل It is by mistake, it appears, that we find in Doctor Leyden's translation: "The All-just addressed him through 'Mianji Jabrayil,'" and the note referring to this passage is not applicable to it.
but when it was repeated, unable to resist, he girt himself for the war against the infidels.

Báyezid was contemporary with the lord Mirzá Muhammed Hakim, the son of the lord Humáyún Pádshah. The author of this book has heard from Mirza sháh Muhammed, surnamed Ghazni Khán, the following account: "It was in the year of the "Hejira 949 (A. D. 1542-3), that Miyán Róshen "gained strength and established his sect. My fa-
ther, Sháh Baighkán Arghún, surnamed Khán-Dou-
rán, said, he saw Miyán Báyezid before his rising "in rebellion, when he was brought to the court of "Mirzá Muhammed Hakím, and the learned were "confounded in the dispute with him, wherefore "they let him take his departure on equitable "terms." In the beginning of the year of the

1 Báyezid, after having obtained the adherence of several tribes of the Afghans, established himself in Hashtanagar, "eight townships," in the middle of Pokhtanga, or Afghanistan, perhaps the country of the ancient Aspaganí, mentioned by Pliny, and took his residence at Kaleder, in the district of Omarei, where he founded a city. From thence, under the title of Pír roshá'n, "master of light," he issued proclamations to in-
crease the number of his followers. Having become formidable to the government of the Moghuls, Maksan khan ghazi, a chief of great merit, by a sudden irruption into Hashtanagar, seized the person of Bayezid, and carried him to Kabul, where, although at first subject to insult, he owed his release to the intercession of some influential persons, favorably disposed towards him. He then retired to the mountains of Tootee, and further to those of Tirah, perhaps the district of the ancient Thiravi, mentioned by Arrian. Such was soon the new increase of his forces, that he dared proclaim his project to overthrow the power of the emperor
Hejira 994 (A. D. 1585-6) the intelligence of the death of the lord Mirzâ Muhammed Hakim reached from Kabul, the ear of the Lord, dwelling in the ninth heaven. The sepulchre of Bâyezid is at Bhatkûr, in the hilly country of the Afghans.

SECTION III. : UPON THE TRANSACTIONS OF THE SONS OF THE LORD MIYÂN BAYEZID.

Omár Shaikh Kamál eddin, Nur eddin and Jelál eddin were the sons of Bâyezid, and he had a daughter, Kamál Khâtûn. After the lord Miyân Jelál eddin succeeded to his father’s dignity, and acquired a very great power; he never deviated from the precepts of the lord Miyân; he was just, and an adherer to rule, and girt with energy and activity. In the year of the Hejira 989 (A. D. 1581–2), when the standards of majesty of the lord (now an inhabitant of the ninth heaven), that is, of Aqbar Pâdishâh, re-

Akbar. He descended into the plains of Ningarhar, sacked and burnt the country, but was overtaken by Mahsan Khan, and his army routed; he himself escaped with great difficulty, and died soon after, from the fatigues of his flight: he was buried at Hashtanagar.—(See on the Roshe- niah sect and its founder. Asiat. Res., vol. XI. p. 387 et seq., by J. Ley- den, M.D.)

1 According to Akhun Derwazch (of whom hereafter) Bayazid had five sons. Khair eddin is placed between the last mentioned above.
turned from Kabul to the firm seat of government (Delhi), he (Jelal-eddin) came to his presence, but after some days he took to flight. In the year of the Hejira 1000 (A. D. 1591-2), Jâfer Baïg Kazvini Bakhshi, who was honored with the title of As'fakhani, was deputed for the destruction of Jelâl eddin Rôshni, whom the blessed Jelâl eddin Muhammed Akbar called Jelâlah, and in the same year the emperor's chieftains, having taken prisoners the whole family of Jelâl eddin by the agency of a person called Vahdit Ali, brought them to the foot of the throne, the seat of the deputy of God. In the year of the Hejira 1007 (A. D. 1598-9), during the reign of the lord, now inhabiting heaven, Jelâl eddin Achar Pâdshah, Miyan Jelâl eddin took Ghizni, and cruelly ravaged this province, but could not maintain himself in that position. Meanwhile, at the coming up of the Hazârah1 and the Afghans upon Miyan, a great conflict

---

1 Jelâl-eddin, although supported by many, was strongly opposed by some of the Afghan tribes; other mixed tribes never adopted the Roshe-nish creed. Among the last were the Ha'zâ'rah, distinct from the Afghans and Moghuls; their original seat is supposed to have been between Herat and Balkh; but they possessed themselves of a considerable part between Ghazni and Kandahar, in one direction, and between Maidan and Balkh, in the other. We find in the before quoted Memoir of H. T. Colebrooke (As. Res., vol. VII. p. 343): "The Hazârah of Kâbul are an innumerable tribe, who reside in Kâbul, Ghazni, and Khandahar. Many of them are Shiáhs, and adherents of the holy family. At present, among the chiefs of the Shiáhs is Mirza Shawdmanu, with whom the faithful are well pleased, and of whose incursions the Khâ receiving..."
took place, in which Miyán Jelál eddin was wounded by the hand of Shádman Hazárah, and fled to the mountains of Rabáth, where Merad Baikh and some of the followers of Sherif Khan Atcah attacked him and made an end of his affairs.

After him, Miyán Ahdad, the son of Omar Shaikhh, the son of Bayezid, who is known among the illustrious persons by the name of Ahdád, sat on the throne of authority. He was just, and an adherer to rule; he kept himself thoroughly firm in the precepts of his august predecessor; he never intended to amass wealth, but gave every one the due reward of his labor; the fifth part of the wealth which was collected from the wars against the infidels he deposited in the public storehouse, and it served to reward the meritorious warriors. In the year of the Hejira 1055 (A. D. 1625-6), under the reign of the lord, now an inhabitant of heaven, Nur-eddin Jehángír Pádshah, he was reduced to great straits by Ahsan Ulla, surnamed Zafer Khan, the son of Khájah Abu'-l Hassan Tábrízí, and by the chieftains of the Pádshah, and besieged in the fort Navágher, where, hit by a musket shot during an attack on the fortress, he reached the term of his life. It is said that, before the day of his death, which these sectaries call "the "day of union," Miyán Ahdád opened the book Khá'ir al Bián, and, having read in it, said to his friends: "To-morrow is my day of union:’ and it
happened as he had said. The author of this book saw a pious person from Cabul, who told him:

"On the day of Ahdad’s death I rejoiced, and spoke of him in bad terms; at night I saw in a dream my master, who forbade me to do so, and said the sacred text: ‘declare that God is one,’ applies to Ahdád.” And his disciples name him Ahdád, the one.”

It is reported that after the “union” of Ahdád, the Afghans, having taken up Abd ul Khader, the son of Ahdád, betook themselves to the mountains; and the Padshah’s army, who had not expected to obtain possession of the fort, entered it. The daughter of Ahdad, who had not found an opportunity of escaping, was wandering about the fortress; one of the soldiers attempted to seize her; the maiden, having thrown her veil over her eyes, precipitated herself from the wall of the fort, and met her death: every one was astonished at the deed.

After Miyan Ahdád, his son, Abd-ul Kader, sat upon the throne of religious supremacy. Having found a favorable opportunity, he attacked Zafer Khán, who fled with the greatest precipitation; all his baggage, with the women of his secret apartments, fell into the hands of the Afghans; but the wife of Zafer khan, named Buzery Khánam, alone was preserved from violence by the efforts of the chieftains, such as Navab Sáíd Khan, the son of Ahmed
Baig Khan Tarkhan. The author of this work himself heard Peri Sultan, a person from nature possessed of vigor and worth, who has now received the title of Ža'-l Fakár khán, say: 'When, by order of Sâíd Khan, I went to invite Abd-ul Khader to submit, I brought with me a great variety of victuals and liquors, that he might be seduced by their effect. One day, an aged Afghan, after having tasted some sweetmeats, rose on his legs and said: 'O Abd-ul Khader, from the time of thy honored ancestors to this day, never the foot of a Moghúl reached this place; he who is now come intends to deceive thee, with garments red and yellow, and with victuals pleasing and sweet, which are coveted by those who are slaves of their belly, but which are abhorrent to the rule of durvishes: the best measure therefore is to put him to death, as an example to terrify others from coming hither.' But Abd-ul Khader and his mother, Bibi Alâi, the daughter of Miyan Jelal eddin, would not agree to it. On the day when Abd-ul Khader visited the camp of Sâíd Khán, his horse was frightened at the noise of the kettle-drums and horns, and dashed from amid the crowd to one side; an Afghan observed: 'The horse executes what the lord Miyan Róshen has ordered, but you do not; be sure you shall suffer from the after-sickness of this debauch.'
"Abd-ul Khader asked: 'What has Miyan ordered?' The Afghan replied: 'To keep at a distance, and to beware of the Moghuls.'" When Abd-ul Khader presented himself at the court of the lord Abúl Mazafer Shaháb-eddin Muhammed, Sáheb-i-Kerán sâni Amir al Múmenin shah Jehan Pádshah, gházy, "the victorious," he was elevated to a high rank. In the year of the Hejira 1045 (A. D. 1635-4) he reached his last day, and was buried at Paišhaver.

Mirza, the son of Núr-eddín, lived in the reign of the lord Amir al Múmenin Shah Jehán, and was killed in the battle of Dóulet-abad. Kerimidad, the son of Jelal eddin, was delivered up by the tribe of the Jelalian to Muhammed Yakub Kashmirí, the Vakil, "agent," of Sáid Khán Terkhán, and he was put to death in the year of the Hejira 1048 (A. D. 1638-9). Alhedád Khán, the son of Jelal-eddin, having been honored with the title of Rashíd Khán, was appointed to a command of four thousand in the Dekan, and ended the term of this life in the year of the Hejira 1058 (A. D. 1648-9)."
CHAPTER X.

OF THE RELIGION OF THE ILAHIAH: IN FOUR SECTIONS.

SECTION I.—On the appearance of the Khalifet of God, and some of the miracles, called Burhan.

SECTION II.—On the dispute of the professors of different religions and creeds in the service of the lord, the Khalifet of God, and the Burahin of the Khalifet of God.

SECTION III.—On the virtues of the stars.

SECTION IV.—On the ordinances of conduct.

Sanctity, and belonging to the tribe of Tajek. This word in general signifies "peasant, or cultivator of ground;" but is in particular applied to those who are not Arabs, and by the Moghuls to the natives of Iran, who are neither of Arab nor Moghul extraction, probably of a mixed origin. They extend from the mountains of Cheta'r, in Kashgar, as far as Balkh and Kandahar, and live either under their own chiefs, or subject and tributary to the Afghans, Turkmans, or Usbek Tartars, among whom they reside. The Tajiks always showed themselves adverse to the Rosheniah's, and Akhun Derwezech in the said work contradicts and blames the tenets and opinions of Bayazid, whom he calls the "master of darkness." In the extract given by Leyden, of Derwezech's account, we see that the doctrine of the Rosheniah's coincided in several points with that of the Ismailiah's: Bayazid, in like manner as the latter, established eight degrees of perfection, through which his sectaries were to pass, and which led to an entire dereliction of all positive religion, and an unrestrained licentiousness in manners and practices. The account given by the author of the Dabistan is far from provoking so severe a blame. As to the history of Bayazid's life and that of his sons—highway robbery, devastation, and bloodshed are evidently practised by them, in the recital of both authors. The Memoir of the learned Leyden abounds with curious and important information respecting the Afghan tribes, to which the present events in Western India can but lend a higher interest. Some reputed followers of Bayazid are still to be found both in Paishavir and Kabul, most numerous among the wild tribes of the Yusefzei.
SECTION 1.—ON THE APPEARANCE OF THE KHALIFET OF THE ALL-JUST.

An account of the lord Khalifet, "Vicar," of God.—The author of this book heard from Khájah Masádu, the son of Khájah Mahmúd, the son of Khájah Mirshid al hak, who was a pious master of worldly concerns, what follows: "My honored father said he had heard from his noble ancestors, that the lord of the faith and of the world will appear; but he knew not whether that lord's time was already come, or will come; meanwhile he saw him one night in a dream; when he rose from sleep, he went to the country where that august personage was born, that is on Sunday of the month Rajeb (the seventh Arabian month), in the year of the Hejira 949 (A. D. 1545), the lord Jelal eddin Akbar, the august son of Hamáyún Pádshah and of the praise-worthy Bánú Bégam was born." The writer of this work heard also in the year of the Hejira 1055 (A. D. 1645-4), in Lahore, from Mirzá Sháh Muhammed, surnamed Khaznín Khán, the son of shah Baigh Khán, with the surname of Khán Douran, a native of Arghún, who is said to have asked from the Naváb Azíz Kóka, surnamed Khán Adzem, what observation he had to make upon the rumor current relative to the Lord, the inhabitant of the ninth heaven, as to
his being like the Messiah? He answered: "What "the mother said, is the truth."

SECTION II. — ON THE DISPUTE OF THE PEOPLE OF DIFFERENT RELIGIONS.

In the service of the khalifah were two learned persons, the one a Sonnite, and the other a Shiáh, who both sought admittance at court. The emperor called them, and by their desire in his presence they endeavored to establish the truth of their respective religions. The Shiáh said: "It is evident "that the Sonnites are without faith, because they "do not acknowledge the prophet’s purity, and say "that David caused Uriá to be killed." The Son- nite replied: "This fact is equally mentioned in the "Koran and in the Tóurit, ‘Pentateuch,’ explicitly "and circumstantially.” A Jew was present, and affirmed: "It is certainly in the Pentateuch.” Upon which the Shiáh rejoined: "The Pentateuch is al- ""tered.” The Jew retorted: "We may as well, "and with a better right, say that your book is "altered, whilst there is no reason to be urged that "the Pentateuch is corrupted.” The Shiáh had

1 The author does not mention any particular miracle, which we had reason to expect from the preceding title of this section.
no answer to give, and the author of this book saw in the treatises of several of the modern learned, that they have appropriated this answer to themselves. The Shi'ah again said: "The godly Ali was a very learned and most excellent man, and never polluted his lips with wine, nor pork, nor any thing dressed by the infidels." To which the Sonnite replied: "As with you the hand of an infidel is impure, and the Korésh all drank wine and eat pork, the prophet, who associated with them, eat the same food in the house of his paternal uncles, and so did the lord, the godly Ali." The Shi'ah had no suitable reply to make to this observation; he continued however: "In the Malul and Nahel, it is stated that the pure Fátima¹ declared, The palm-grove of Fedak² is my inheritance, as the lord of

¹ According to Muhammad's sayings, no more than four women obtained perfection, to wit: Asia, the wife of Pharaoh; Mary, the daughter of Imran (the blessed Virgin); Khadija', the prophet's wife, and Fatima, his daughter.

² Fedak, according to Abulfeda (l. 133. 273), is a castle near the town of Khairbar; this is a place fertile in palm-trees in the Arabian province of Hejaz, four days' journey distant from Mecca. It was given to Muhammad by the faithful, under the name of alms. After the prophet's death, Fátima claimed it as a patrimony; but Abubekr refused it to her, setting forth the above mentioned saying of the prophet. Abulfeda, whom I follow, gives it as follows:

نسخ معاشر الأنبية لأنورث ماتر كناه صدقة

The words لأنورث are not in the quotation of the Dabistán, edit. of Calcutta, nor in the manuscript of Oude. Thus was Fedak taken from

35580
the prophetic asylum committed it to me as a

tamlık (hereditary property) during his life-time.

But the prophet has said:

"" We, the company of prophets, do not leave to our heirs what has
" been bestowed on us as a gift or as alms."

"" On the strength of which Sádik (Abu bekr) 
rejected her claim. But even were this tradition
irrefragable, how could he reject the claim of a

	tamlık, if that tradition, by which the rejection of
such an inheritance never takes place, be acknow-
ledged to be right?" The Sunnite opposed to
this: "" The splendid lady had no witnesses that
the law could accept; as the evidence of hus-
band, or son, or grandson, is not admissible.""
The Shiáh insisted: ""Sádik was wrong. And the
burning of the court¹ in sequel of the mortal

the race of Ali and fell into the hands of Mervan, in whose family it
remained until Omar declared it again to belong to alms, and assigned
the usufruct of it to the Alids. But Māmun, the seventh khalif of the
Abbasides, who reigned from Hijra 198 to 218 (A. D. 813–833), gave it
formally over to Muhammed, son of Yahia, son of Ḥassan, son of Zaid,
son of Ali, son of Hassan, son of Ali, son of Abu Taleb.—(Abulfeda,
II. p. 167).

¹ Muhammed had scarcely expired, when a vehement contest about the
succession to his dignity arose between the Mokajirin, "" the emigrants
from Mecca with the prophet,"" and the Ansar, "" the protectors (see
note, p. 27) : both claimed the right of nomination. Abubekr was pro-
claimed by both. To crush the resistance of Ali, who was the legitimate
competitor, Omar, sent by Abu-bekr, burnt the gate, and was about to
set on fire the house of Ali—scarcely restrained from the act by the
reproach of Fâtimâ, Muhammed’s daughter and Ali’s wife, who from
malady of the prophet; and the repentance which was the consequence of it? and the like, what dost thou say about it? Moreover, Omar's impedging the writing of a last will in the mortal malady of the prophet, as the Imam Ismā'il Bokhārī has related upon the authority of Abd-ulla, the son of Abas, that in his mortal malady the house of the prophet was full of his companions.

He said:

Make haste, let me put down a writing for your sake, in order that, after me, you may be safe against error and deceit.

But Omar said: 'The prophet is overcome by the malady, and his intellect is obstructed; the heavenly book, and the proofs of the text of the Koran are sufficient for us.' On which account accumulated contradictions and conflicting discussions rose to such a height that the prophet said: 'Leave me.' The Sonnite resumed: The prophet himself declared:

that moment till her death never spoke to any of the enemies of her husband. The prophet, according to authentic traditions, said: 'Whoever gives offence to Fatimah gives offence to me; and whoever offends me, offends God.'

Muhammed, son of Ismā'il al Jisfī, called Bokhārī, from his native town in Mazinderan, lived from the year of the Hejira 194 to 236 (A.D. 809-869). He is chiefly celebrated by a work composed, as he says himself, at the prophet's tomb at Madina, from six hundred thousand traditions, and called Masnad es sahīh, the sincere (just) Masnad. 'Masnad' signifies a collection of traditions, each of which is accompanied with the name of the traditionist by whom it was handed down.
I am a man like you, but I speak from inspiration."

"In eating, dress, repose, affliction, health, sickness, wounds, in life and death, his condition was that of mankind; thus, some teeth of the venerable were knocked out,¹ and in his last malady he was exceedingly suffering, so that in the violence of his pain he might have said things which were not consonant with a sound mind. On that account Omar forbade his writing." The Shi’ah remarked: "When the prophet had left the garment of mortality, Omar drew his sword, and threatened to kill whosoever would say that the prophet died, because he was still living; such a declaration, how can it be reconciled with his impeding the writing of the last will in the manner before said?" The Sunnite avowed: "Mankind is subject to error." The Shi’ah pressed further: "After the contention, when Osmân was appointed khalif, his relations of the family of Omiyah practised oppression under his authority, and he brought back Hakim, the son of As’, ² the son of

¹ This happened in the battle of Ohod (so is called a mountain half an hour's distance from Madina, on the route of Mecca). Muhammed fought with seven hundred men against more than three thousand Koreish from Mecca, in the third year of the Hejira (A. D. 624). Otho, the son of Vaccasi, and brother of Sâd, who fought on the prophet's side, hit him with a stone, so as to knock out four incisors of his inferior jaw.

² The edition of Calcutta and the manuscript of Oude have erroneously: "Hakim, the son of Mercan," instead of As’, which I substituted for
Omiyah, to Medina, from whence the prophet had banished him, so that he was called 'the banished of the prophet,' although Sādik (Abubekr) and Fārūk (Omar) had not called him. Further, Osman expelled Abázer from Medina; he also gave his daughter in marriage to Merván, the son of Hakim, with the fifth part of the spoils of Afrika, which amounted to forty thousand gold dinárs. 1 Besides, he granted security to Abd-ullah, the son of Serj; 2 although the lord of the prophetic asylum had ordered his blood to be shed; and he conferred on him the administration of Egypt; he consigned also to Abd-ullah, the son of Aamar, the government of Basra, where he indulged himself in all sorts of shameful actions. Among the Umrās of his army were Māwiajah, the son of Abi Safián, the collector of Shám (Syria), and Sādīd, the son of Aduas, the collector of Kūfa. Afterwards, Abd-ullah, the son of Aamer; and Valid, the

Merván, according to Abulfeda, l. p. 271. Elmacin (Hist. Sarac., p. 38) reads "Hakim, son of Abūl-Aas."

1 Abulfeda (l. p. 271) says 560,000 gold coins. Elmacin (lococ cit., p. 39) states five talents of Africa, said to be worth 504,000 gold pieces.

2 Abulfeda (l. p. 264) mentions Abdalla, son of Sād, son of Abu Sarh, Amerite, a foster-brother of Osman (ibid., p. 134). Elmacin (lococ cit., p. 39) calls him Abdalla, son of Sāid, son of Abu Jerh, who had been a writer of revelations, and who, because he had apostatised from Islamism, would have been put to death by the prophet, after the taking of Mecca, in the eighth year of the Hejira (A. D. 629), if Osman had not interceded for him.
son of *Abka* *Abd-ullah*, the son of *Sād*, the son of "*Abi Serj*; all these trod the road of perverseness and unrighteousness." The Sonnite had no convenient reply to make. The Shi'ah continued: "The prophet sent three friends to fight to a place called *Tabūk*; they disagreed: after which the prophet declared: "Whoever causes discord in "the army or service, the curse of God be upon "him." The Sonnite here fell in: "At the time "of the prophet's moving, it was not advisable to "undertake the expedition designed; there was no "disunion about the war among them; but only a "discussion about the fitting out of the troops and "the arrangements; whence a delay in this affair "arose, on account of settling the proper order of "march and other proceedings." The Shi'ah went on: "What the Sonnites attribute to God and the

---

1 This relates to an expedition which Muhammed undertook, in the ninth year of the Hejira (A.D. 630), towards *Tabūk*, a place situated about half-way between *Madinah* and *Damascus*, beyond the limits of Arabia; it was in the midst of the summer heats, at a time of great drought and scarcity; besides the fruits were then just ripe, and the people had much rather have remained to gather them. But the first cause of discontent was the exacting of a tribute for covering the expense of the expedition. Abubekr, Omar, Osman, Ali, Talha, Abder rahmen, contributed largely to it; others declined their pecuniary and personal aid; three of the *ans'ars*, friends above alluded to (see p. 27), were permitted to remain. Ali stayed at Madīna as lieutenant of the prophet, who moved with an army of thirty thousand men to the frontiers of Syria, which were defended by an equal force of Greeks. He encamped during twenty days near *Tabūk*, and then thought it necessary to retreat.
"prophet, cannot be ascribed to the lowest man." The Sonnite asked: "What is that?" The Shiâh answered: "One of these things, stated in the book of your traditions, is that the lord prophet, having exhibited before Aâisha dance and disport, asked her: 'Art thou satisfied?' Such a thing cannot in truth be said of any body without disgrace. Besides, there are acts unbecoming of the prophet's companions, such as Omar's preventing Muhammed's last will, and the like, avowed by themselves in their book; and yet they hold these men in high esteem!" Here the Sonnite observed: "What thou first settest forth about the prophet's exhibition of disport, is nothing shameful; as to what thou sayest about bad customs, they belong only to thy own vicious opinion. Deniest thou that the prophet has said:

"I am sent to settle the customs and manners."

"If a fact has not existed or has not happened, why should it have been recorded?" The Shiâh called out: "It has been invented and formed into a lie." The Sonnite objected: "Thus, according to thy opinion, the master of truth, Bokhari and the like, are tellers of lies, and thus they have transmitted lies! Why then, on their authority believest thou that Omar has prevented the making of the last will, and other such things, which,
"according to thee throw blame upon the compan-
ions of the prophet? Therefore, in whatever of
all these things according to thy opinion is unbe-
coming, thou shouldest believe that the master of
truth, Bokhâri, and those like him, have told lies,
so wouldst thou cease to cast reproach upon the
companions and friends of the prophet; but if they
spoke truth, then reckon also to be true, what
they have attributed as praise-worthy to the pro-
phet, and true what they have stated of the virtues
of the said companions. Further, as to thy sepa-
rating the prophet from mankind, it belongs, as it
has been revealed by the divine text, to the creed
of unbelievers to say, that the prophet should not
eat nor drink." Now the Shiâh grew warm, and
said: "Is it not enough to attach to the lord pro-
phet the blame of having listened to music and
assisted at dancing; and now thou pretendest to
prove the purity of the two Shaikhs (Abubekr and
Omar) and of Osmán!" The Sonnite took up
the controversy: "I said before that listening to
music is reasonably not blamable, and even laud-
able, when a lawgiver also listens to it, and I
observed, concerning customs and manners, that
thou esteemest bad what thou hast badly under-
stood. As thou refusest to approve dancing,
what sayest thou about the interdiction of a wo-
man from her spouse at the desire of the pro-
"phet?" If thou holdest the example of customary acts reprehensible, there is nothing to be said about such an occurrence. And likewise, if the two Shaikhs had not been pure, the lord prophet would not have exalted their heads by matrimonial alliance; and the daughter of the lord Ali and the lord prophet would never have been in the house of the great Fārūk (Omar), and of the possessor of two lights (Osman). To open the road of contention is not laudable; and if not so according to thy opinion, explain this to me: since the lord, the lion of God (Ali) was informed of all the secrets of the hearts, why did he wage war upon Māaviāh, who was a Muselmān? and why was he the death of so many men, since causing death is by no means right? It is likewise known

1 If I am not mistaken, allusion is here made to Zeinah (Zenobia), the wife of Zaid. Muhammed, having gone one day to the house of the latter, who was not at home, found Zeinah in a dress which permitted him to remark her beauties, with which he was so smitten, that he could not refrain from an exclamation betraying his sensation. Zeinah did not fail to apprise her husband. Zaid then thought he could not do less than to place his wife by a divorce at the disposition of his master and benefactor, whose slave he had once been, and by whom he was not only affranchised, but adopted as a son. On that very account, Muhammed was prevented by law from marrying Zeinah; but he procured to himself an authorization from heaven, in a verse of the Koran (chap. XXXIII. v. 36), and after the term of Zeinah's divorce, took to wife the object of his desires, at the latter end of the fifth year of the Hejira (A. D. 626).

2 During the contest between Ali and Moaviāh, the armies of both chiefs were in the year of the Hejira 37 (A. D. 637) encamped opposite
and admitted by you as true that, when one day a
Muselman was selling garlic and onions upon the
passage of the prophet, that venerable personage
told him: 'If thou wouldst sit down in a corner,
retiring out of my way, it would be well.'
The man made an excuse, and the prophet passed
on. Shortly after came Ali, who said to the man:
The prophet dislikes the smell of onions and
garlic, therefore move out of his way.' The man
answered: 'O Ali, the prophet told me to rise,
and I did not move.' Ali said: 'At the pro-
phet's order thou didst not rise?' He drew
immediately his sword, and cut off the man's
head. Such an action is reprobated by the law,
as the lord of the prophetic asylum forbade killing
even the hostile unbelievers, saying:

'Do not exceed in shedding blood, even if thou be a conqueror.'

And by historical accounts it is known that he
has blamed Ibrahim for having driven an unbe-
liever from his board. Nushirván, who was not
crowned with the diadem of the right faith, is cele-
to each other in a plain on the banks of the Euphrates, called by the
Greeks Barbelissos or Barabissos, and by the Arabs Safin; and in ninety
engagements, which took place between them in a hundred and ten
days, on the side of Moaviah fell forty-five thousand, and on that of Ali
twenty-five thousand men. In the night which preceded the decisive day
of Safin, Ali is said to have killed with his own hand four hundred ene-
 mies.—(Abulfeda, vol. I. pp. 305-313.)

1 See vol. I. pp. 103-104, note 1.
brated, because he sat upon the throne of justice;
and one of his most approved actions was, that
he withheld his hand from an old woman's house,
which was an hinderance in the vicinity of his
palace, and preferred to waste his own fields;
and the lord of the prophetic asylum, because
he appeared upon the field of testimony in the time
of this king, exalted his fame and glory by these
words:

"I was born in the time of the just king." ¹

"How can it be right to believe that the prophet,
the last of the age, should be pleased with the
destruction of a Muselman; he who would not
disturb the people who, engaged in their trade
and occupation, obstructed his passage? he who
said:

"He who kills willingly a believer shall have hell for eternal
punishment;"

"He cannot have acted by that rule; he who de-
clares:

¹ Muhammad, according to his traditions, was born in the twentieth
year of Nushirvan's reign, which, as this king began to reign A. D. 334,
would be in 351. This does not agree with the date of the prophet's
death in 632, at the age of sixty-three years, about which the best histo-
rians are unanimous. For the same reason, the date of his birth, as
stated by Silvestre de Sacy, on the 20th April, 371, cannot be true.
According to Weisi, Muhammad was born in the thirty-eighth year of
Nushirvan's reign, on the 1st of April, 369, which was a Monday, and it
was on a Monday he was born and died (see Gemäldezaal Most., Herr-
shcr For Band, Seite 22, note).
God will not give to a soul more trouble than it can bear;" "Such an action is not that of a virtuous man; this however is related (of Ali) by your learned men, "and likewise joking and buffooning, which indicates a want of dignity, degraded him." The Shi'ah said: "Nevertheless, he was certainly the "most excellent of all the companions of the prophet." The Sonnite asked: "In knowledge or "in practice?" The Shi'ah replied: "In both "knowledge and practice," The Sonnite resumed: "This we do not hold for certain; in what respect "was he superior in practice to the chief of the be-
"lievers, Omar?" The Shi'ah answered: "Ali used "to pray the whole night." The Sonnite rejoined: "According to your own account, the lord Ali "wanted a woman every night; and his custom, "(called matâh)¹ was to engage one for a short time; "and so many did he occupy, that he seemed an "unceasing bridegroom;² how could a person so "employed pray the whole night? unless in your "religion you call praying what we call by another "name." The Shi'ah interrupted him saying: "You are liars from the very beginning. Abu Ha-
"nifa, your great Imam, was a native of Kabul, and "attached himself particularly to the service of

¹ ut membra ejus nunquam siccum esset."
"Imám Jáfr Sádik; at last he left him, and pro-
"fessed openly the religion of his fathers, who were
"Magi. A sign of the Magian creed was, that he
"thought it right to eat three times a day, and to lay
"aside all choice of diet, as well as not to reckon
"the unbelievers impure, saying that impurity
"resides in the interior, if any where, and the
"like."

The Sonnite remarked: "Thou thyself agreeest that
"Abu Hanífa was a follower of the Imám Jáfr, there-
"fore he most likely practised what was conform-
"able to the religion of the Imám Jáfr. We do
"not admit that your people are attached to the
"religion of the Imám; we rather believe that they
"are Magi; for when your ancestors were conquered
"and subjected, they, by necessity, joined the Is-
"lámian, but mixed the right faith with the creed of
"the Magi: as it appears from the worship called
"nůy róz, which is a custom of the Magi; according
"to whom they likewise perform divine worship
"three times a day. They think it right to turn
"the head in praying to the left, which is turning
"off from the Kiblah (of Mecca); they assert that
"the five prayers every day are improper, as they
"are not able to perform them exactly; they main-
"tain, however, as requisite those at midday, before
"sunset, and in the evening on going to sleep. In
"the same manner, they took the matáh, or tem-
porary matrimonial unions, from the Mazhdakian."

All the Shiâhs have founded their creed upon two rules: the first is the Bedas (Védas); these were promulgated with the view to surround us with power and magnificence, or with the modes of happiness, which brilliant prospects have not been realized; it was said that the lord of divine majesty dictated the Veda. The second rule is godliness; by which men are freed from all the propensities of nature. The Shiâhs are of this persuasion; and when they are asked about the manner of it, they say: By means of godliness we experience the non-reality of exterior things.

The Védâ treats of theology, and of what may appear contrary to divinity; it explains the will which on the part of the perverse may be manifested contrary to the will of the (supreme) judge. The Vêda moreover treats of practice: when an action tends towards one thing, and when, after or before its accomplishment, it turns towards something else.

1 See vol. I. p. 377.
2 §31: īrāدت, "will" (upon this word see an explanation hereafter); it is one of the names of the first minister, or of the universal intelligence in the mystic language of the Druzes (see Chrestom. Ar., tome II. p. 243). This sect belongs to the Ismâïlîûs, who appear to have borrowed much from the Indian philosophy.
The unbelievers, who are in opposition to the prophet assert, that he has adopted the morals of Amrāl Kāīs and mixed them with the Koran, that likewise he has frequently made use therein of the ideas of other poets, and even frequently gave place in it to the usages of paganism, with which he had been pleased. There are other controversies current. It will be best to attend to the following observation: What avail the doubts of the Shiāhs? They attack in their speeches the Vicars of the prophet; when the first party (the Sunnites) repress the answer to it upon their tongues, let the other party too refrain from dispute.

The arguments being carried to this point, the khalif of God dismissed the parties.

One day a Nazarene came to pay his submissive respects to the khalif of God, and challenged any of

1 Amrāl Kāīs, son of Hājī, king of the Arabs of the tribe of Kendah, according to Herbelot, of Asad, was, according to Sale, one of the greatest poets before Muhammedism, and one of the seven, whose compositions were suspended upon silken stuff in golden letters in the temple of Mecca, and therefore called ma'allakat, "suspended." His poems, translated by Sir W. Jones (vol. X. of his Works), are amatory, and have nothing of religion which Muhammed could borrow. Amrālkaīs was one of the adversaries of the prophet, and wrote satires and invectives against him, which were answered by Labīd, another of the seven poets, but who ranged himself on the side of Muhammed. The Arabian prophet certainly took many tenets and customs from former times and religions: thus he confirmed the holiness of the temple of Mecca and its environs, which were held in veneration long before him; thus he adopted from Judaism several laws relating to marriages, divorces, etc., etc.
learned among the Muselmans to dispute with him. The proposal being accepted, the Nazarene began: "Do you believe in Aisa (Jesus)?" The Muselman answered: "Certainly; we acknowledge him as a prophet of God; our prophet bore testimony to the divine mission of Jesus." The Nazarene continued: "This prophet (the Messiah) has announced that after him many will appear who will pretend to a prophetic office; yet believe not in them, nor follow them, for they are liars; but remain steadfast and firm in my faith, until I come again." There is no mention of your prophet in the Gospel." The Muselman replied: "Mention of him was in the Pentateuch and in the Gos-

1 As the Arabians descend from Ismail, the brother of Isaak, they take to themselves the blessing which God, in Genesis (XVII. 20), pronounced upon him and his posterity; and in the twelve princes who, according to the same verse, were to issue from him, they see their twelve Imáms, Ali and the rest (see vol. II. p. 367). They believe also that the prophet, who, as God announced to Moses in the Pentateuch (Deuteronomy, XVIII. 18), would rise from the Isma'ilites, was Muhammed. According to Abul Fírâj (Specimen Hist. Arab., 14. 17), the Muhammedans find in a passage of the Pentateuch (Deuter., XXXIII. 2) indicated the descent of the law to Moses upon mount Sinai; that of the Gospel to Jesus upon mount Sair; and that of the Koran to Muhammed upon mount Pharan, near Mecca. Further, in Psalm L. v. 2. they imagine that in the words: "Maneatavit Deus e Sione coronam laudatam, actilan mahmudan," by actilan, "crown," is to be understood "king-
dom," and by mahmudan, "praised," the very name of Muhammed. But this passage is translated in our Bible: "Out of Sion hath God appeared in perfect beauty." They find also passages applicable to their prophet in Isaiah XXII. 6. 7. 9: XLII. 1. 7. 16. 17.; and the whole
"pel," but your principal men obliterated it." The Nazarene asked: "Do you possess that Gospel which is correct?" The Muselman avowed: "We do not." Then the Nazarene resumed: "Hence your falsehood is evident; you deny the Gospel; for if you did not, you would preserve it, as we, who are Christians, preserve the Pentateuch, which is the book of Moses; but you keep neither the Pentateuch nor the Gospel, and if there had been mentioned in the Gospel any thing of your prophet, we would without doubt, according to the words of Jesus, adhere to it, because, in con-

chapter LXIII. 4. 6. etc.; moreover in Habacuc, III. 3. etc. Besides, the town of Medina, being inhabited by a tribe of conquered Jews, who were expecting a promised Messiah, Muhammed presented himself as one for all nations, and the credulous easily confounded him who was expected by the Jews with the upstart Arabian prophet.

1 The Moslms have a Gospel in Arabic, attributed to Saint Barnabas, in which, it is said, they have inserted the very name of their prophet Muhammed. Ahmed, Mahmud, as being the translation of the Greek word περιστοσ, periclytos, "famous, illustrious," which they have substituted for παρακατο, paraclêtos, "comforter, called upon, adoe-
catus," which is found in St. John's Gospel, XIV. 26; XV. 26; XVI. 7.; and by which is designated Jesus, or the Holy Ghost (see Sale's Koran. Prel. Disc., p. 98). The interpretation of the word periclytos might also have found place in the Arabian translation of the Bible, made by Werka, the cousin of Muhammed's first wife. Whatever it be, we read in chap. LXI. v. 6. of the Koran: "And when Jesus, the son of Mary, said:

- O children of Israel, verily I am the apostle of God, sent unto you,
- confirming the law which was delivered before me, and bringing
- good tidings of an apostle who shall come after me, and whose name
- shall be Ahmed."
formity with our faith, our desire is to obey the precepts of Jesus. But now, whence can we know that your prophet is true?" The Muselman said: "From his miracles, one of which is the dividing of the moon." The Nazarene observed upon this: "If the dividing of the moon has taken place, the inhabitants of the world must have seen it, and the recorders of extraordinary things in all countries, and the historians of all nations would have written it down with the pen of truth. Now none, except Muselmans, give any information of it." There was an Hindu present; the Nazarene asked him: "In the Kali yug, which is the fourth of your ages, has the moon been once divided?" And he addressed the same question to the Persians and Turks there present; all said:

1 This miracle has perhaps no other foundation but the atmospheric phenomena of a double moon which was seen in Mecca, four or five years before the Hijra. Some ascribed it to Muhammad on the infidels demanding a sign of him; the moon then appeared cloven in two; one part vanishing and the other remaining; it was affirmed that the mount Hara was seen interposing between the two sections. To this the believers refer chapter LI of the Koran, entitled the moon, which begins by these words: "The hour approacheth, and the moon hath been split asunder." The most intelligent expounders understand in the first word the hour of judgment; others think, that in the rest the preter tense is used, in the prophetic style, for the future; and that the passage should be thus rendered: "The moon shall be split asunder:" for this, they say, is to happen at the resurrection.—(See Sale's Koran, vol. II. p. 405). In the subsequent section, "upon the interpretation of the prophet's miracle," this subject is particularly treated.
"We have not seen any thing like it in our histori-
cal accounts." The Muselman remained con-
founded.

Another day, a Jew presented himself; the lord
khalif of God placed the Nazarene in opposition to
him for a religious discussion. The Jew began:
"In the Pentateuch, there is no mention made of
"Jesus." The Nazarene replied: "How not?
"Does not David say: 'My hands and my feet fall
"off, and all my bones are counted.' This is a
"prediction of the sufferings and of the crucifixion
"of Jesus." The Jew remarked upon this: "What-
ever David may have said of himself, and the All-
"Just have announced by his tongue, should all this
"be taken for a prediction of Jesus?" The Nazare-
"ne pursued: "But the conception of a virgin was
"predicted, and this virgin was Mary." The Jew
objected: "Amongst us, the virginity of Mary is not
"proved, as, according to your belief, before the
"birth of Jesus, she was married to Joseph the
"carpenter, and Jesus is said to be the son of Joseph
"the carpenter." The Nazarene admitted: "This
"is true; but," he added: "Joseph had never
"touched Mary." The Jew opposed: "How is
"that proved?" And this was the question which
the Jew repeated at every thing which the Nazarene
brought forward, so that the latter was reduced to
silence.
A learned philosopher came into the hall, where Hindus also were present, and three other learned men; a Muselman, a Nazarene, and a Jew: these were summoned, and ranged in opposition to the learned philosopher. The latter opened the discussion in this manner: "The divine mission of your prophets has not been proved, for several reasons: the first is, that whatever the prophet says ought to be conformable to reason; the second is, that he ought to be free from crime, and not hurtful to other beings. But Moses, according to the opinion of the Jews, was brought up by Pharaoh, and yet he caused him by a stratagem to be drowned in the waters of the Nile, and listened not to his repentance. What they say of the water of the Nile having opened a passage to Moses, is an error. Nor did he attend to the repentance of Kárun (Korah), but, from covetousness of gold, he caused him to be swallowed up by the earth. Jesus permitted the kill-

1 According to Richardson's Dict., edit. of F. Johnson: "Kárun is supposed to be the same person called Korah (Numbers, chap. XVI) whom the Muhammadans describe as the cousin of Moses. He is frequently alluded to by the poets and moralists, not only as being extremely handsome, but as possessed of immense wealth, acquired by his skill in chemistry, and the discovery of the philosopher's stone; whilst his avarice is represented as so remarkable, that his name is proverbially applied to all misers. They add, that it was on account of his refusal to pay Moses a tithe of his possessions for the public use, that the earth opened and swallowed him up."
"ing and ill using of animals. And Muhammed
himself attacked the forces and caravans of the
Koreish; he shed blood, nay, with his own hand
put to death animated beings. He besides ex-
ceeded all bounds in sexual connexions, and in
taking the wives of other men; so that, on account
of his gazing, a wife was separated from her hus-
band,¹ and the like are notorious of him. With
these perverse qualities, how then shall we recog-
nise a prophet?" All concurred in declaring :
By miracles." The philosopher asked: "What
are the miracles of your prophets?" The Jew
answered: "Thou must have heard of Moses's
wand, which became a serpent." The doctor
immediately took up his girdle, breathed upon it,
and it became a great serpent, which hissed and
turned towards the Jew; but the philosopher
stretched out his hand, and took it back, saying:
"Lo, the miracle of Moses!" whilst the Jew, from
fear, had scarcely any life left in his body, and
could not recover his breath again. Now the Chris-
tian said: "The Messiah was born without a fa-
ther." The doctor replied: "You yourselves
say that Joseph, the carpenter, had taken Mary
to wife; how can it be made out that Jesus was
not the son of Joseph?" The Nazarene was re-

¹ See p. 59, note 1, relative to Zaid and Zeinah.
duced to silence. The Mahomedan took up the word, and said: "Our prophet brought forth the "Korán, divided the moon, and ascended to heaven." The philosopher observed upon this: "It "is stated in your sacred book:

"And they say: We will by no means believe on thee, until thou "cause a spring of water to gush forth for us out of the earth, or thou "have a garden of palm trees and vines, and thou cause rivers to spring "forth from the midst of this palm plantation; or that thou throw down "upon the earth the heaven torn in pieces; or that thou bring down "God Almighty and the angels to vouch for thee; or thou have a house "of gold; or thou ascend by a ladder to heaven: neither will we "believe thy ascending, until thou cause a book to descend unto us "which we may read. The answer is in this way: Say, O Muhammed. "pure is God the nourisher, I am but a man-prophet."¹

"From this an equitable judge can conclude, he "who could not cause a spring of running water "to come forth, how could he have shown the mira- "cles which are related of him? when he had not "the power of tearing the heaven in pieces, in what "manner could he divide the moon? when he was "unable to show the angels, how could he see Ja- "bríl with his own eyes? and his companions too "did not behold him in the shape of an Arab; when "he was unable, in the presence of unbelievers, to "go to heaven with his body, how did he perform

¹ Koran, chap. XVII. v. 92-95. The Dabistan gives the Arabic text and the Persian translation, which last I have followed. It agrees, except in a few words, with the English version of Sale, and the French of M. Kasimirsky.
'the bodily ascension (ascribed to him in the Koran)? As he brought thence no writing, in what way came the Koran down from heaven?'

A follower of Zerdusht, who stood in a corner, now interrupted the philosopher, saying: "Maintain all this, but do not deny miracles in general, for our prophet too ascended to heaven." The doctor replied: "You admit the existence of Yezdán and Ahrimán, in order that Yezdán may not be said to be the author of evil; but you also assert, that Ahrimán sprung forth from the evil thought of the all-just Lord; therefore he sprung from God, and evil originates from God, the All-Just: you are therefore wrong in the fundamental principle, the very root of your religion, and wrong must be every branch which you derive from it."

A learned Brahman here took up the discussion: "Thou deniest the prophetic missions; but our Avatárs rest upon these missions." The doctor said: "You at first acknowledge one God, and then you say that, having descended from his solitude, he assumed a great body; but God is not clothed with a body, which belongs to contingency and tangible matter. In like manner, you attribute wives to your gods. Vishnu, who according to some represents the second person of the divine triad, according to others, is acknowledged as the supreme God, is said to have descended from his
station, and become incarnate at different times, in the forms of a fish, a boar, a tortoise, and of man. When he was in the state of Rama, his wife was ravished from him. He was ignorant, and acquired some knowledge by becoming the disciple of one among the sages of India, until he was freed from his body; in the form of Krishna he was addicted to lust and deceit, of which you yourselves tell many stories. You state, that in this incarnation there was little of the wisdom of a supreme God, and much of the corporeal matter of Krishna: thus you compel mankind, who, capable of justice, are superior to all sorts of animals, to worship a boar or a tortoise! And you adore the form of the male organ as Mahadeva, whom many acknowledge to be God, and the female organ as his wife! You seem not to know that the irrational cannot be the creator of the rational; that the one, uncompounded, is incompatible with division, and that plurality of the self-existent one is absurd. Finally, by the worship of a mean object, no perfection can accrue to the noble.” By these proofs and arguments he established his theses, and the Brahman remained confounded.

Afterwards the philosopher addressed the assembly: “Know for certain that the perfect prophet and learned apostle, the possessor of fame, Akbar, that
is, the lord of wisdom, directs us to acknowledge
that the self-existent being is the wisest teacher,
and ordains the creatures with absolute power,
so that the intelligent among them may be able to
understand his precepts; and as reason renders
it evident that the world has a Creator, all-mighty
and all-wise, who has diffused upon the field of
events among the servants, subject to vicissitudes,
numerous and various benefits which are worthy
of praise and thanksgiving; therefore, according
to the lights of our reason, let us investigate the
mysteries of his creation, and, according to our
knowledge, pour out the praises of his benefits;
and as, by the knowledge of the primordial omni-
potence, we shall have found the direction to the
right way, we shall, in proportion to our grati-
tude, be led to the reward of yon exuberant bea-
titude; if, by denying the unity and disowning
the benefits of God we sink into guilt, shall we
not be deserving of punishment? Such being the
case, why should we pay obedience to any person
who belongs to mankind as ourselves, and who is
subject to anger and lust, and avarice and passion,
and love of rank and power, even more than our-
selves? If this mortal exhorts us to knowledge
and gratitude, we may by the concurrence of our
own reason obtain this advantage; but if he urges
his precepts by what is opposite to reason, then
his speech is a proof of deceit; for reason demonstrates that the world has a wise creator, and that he, being wise, prescribes to the creatures a worship which to their reason does not evince itself as an evil; and whatever is proved bad, is not ordered by him. Now the law contains particulars which reason accounts as false or bad: such are conversations with God; the descent of incorporeal heavenly beings in human forms or in the shape of a tortoise; the reascension to heaven in an elemental body; the pilgrimage to particular edifices for performance of worship; the circuit (round the Kaaba), the entrance in it, the fatigue, the throwing of stones; the acquitting one's self of the pilgrimage to Mecca; the kissing of the black stone. If it be said that, without a visible medium, it is impossible to worship the all-mighty Creator, and that a place for the sake of connexion is to be fixed, it may be answered, that one who offers praises and thanks to God, has no need of a medium and of a place; and if a fixed

1 The principal ceremonies performed by the pilgrims of Mecca have been touched upon in vol. ii. p. 409, note 3; the throwing of stones takes place in the valley of Mina, where the devotees throw seven stones at three marks or pillars, in imitation of Abraham, who, meeting the devil in that place, and being disturbed by him in his devotions and tempted to disobedience, when he was going to sacrifice his son, was commanded by God to drive him away by throwing stones at him; though others pretend this rite to be as old as Adam, who also put the devil to flight in the same place, and by the same means.—(Sale's Koran, Prel. Disc., p. 160.)
place were to be admitted, the forms of the stars above would be preferable. If it be objected, that this cannot be free from the detestable suspicion of paganism, whilst, certainly, a place among others having been fixed, which place, by distinction from them all, presents itself to them as particular, a predilection for it appeared proper. In like manner, after a computation of dimensions, geometricians and mathematicians determine a place which, with respect to the objects and points of a space, bears the same relation as the centre to a circle; then, without doubt, every portion of the circumference will have its particular relative situation with respect to the point of the centre; certainly, in consequence of this arrangement, all places so determined become referable to this particular place, and among the other places, shall be worthy of predilection." To this may be answered: "This opinion agrees not with the ideas of many distinguished persons; for a great number confers upon the site of another place the attribute of being the middle, and distinguish it as such; which is evident from the books of the institutes of Brahma and of others, and by the necessity of pronouncing benedictions there. This also cannot be free from the suspicion of paganism: because one may suppose that God, the All-Just, is represented in the house, or is a
body, on which account people call it "the house of God." If it be so, or if the Kâbah be situated in the midst of a country, other prophets may have chosen another place, such as the holy house (of Jerusalem), and the like; but this is but by error; thus it happened—that, at first, the lord Muhammed did not offer his prayers at the Kâbah. Since therefore the detestable suspicion of paganism rests upon all the worship of stone, earth, and bodies, then water, fire, and the planets, are objects more proper to be honored; and if a centre be desired, let it be the sun in the midst of the seven heavens. In like manner objectionable is the sacrifice of animals, and the interdiction of what may be proper for the food of men, and the admitting thereof by one prophet to be lawful what is forbidden by another. Thus, if it be not right to eat pork, why was it permitted by Jesus? if it was interdicted on account of pollution in consequence of the animal's feeding upon unclean and nasty things, so the cock is objectionable for the same reasons. Similar to these are most other commands, and contrary to the precepts of reason. But the greatest injury comprehended in a prophetic mission is the obligation to submit to one like ourselves of the human species, who is subject to the incidental distempers and imperfections of mankind; and who nevertheless controls
"others with severity, in eating, drinking, and in all their other possessions, and drives them about like brutes, in every direction which he pleases; who declares every follower's wife he desires, legal for himself and forbidden to the husband; who takes to himself nine wives, whilst he allows no more than four to his followers; and even of these wives he takes whichever he pleases for himself; and who grants impunity for shedding blood to whomsoever he chooses. On account of what excellency, on account of what science, is it necessary to follow that man's command; and what proof is there to establish the legitimacy of his pretensions? If he be a prophet by his simple word, his word, because it is only a word, has no claim of superiority over the words of others. Nor is it possible to know which of the sayings be correctly his own, on account of the multiplicity of contradictions in the professions of faith. If he be a

1 Herbelot says that, according to the Muhammedana, their prophet had twenty-one wives, six of whom he repudiated, and five died before him; therefore ten remained.

2 Chapter XXXIII. v. 47. has the following passage: "O prophet, we have allowed thee thy wives unto whom thou hast given their dower, and also the slaves which thy right hand possesseth, of the booty which God hath granted thee, and the daughters of thy aunts, both on thy father's side, who have fled with thee from Mecca, and any other believing woman, if she give herself unto the prophet, in case the prophet desireth to take her to wife. This is a peculiar privilege granted unto thee above the rest of the true believers."
prophet on the strength of miracles, then the deference to it is very dependent; because a miracle is not firmly established, and rests only upon tradition or a demon's romances: as the house of tradition, from old age, falls in ruins, it deserves no confidence. Besides, by the regulation of divine providence, occult sciences are numerous; and the properties of bodies without end or number. Why should it not happen that such a phenomenon, which thou thinkest to be a miracle, be nothing else but one of the properties of several bodies, or a strange effect of the occult art? As with thee, the dividing of the moon, of which thou hast heard, is a miracle, why shouldst thou not admit, as proved, the moon of Káshgar? And if thou namest Moses, 'the speaker of God,' why shouldst thou not so much the more give this title to Sámeri, who caused a calf to speak?

But if it be said that every intellect has not the power of comprehending the sublime precepts,

---

1 This reminds of Hakem, the moon-maker.—(See p. 3, note 1.)
2 The name of a magician said to have been contemporary with Moses. He is mentioned in the Koran, chap. XX. v. 87. Sale observes (vol. II. pp. 145. 146. N. 9.) that he was not, as the Mohammedans believe, one of the Samaritans, who were not then formed into a people, nor bore that name till many ages after. Selden is of opinion, that this person was no other than Aaron himself, called at Sámeri, from the Hebrew word shá-
mar, 'to keep;' because he was the keeper, or guardian, of the children of Israel during the absence of his brother, Moses, on the mount.
but that the bounty of the all-mighty God created
degrees of reason and a particular order of spirits,
so that he blessed a few of the number with super-
rior sagacity; and that the merciful light of lights,
by diffusion and guidance, exalted the prophets
even above these intellects. If it be so, then a
prophet is of little service to men; for he gives
instruction which they do not understand, or
which their reason does not approve. Then the
prophet will propagate his doctrine by the sword;
he says to the inferiors: 'My words are above
your understanding, and your study will not
comprehend them.' To the intelligent he says:
'My faith is above the mode of reason.' Thus,
his religion suits neither the ignorant nor the
wise. Another evil attending submission to an
incomprehensible doctrine is that, whatever the intel-
lect possesses and offers by its ingenuity, turns
to no instruction and advantage of mankind, whilst
the prophet himself has said:

'... God imposes upon a man no more than he can bear.'

And whatever the understanding does not com-
prise within the extent of reason, the truth of this
remains hidden; and to assent thereto is silliness;
because the doctrine of other wise men may be of
a higher value than the tradition or the book of
that prophet. Besides, if the maxim were incul-
cated that prophets must be right, any body who chose could set up the pretension of being one; as silly men will always be found to follow him, saying: 'His reason is superior to ours, which is not equal to such things.' Hence have arisen among the Muselmans and other nations so many creeds and doctrines, as well as practices without number.

Another defect is that, when the religion of one prophet has been adopted, and when his rule has been followed in the knowledge and worship of God, after a certain time another prophet arises, who prescribes another religion to the people. Hence they become perplexed, and know not whether the former prophet was a liar, or whether they ought to conclude that in each period mankind is to alter the law according to circumstances. But the knowledge of truth admits no contradiction; yet there exists a great number of contradictions in the four sacred books: hence it appears that, in the first times, the true God has not made himself known, and that the first creed with respect to him had been wrong; thus, in the second book, something else is said, and in like manner in the third and in the fourth.

In the sequel it became evident to wise men, that emancipation is to be obtained only by the

1 The Pentateuch, the Psalter, the Gospel, and the Koran.
knowledge of truth conformably with the precepts of the perfect prophet, the perfect lord of fame, Akbar, 'the Wise;' the practices enjoined by him are: renouncing and abandoning the world; refraining from lust, sensuality, entertainment, slaughter of what possesses life; and from appropriating to one's self the riches of other men; abstaining from women, deceit, false accusation, oppression, intimidation, foolishness, and giving (to others) opprobrious titles. The endeavors for the recompense of the other world, and the forms of the true religion may be comprised in ten virtues, namely: 1. liberality and beneficence; 2. forbearance from bad actions and repulsion of anger with mildness; 3. abstinence from worldly desires; 4. care of freedom from the bonds of the worldly existence and violence, as well as accumulating precious stores for the future real and perpetual world; 5. piety, wisdom, and devotion, with frequent meditations on the consequences of actions; 6. strength of dexterous prudence in the desire of sublime actions; 7. soft voice, gentle words, and pleasing speeches for every body; 8. good society with brothers, so that their will may have the precedence to our own; 9. a perfect alienation from the creatures, and a perfect attachment to the supreme Being; 10. purification of the soul by the yearning after God.
the all-just, and the union with the merciful Lord, in such a manner that, as long as the soul dwells in the body, it may think itself one with him and long to join him, until the hour of separation from the body arrives. The best men are those who content themselves with the least food, and who sequestrate themselves from this perishable world, and abstain from the enjoyments of eating, drinking, dress, and marriage. The vilest of the people are those who think it right to indulge the desire of generation, the passion for wine, and banquetting with eagerness, as if it were something divine. As the mode which the perfect prophet and apostle, Akbar the Wise, has prescribed to his followers, is difficult, certainly the demons excite the spirit of brutish passion against his regulations; so that there are prophets who, captivated with lust, anger, pleasures of eating and drinking, costly garments, beautiful women, and engaged in oppression towards the children of one race, whom they call infidels, consider these practices not only as legal, but even as laudable, and tend towards them. So it happens that many learned men and their followers, who, for the sake of the world have chosen to obey these prophets, but in their heart deny them, and are aware of the falsehood of this sect, wait for an opportunity, with prudent regard to circumstances and a favorable hour, to
"adopt the regulations of Akbar."—Nobody in the assembly had an answer to give to the learned philosopher, who, after the effort which he had made, left the hall.

The lord vicar of God said to his disciples, that, it is an indispensable duty to worship God, the all-just, and that it is necessary to praise those who are near him; among mankind, said he, none is higher in rank than the planets, to the station of which no man can attain. None except God, the all-mighty, is the wish of the godly man, that is, whatever the godly undertakes, the object of his wish in it is God; for instance, he takes some food, that he may be able to perform the service of God; performs that service, that he may not be slack and deficient in his duties to God; desires a wife, that he may give existence to a virtuous son, worshipper of God; pays veneration to the lights of the stars, because they are near God the all-just; and abandons himself to sleep, that his soul may ascend to the upper world. Finally, the godly man is at all times in the

1 In the Transactions of the Literary Society of Bombay, vol. II. pp. 242-270, is to be found: "A Notice respecting the religion introduced "by the Emperor Akbar, by Captain Vans Kennedy, written in 1818."

with an elegant, but in several places abridged, translation of the just-given disputes, between the doctors of the different religions, in form of a dialogue, accompanied with valuable remarks respecting the author of the Dabistán, of which I availed myself in several quotations in the Preliminary Discourse, as well as in this place.
service and obedience of the all-just, and at no moment is he negligent in pious practices. Moreover, he thinks himself bound to abstain from hurting living beings, and he respects all the creatures of God. He does not cut grass and green trees without necessity, nor pollute the ground wantonly, except on a particular place; he throws neither water nor fire upon vile spots; he blesses the stars; further in this disposition he accustoms himself to abstinence in speaking, eating, and sleeping; he constrainst·s himself to many occupations: one of them is to close with his fingers the exterior organs; he dwells with veneration upon the image of the lord of fires (the sun), until he had carried this exercise so far that, by merely covering his eyes, the great object is present to him; then, whichever of the illustrious and mighty personages of Hind, or Iran, or Greece, or any other place, he wishes to see, that person presents himself to his view, and he sees lights, explores many ways, and makes himself master of the temporary and the eternal. The lord vicar of the all-just is called Ilahé, "divine," by his followers, because in all their actions the object of their wishes is God; and the lord has received the divine mission to establish the worship of the stars, which are to be the Kiblah of the pious. In the ancient books of the Hindus and Parsis, without number, the excellence of the constellations is affirmed.
Nain Javet gave the information that, in the reign of the lord (Akbar) the learned assembled, and Makh-judulm ul mulk gave the decision, that in this age it is not required to make the pilgrimage to Mecca; but that whoever makes it deserves punishment; for this reason; namely, because the road to Mecca by land passes through the middle of Irak, and by sea through Guzerat and the ports of the Farangis; by land it is unavoidable to hear unseemly speeches from the Kazel bashan; and on the voyage by sea to suffer much impropriety in the transactions and communications with the Farangis; because they have represented upon their papers the image of Jesus and the picture of Mary, which bear a resemblance to idolatry.

His majesty Akbar said one day that he heard from Shaikh Abdul Nabi, that one of the chief lawyers of the Sonnites declared the taking of nine wives to be legal, whilst other learned men denied it, and quoted the passage of the Koran:

"Take in marriage such women as please you, two, or three, or four."  

1 This refers principally to papers, such as passports, of the Portuguese, who, as I have been informed by Viscount Santarem, used to represent St. Catherine upon them, this saint being the patroness of Goa and of one of the principal confraternities; and the above-mentioned images are besides often used as ornaments of books and printed papers.

2 Others translate: "two, and three, and four," consequently nine wives; as the conjunction en, in Arabic, may mean or as well as and.— (See Transact. of the Lit. Soc. of Bombay, vol. II. p. 268.)
As even eighteen wives were said to be legal, then the learned gave the decision that it may be admissible, by the mode of matâh, "a temporary agreement," by means of which the obtaining of women is facilitated for a certain price; and this is permitted pursuant to the creed of the Imám Mâlik. The sect of the Shâ'ahs assert, that a son begotten in consequence of matâh, is preferable to all others. Nakib Khan followed the footsteps of the Imám Mâlik, who at last declared the matâh legal by a public patent. The sect of the Shâ'ahs quote, in support of this, the following passage of the Koran:

1 The passage of the Koran favorable to temporary marriage is in chap. IV. v. 28: "For the advantage which you receive from them, give them their reward (assign them their dower), according to what is ordained; but it shall not be criminal to make any other agreement among yourselves, after the ordinance shall be complied with." In this passage the word matâh occurs. This sort of marriage is also admitted in the Hâdâyâ fit forû, "The Guide in the Branches of the Law" (translated into English by Charles Hamilton," 1791).

Nevertheless it was a subject of great contest among the Muhammadan doctors whether such a connection be legitimate or not. The Imâm Abu Hanîfah and others declared it abrogated, according to the universal concurrence of the prophet's companions, on the authority of Ebn Abbas Abdallah, who died Hej. 68 (A. D. 687). This Imâm adduced the information received from Ali, who, on the day of the combat of Chaiâr (A. D. 630), heard the prophet declare that such marriages are forbidden. Moreover, a strong opposer to their legitimacy was Yâhia, the son of Aktam, son of Muhammed, son of Katan, a celebrated judge, who died in the year of the Hejîra 242 (A. D. 856). Living during the reign of Mumun, he succeeded in persuading the Khalif to prohibit by a decree temporary marriage, which he had before permitted.—(See Abulfeda, vol. II. pp. 193-199).
"Your women are a field for you: approach your field as you may like."

By which they pretend to show that any mode of coition is permitted. Náin Javet said that, when the era of the Muselmans was fixed, the people had a bad opinion of the companions of the prophet, and wise men called all the laws "prisons," and declared the centre of faith rests upon reason. Nobody disputed with them. Then arrived learned Farangis, and argued in their speeches. Shaikh Bhavan, so-called a learned Brahman from the country of Dekan, having conceived hatred towards his relations, became a Muselman, and obtained this name: he had the fourth Véda in his possession, and interpreted some precepts of this book, which contains many beauties, and a sentence like that of the Koran: "There is but one God;" and it was also stated therein, that whoever does not make this confession will not obtain salvation. In another place it was said that to eat cow's flesh was, under certain conditions, allowable; and elsewhere it was ordained to bury, and not to burn, a corpse. Thus, the before-said Shaikh was triumphant over the Brahmans. But Náin Javet related that he has requested him to interpret this passage; when he had translated it, its meaning was completely contrary and opposed to
the sentence: "There is but one God," and the restriction to eat cow's flesh also was contrary to the custom of the Muselmans; and concerning the burying of the dead he gave a different account from that which is lawful by the faith of the Muselmans. His Majesty (Akbar), with all those present, laughed at the Brahman, and said: "Look at these Musel- mans and Hindus, who among many conflicting arguments did not think to ask what was the meaning of the passages in question, and have praised me exceedingly."

Mir Sáíd Sheríf Amely came to the place of Dai-bál púr, and waited on his Majesty (Akbar), who was then taking part in a public dispute between a number of young men with some theologians, about Mah-múd, and he reduced them to silence. The Emperor conferred also many favors upon the said Mir, and the controversy in religion went so far that even doctors in law were accused of infidelity; learned men and Sufies declared in the celestial court (Akbar's), that wise and capable men existed in all religions: where then is the superiority and preponderance? More than one thousand years have not elapsed since this faith was established.

In like manner, a number of children were put in a place called Gangmahel, where every thing necessary was furnished to them; but none could articulate a letter; having remained there to their four-
teenth year, they were found to be dumb; which made it evident, that letters and language are not natural to man, that is, cannot be used unless they have been acquired by instruction, and it is then only that the use of conversation becomes possible. From this the conclusion was drawn, that the world is very ancient, and language of a long date, whence the Brahmans derive arguments founded upon reason and testimony for the truth of their religion and the futility of others.

The crown of the pious Shaikh Táj-ed-din, the son of Shaikh Zakríá Jondehení Dahluvi, explained the exterior rites of the mystic doctrine; the system of the unity of the real being; and the precepts of the religion of Pharâoh, which is the Fesus ul hikem, the "bezels of philosophers," 1 and the superiority of hope over fear. His Majesty Akbar liked the mode in which the Kings of Ajem performed worship; the Sufis, acknowledging holy personages as representing the Khalísfs of the age, used to prostrate themselves before them, touching the ground with their foreheads; this was intended to mark the secret meaning that the angels had once adored Adam. The truth is, that the wise are the terrestrial angels, who worship an holy personage as a Khalísfa, "vicar," of God; and for having attained to this dig-

1 This is a work of Mohi eddin Ibn Arabi, who died in the year of the Hejira 638 (A. D. 1240), of whom hereafter.
nity, they venerate him under a similar character, and call him also their Kabāh and Kiblah: because the heart of a just man is the heart of the all-just God, and it is to its door that they turn in the worship of God; in that sense Yākūb and his sons prostrated themselves before Yūsef.

Shaikh Yākūb, a grammarian of Kashmir, who was a spiritual guide of the age, related, as from Aīn alkasa Hamdāni, that Muhammed is the manifest name of a guide, and Iblis the manifest name of a seducer. Mulla Muhammed Yzedī blamed the three Khalifs, and reviled the companions of the prophet and their followers; he seduced people to the faith of Shāhs, and, having brought forth chapters of the Gospel, he drew from them a proof of the third person of the Trinity as being true, and confirmed the religion of the Nās aránains.

As his Majesty (Akbar) showed himself a friend of all men, he gave orders to the Nawab, the wise Shaikh Abu 'l Faz'īl,1 who frequently witnessed the

1 Abu 'l Fazīl, the wise minister of Akbar, is generally known by his work entitled Ayyīn Aḥkārī, "the Institutes of the Emperor Akbar," translated from the original Persian, by Francis Gladwin, in two volumes. This work contains the best statistical account hitherto given respecting India of those times. Abu 'l Fazīl was the first Muhammedan who bestowed attention upon the history and religion of the Hindus, and drew his information regarding them from their own books. It was by him, or under his eyes, that the Mahabharat was translated from Sanskrit into Persian. The tolerance and liberality of the Emperor Akbar towards all religions, and his attempt to establish a new creed, are generally ascribed
prodigious deeds of the emperor, to interpret several foreign works, and instead of the common sentence, "Bismilla," etc., he adopted another, viz.: "Thy name is a fortress, and thou art its foundation, "Thou art holy, and there is no God but God."

The Rajah Birber conceived in his mind that the sun is an object all comprehensive; that he causes the ripening of the grain, of the sown fields, of the fruits, and of all vegetables; and gives splendor and life; likewise, fire and water, and stones and trees, all are manifestations of God; he gave the mark on the forehead and the zunar. The learned brought it nearly to certainty that the sun, the great, the exalted luminary, is the benefactor of the world, and the protector of monarchs. The Yezdian said, that the sun is the world of spirits, the self-existent being; and the sun of the world of bodies is a luminary (a soul) which is the Khalifah, "the vicar," of God. A sect of the fire-worshippers stated also that the learned entertain conflicting opinions about the existence of spirits, of unity, and the self-existing being; and other sects denied this; but no denial is to the influence of his enlightened minister, who paid it with his life: for Jehangir, Akbar's fanatic son, hired assassins who murdered the excellent man, near Orcha, in the district of Narwar, on his return from the Dekan, during the life of Akbar, who, except his utmost indignation, had no punishment to inflict upon the heir-apparent of his empire.

1 افتَب، aftab, signifies sun and soul.
possible about the existence, the splendor, and the beneficence of the sun. His Majesty, Akbar, as he was ordered by God, used to read prayers, containing the praise of the sun, in the Persian, Hindi, Turkish, and Arabic languages, among which all was one prayer which is proper to the Hindus, and which they sing at midnight and at sun-rise. Besides, the emperor forbade his subjects to kill cows and to eat their flesh; because medical men have declared that cow's flesh causes itch, dry scab, leprosy, elephantiasis, and the like diseases, and is difficult to digest. The Hindus say also that, as many advantages are derived from the cow, it is not right to kill it. The Yezdánian maintained that it is tyranny to kill harmless animals, and a tyrant is an enemy of God, the Almighty. But the learned of the time showed in the book Serât ul mustakîm, "the "right road," composed by the Imám Majeddin Muhammed, son of Yakub, son of Muhammed, Firózábâdi,¹ that what is known

"The most excellent meat of both worlds is flesh."

This has not been firmly established, and in the subject of the excellence of hersiah, a kind of pottage,

¹ Majeddin Abu Thafer Muhammed ben Yakub is the compiler of the celebrated Arabic Dictionary, called Al kamus, already quoted, which from a work of sixty-five volumes was reduced to two. He is the author of several works besides the above-mentioned. He died in the year of the Hejira 817 (A. D. 1414).
nothing appeared, nor on the subject of the virtues of the white cock; and on the subject of bastards it is known:

"The illegitimate son has no access to paradise."

This was not firmly established, and is futile. His Majesty, the khalifah of the all-just, proclaimed himself the joyous tidings, that cows ought not to be killed. In like manner, the fire-worshippers, who had come from the town of Nóusari, situated in the district of Gujerát, asserted the truth of the religion of Zoroaster, and the great reverence and worship due to fire. The emperor called them to his presence, and was pleased to take information about the way and lustre of their wise men. He also called from Persia a follower of Zardusht, named Ardeshir, to whom he sent money; he delivered the sacred fire with care to the wise Shaikh Abu 'l Faz'il, and established that it should be preserved in the interior apartment by night and day, perpetual henceforth, according to the rule of the Mobeds, and to the manner which was always practised in the fire-temples of the Kings of Ajem, because the 

\[ Iti \ set \]

was among the sentences of the Lord, and light from among the lights of the great Ized. He invited likewise the fire-worshippers from Kirman to his presence, and questioned them about the subtilties of

\[ I \ am \ not \ acquainted \ with \ the \ subjects \ above \ alluded \ to; \ nor \ does \ the \ text \ appear \ connected. \]
Zardusht’s religion; and he wrote letters to Azer-Káivan, who was a chief of the Yezdáníán and Abádáníán, and invited him to India; Azer-Káivan begged to be excused from coming, but sent a book of his own composition in praise of the self-existing being, of reason, the soul, the heavens, the stars, and the elements; as well as a word of advice to the King; all this contained in fourteen sections: every first line of each was in Persian pure deri; when read invertedly, it was Arabic; when turned about, Turkish; and when this was read in reversed order, it became Hindi. The Nawab, the wise Shaikh Abu l Fazil placed a full confidence in Azer Káivan; he called the inhabitants of Ajem and Arabia “infestors of roads,” and the people of Islám “accursed.” The wise Shaikh Abu l Fazil said in Fatah púr to Abd ul Káder Bedávani: “I have to complain of the authors of books for two reasons: the first is, that they have not explicitly enough written the account of ancient prophets, similar to that of their own prophet; the second is, that nothing remained of the industrious men whose name is not mentioned in the Tazkeret-ul-awlia, the Story of the Saints, and the Nafhát alvins.

1 Composed by Ferid eddin Attlar.
2 This is a work of the celebrated Abd-al rahmen Ja’mi; its whole title is: Kitab-u-nafhát-i l’ uns-i, mîn hazarat-i l Kades, translated by Silvestre de
"...the fragrant Gales of Mankind, and the like; and the family of the prophet, what was their guilt that their names were not admitted into them?" Abd ul Káder gave no satisfactory answer. Gházi Khán Baddakshi, who had not his equal in logical science, treated explicitly and laboriously in sections of the just Imám (Alí), and established by investigation his superior merit in other treatises; and other learned men exercised their sagacity upon this subject.

In the month Rajeb of the year of the Hejira 987 (A. D. 1579), the Emperor Akbar was ordered (by Heaven) to fix the sentence: "There is but one God, and Akbar is his Khalifah," to be used. If the people really wished it, they might adopt this faith; and his Majesty declared, that this religion ought to be established by choice, and not by violence. In this manner, a number of men, who were more pious or wise than those of their times, chose this creed according to their conscience. The command came from God, that the attachment to the cause of the Lord God and to one's master has four degrees,

"...Sacy, "les Haleines de la familiarité, provenant des personages eminentes en sainteté," the breathings of familiarity proceeding from personages eminent in sanctity." Baron von Hammer rendered the title by: "Die Hauhe der Mensheit," "the Breathings of Mankind;" Nefkat being interpreted in the Dictionary, by "a breath of wind, a fragrant gate, perfume, (metaphorically for) good fame." I preferred the version given in the text.
which are: sacrifice of property, life, reputation, and religion. The command of the Ilahi, "divine," faith means that, in case of an indispensable conflict, if one does not sacrifice all he possesses, he must renounce these four degrees. Further, it is the divine command, that one may relinquish something of the four degrees, but never make an abandonment of his God.

The Emperor further said, that one thousand years have elapsed since the beginning of Muhammad's mission, and that this was the extent of the duration of this religion, now arrived at its term.

Another of his ordinances abolished absolutely the obligation of bathing after pollution by spermatic emission. The sages said that the most exquisite and best part of a man is mani, "sperm," and that the seed of creation is pure. What sense is there that, after the common natural secretions bathing be not required, whilst the release of a quantity of delicate matter is subject to an entire ablution? Yet it is suitable to bathe before indulging sexual propensity.

It is equally absurd to prepare food for the spirit of a corpse, which then belongs to minerals: what sense is there in it? Yet the birth-day of a person is justly made a great festival, and called "the banquet of life." Moreover, when one's soul has attained the full knowledge of the primitive cause, and has left its mortal garment, this day also is devoted to rejoicing, and named "the day of union."
On account of the difference between the era of the Hindus and that of the Hejira used by the Arabs, the Emperor introduced a new one, beginning from the first year of the reign of Hamáyún, which is 965 of the Hejira (A. D. 1555-6); the names of the months were those used by the Kings of Ajem; and fourteen festivals in the year instituted, coinciding with those of Zardusht, were named "the years and days of Ilahi." This arrangement was established by Hakim Sháh Fattah ulla Shirázi. On account of hearing so many disputes of the learned in the midst of the multitude, the custom of reading the comments on the Koran and the science of religion and law, were laid aside, and in their place astronomy, physic, arithmetic, mysticism, poetry, and chronology became current. The people of Ajem used to repeat frequently these verses:

"By living upon milk of camels and upon lizards,
"The Arabians raised their fortune;
"So that they now covet Ajem:
"Fie upon thee, O revolving world, fie!"

Khaja abd ul látif, who was one of the distinguished personages of Maverah ul naher, gifted with the talent of subtle distinctions, raised doubts upon the truth of the saying:

1 Abdul latif Khan, son of Abdalla, prince of the Usbecks, died in the year of the Hejira 948 (A. D. 1541).
"The neck of the lord Muhammad is similar to the neck of an idol."

If that prevailed, then idolatry would be laudable. In like manner, the tradition about the she-camel straying far off, which is published in the Sir, "acts and deeds;" then the assault upon the caravan of the Koraish, in the beginning of the Hijra; also demanding nine wives, and the interdiction of women from husbands according to the pleasure of

---

¹ This appears an allusion to the following occurrence: Ayesha, Muhammad's favorite wife, accompanied the prophet on an expedition against the tribe of the Mostalek, in the sixth year of the Hijra (A.D. 627). During the night-march, according to her own statement, she alighted from her camel, in order to search for a valuable necklace which she had dropped. On account of her light weight, her absence was not perceived by the drivers, who went on and left her alone on the road. There, having laid down and fallen asleep, she was the next morning found by Saifan Ebn al Moattel, and brought, at noon, on his own camel to Muhammad's next resting-place. This occurrence raised suspicions respecting Ayesha's virtue; Muhammad found necessary to inveigh against slander in the Koran (chap. XXIV), and to punish the free-speakers as slanderers: but he could not silence the severe reflections of some respectable men, among whom was Ali. — (Hammer's Gemäldeaal, 1er Band. Sixte, 144-145.

² Muhammad made, in the beginning of the Hijra, several unsuccessful attempts to intercept the caravans of the Koreish, his enemies; at last, in the second year of the Hijra (A.D. 623), took place the battle of Bedr, in the valley of the same name, near the sea, between Mecca and Medina. Muhammad, with 319 combatants, had marched to take a caravan of the Koreish, which, richly laden, returned from Syria; apprised of it, the inhabitants of Mecca sent 950 men to succour the caravan: this force was attacked and routed by Muhammad's inferior number, assisted by angels, and a rich booty fell into his hands.

³ See vol. III. p. 79.
the prophet, and this taking place; the companions giving up their body; which is to be known by reading the book Sir; further, the appointment of the three first khalifs; the affair of Fadék; the war of Safín; the victory of the Shiás; and the defeat of the Sonnites: all these topics are subject to reflection.

At a convivial meeting on the new-year's festival, a Kási and a Muñi were inclined to drink cups of wine. Shaik Abu 'l Fazíl, as a counterpart to the explanation of the verse of the Koran, called "the throne," composed a sermon in two parts. He also translated the Mahábhárata, which is the history of the wars of the ancient Hindu chiefs. Some learned men denied absolutely the affair of Muham-

1 See vol. III. p. 39.
3 See vol. III. p. 31.
4 See vol. III. pp. 39-60. note 2.
5 This is the 2566th verse of chapter II. It is justly admired by the Muhammedans, who recite it in their prayer, and some of them wear it about them, engraved on an agate or other precious stone. Here it follows, as translated by Sale, who remarks that his translation must not be supposed to equal the dignity of the original (vol. I. p. 47): "God! there is no God but he; the living, the self-substituting; neither slumber nor sleep seizeth him; to him belongeth whatsoever is in heaven and on earth. Who is he that can intercede with him, but through his good pleasure? He knoweth that which is past, and that which is to come to them, and they shall not comprehend any thing of his knowledge, but so far as he pleaseth. His throne is extended over heaven and earth, and the preservation of both is no burden unto him. He is the High, the Mighty."
med's marriage night with Sidikah, and blamed the
deed of David concerning Uriah's wife.

When the Sultán Khajah, who was one of the
Ilahian, was about to leave this world, he said to the
emperor: "Let not your Majesty bury me as if I had
been an adorer of Divs." On that account he was
placed in a tomb with lamps, like a person of dis-
tinction, and a lattice was left towards the great
majestic luminary, the splendor of which purifies
from of all sins. Further, orders were issued that,
in imitation of the kings of Ajem, low people may be
prevented from reading the books of the wise, and
from the pursuit of sciences. By other ordinances,
the affairs of the Hindus were to be decided by
learned Brahmans, and those of Muselmans by their
own Kásis. Likewise the followers of other reli-
gions and persuasions received orders, that the head
of a corpse may be laid in a tomb towards the east,

1 Sidikah, "the true," is a surname given by the Muhammedans to the
blessed Virgin, and to Ayisha', daughter of Abu-bekr, and wife of Mu-
hammed. At nine years of age, her mother took her down from a swing
suspended between two palm-trees, where she childishly slept, and placed
her upon the lap of the prophet, a bridegroom of fifty-two years. She
was but eighteen when he died. She then became the head of a party
hostile to All. She never forgot the austere judgment which he had
passed upon the occurrence related in the preceding note (p. 100 note 1);
not satisfied with having discarded him more than twenty-three years from
the khalifat, she led in person a strong army against him, to wrest it from
his hands: but was taken in battle, generously treated, and sent to
Medina, where she died in the year of the Hejira 38 (A. D. 677), having
attained the prophet's age of sixty-three years.
and its feet towards the west; and that persons, even in their sleep, may dispose themselves in that direction. It was further ordained, that the Italic may not apply to any other sciences of the Arabs but to astronomy, arithmetic, physic, and philosophy, and not spend their life-time in the pursuit of what is not reasonable. The interdiction of slaying cows was confirmed. It was also regulated, that a Hindu woman is not to be prevented from burning with her dead husband, but that the sacrifice ought to take place without violence used towards, or abhorrence shewn by, the widow. Another regulation was that, whoever eats with one whose profession is the slaughter of animals, should have his hand cut off; but only a finger, if he belong to the people of his house.

Again, a woman who is going about in narrow streets or in market-places, without having at that time her face veiled, ought not to be approached by her husband; and a woman of improper conduct, who quarrels with her husband, ought to be sent to the place of prostitutes, whose business it is to offer themselves for sale. In addition to this, in times of distressing famine, a father and a mother may happen to sell their children under age; when they find themselves in better circumstances, they must be allowed, by giving money, to rescue their offspring from the bonds of servitude. Moreover, a Hindu
who, in his infancy, without his will, has been made a Muselman, if later he chooses to return to the faith of his fathers, is at liberty to do so, and is not to be prevented from it; also every person is permitted to profess whatever religion he chooses, and to pass, whenever he likes, from one religion to another.

But if a Hindu woman, having fallen in love with a Muselman, wishes to adopt his religion, she can be taken by force and delivered up to her family. And likewise a Muselman woman, if she has fallen in love with an Hindu, and wishes to adopt his faith, is prevented from it, and not admitted in his caste. Finally, the erection of a temple of idols, of a church, of a fire-temple, and a sepulchral vault, ought not to be impeded, nor the building of a mosque for the Muselmans.

Sader Jehan adopted the Ilahi religion. Achar called the harmless animals the beasts of peace, and showed abhorrence to their slaughter. He mixed the best and purest part of every religion for the formation of his own faith. Mulla Tersün Badakhshi, who was a Muselman of the Hanifa creed, informed me, in the Hejira 1058 (A. D. 1648-9), that one day he went on a pilgrimage to visit the sepulchre of Akbar, the inhabitant of heaven; there, one of his friends, having hurt his foot in climbing up the holy tomb, set about reviling the khalifah of God. The companions said: "If the blessed Em-
"'peror, now in heaven, have any power, that man will certainly come to some misfortune." Soon after, indeed, he broke a toe of his foot by a stone which had fallen down from a crevice of the wall. In one of Akbar's works we find, that it is indispensable to worship God, the all-just, and necessary to praise the beings near him; that none of mankind rise to the rank of stars, as men are not equal to the dignity of celestial luminaries. The Emperor inculcated on his followers, that a godly man ought to know no other object of his wishes but God, the Almighty; that is, whatever business the godly undertakes, his wish in that business ought to tend towards God.

Section III.—Upon the virtues of the stars, according to reason, manifestation, revelation, and tradition.

Aghátho démon, or Shis, and Hermes al hermes, or

1 According to Sheristáni, there is a sect called Hernánites, or Herránites, disciples of a certain Hernan, a branch of the Sabean, of whom hereafter; these sectaries designate, as authors of their scientific treatises, four prophets, among whom are Agatho démon and Hermes. Agatho démon, that is to say, "the good genius," was an Egyptian
Idris, and the philosophers said, that the Almighty Author created the celestial bodies and the stars in such a manner that, from their movements, effects may be manifested in the nether world, that is to say, the events below are subject to their motions, and every constellation, and every degree of altitude has its particular nature; which being known by experience, and information having been collected about the qualities of the degrees, the celestial signs, and their influences, it is in this manner evident that they are near the all-just; and that the house of prayer, the Kâbah of truth, and the Kiblah of conviction is heaven. The wise men believe, that every master of fame worshipped one of the stars: thus Moses worshipped Saturn, as Saturday god. According to general belief, this denomination is the approximative translation of *Knef*, or "the good principle," and in that acceptation it was applied to other deities, as for instance, to the Nile, and typified as the emblem of wisdom, prudence, life, health, youth, eternity, and infinitude, in the *inoffensive serpent*; new and then this form is combined with that of other animals. According to some authors, Agathodemon was the Egyptian *Chetmuph*; and to him are attributed a number of works, a list of which is given by Fabricius in his "Bibliotheca græca."

1 The first Hermes of the Orientals lived one thousand years after Adam, in the beginning of their second solar millenium, and was no other but Idris, or Enoch; the second in the third solar millenium, was the *Trismegist* of the Greeks. According to Abu'l farage, the second was the third; and between these two intervened a Chaldean or Babylonian Hermes, who lived a few centuries after the deluge, and to whom the principal notions of astronomy are referred. A disciple of the first Hermes, or of Idris, was Esulapius, of whom hereafter.
is holy to the Jews, and Moses vanquished the magicians and enchanters who are subservient to Saturn; Jesus worshipped the sun, on which account Sunday was sanctified by him, and finally his soul united with the sun; Muhammed worshipped Venus, wherefore he fixed upon Friday as a sacred day: as he would not reveal this meaning to the common people, he kept it secret; but it is evident from the prophet's customs that he held Venus in great veneration; one of these was his passion for perfumes and the like. 1 We find in the histories of the Persians, that Ferhósh was a king in the time of Abád, and had poets without number about him; out of them all he chose seven; each of them, on one day of the week, recited his verses to the king. On Sunday, which was consecrated to the great luminary, the monarch used to go to the Kermábah, and on his return from thence, having approached the august image of the great fire, and there performed his worship, he betook himself to his palace. The chief of the speech-adoring bards, called Shedósh, came then into the royal presence. As the King professed the religion of the Yezdáníán, who never hurt an harmless animal, they brought, on this day

1 Muhammed used to say: "I like of your world but women and perfumes, and God has placed the refreshment of my eyes in prayers."

—(Baron Hammer.)

2 This word, not in the Dictionary, means perhaps "assembly of the nobles."
sacred to the sun, Sirdin, that is "rice," and Perdin, called in Hindostan pahati, before the King, and peas in the shell, which were then stript of their integuments. The King asked Shedosh: "For whom is this food?" The poet answered: "For the friend who, for the sake of retirement, is naked from head to foot." The monarch, being pleased with this answer, filled the poet's mouth with precious pearls of the purest water. The Queen, named Shuker, averting her heart from the King her husband, attached it passionately to the sweet composer of melodious speeches. When night came on, Shuker, believing that the King slept, went out by stealth. The King too followed her steps. When Shuker arrived at the house of Shedosh, many words occurred between them. Then the poet said to her: "A woman fears nobody; on that account she ought to be feared. Thou hast left Ferhosh, the King, and wilt devote thy affections to one like me!" Upon these words, the woman returned home without hope, and Shedosh turned his face to the image of the sun. But his looks fell upon one of the maids who were adorers of the sun, and desired her to converse with him; the maid, indignant at such a proposal, having approached the image of the sun, said: "I am thy worshipper; and this is not the time for associating with men; this poet of the King addressed to me an improper
"speech." When Shidósh came to the image of the sun, he found himself afflicted with a malady, and returned ashamed. Afterwards he went to the King, who, having seen him the night before in company with Shuker, said: "Shidósh, if thou speakest not the truth, thou shalt be put to death: what didst thou mean by saying that a woman fears nobody? Shidosh replied:

"A woman is a king; her strength is that of an ocean;
"It opens its passage, and has fear of nobody."

The King was pleased with this speech, and bestowed Shuker on him as a gift; whatever excuses Shidosh offered, the sovereign did not listen to them; wherefore the poet brought the king's wife to his house. But, from disease, his flesh began to diminish, and he was so far reduced as to be unable to leave his house. Thus it was, until the son of the king came to visit his father, and requested to see the royal poets. The King, having convoked six of them, ordered that Shidosh should recite his verses sitting behind a curtain. Shidosh, having heard this order, demanded at the very moment that a fire should be kindled, and in the midst an iron chain adjusted to suspend a seat above the flames. He resolved to himself from thence to address his praises to the majesty of the great fire, the sun; if he received them with favor, so much the better; if not, to throw himself into the fire, and so
to obtain his due. He then got upon the seat, and began to chant the verses which he had composed in honor of the sun: at this very time his leprosy disappeared. But, before he had ended his poem, his followers thought the great luminary would not grant his wish; and the poet, from fear of his life, would not throw himself into the fire; therefore, pulling the chair by means of the chain, they precipitated it into the flames. But after falling, he felt the fire had no effect upon him, and although dejected, remaining in his seat, he terminated his praise; then coming forth, he approached the King, and recited the verses which he had composed for the occasion; he subjoined: "O King, I have not been guilty of any vile deed on this occasion; but on the same day, at the time when the women approach the image of the sun, I also went there, and the guards did not know me. But the rebellious spirit had his play with me, so that, supposing a virtuous woman I beheld to be unmarried, I spoke improper words to her; on that account I was punished; but at the same time I held Shuker as a mother."

Hóshang, the King, in the work Bahín ferah, "the highest dignity," which is written to inculcate the duties towards the sanctity of the stars, states great miracles of every luminary. We read likewise, in the Mahábbarat, that the Rája Jedeshter
(Yudhishthira)\(^1\) attained the fulfilment of his wishes by worshipping the sun. As the Mahābhārata is all symbolic, we also find there that the sun, having appeared to him in the form of a man, announced to him: "I am pleased with thee; I will provide thee with food during twelve years, then for the space of thirteen years thou wilt obtain a wonderful empire." And the sun gave him a kettle, saying: "The property of this kettle is, that every day all sort of food in such quantity as thou wishest, comes forth from it, under the condition that thou first distributest it among Brahmans and Fakirs, and then among thy valiant brothers, the Kshatriyas." Herodotes, the author of the history of the Yūnān (Greeks), stated that in a town of Rūmī there was in a temple an idol in the shape of Iskalāpūs, which was known under the image of Apū, that is "the sun," and that, whatever question they addressed was answered by him.\(^2\)

---

\(^1\) Yudhishthira, according to the Viṣṇu-pureṇa (Wilson's transl., pp. 437-439), was the son of Kuntī, also called Pritha', and of the deities Dharma, Vayu, and Indra. He was the half-brother of Karna, whom his mother conceived by Aditya, "the sun."

\(^2\) In the History of Herodotus, if this be meant above, the name of Esculapius does not occur. The denomination of Rumi may be applied to Asia Minor, Turkey, the whole ancient and modern empire of the Greeks and Romans; in so vast a space there was certainly more than one town with a temple and an oracular statue of Esculapius. One circumstance is singularly true in the above account of Apu, to wit: that Esculapius was formerly called Apios, Άπιος, and as Άπιος Άπιος, Ἐινιον γίνοντας adjuto-
The raiser of this figure was Iskalápiús. In the opinion of the Magians of Rúmi, it rendered oracles, because, having been made in strict dependency on the observation of the motions of the seven planets at the most suitable moments, it was constituted in such a manner that one of the spirits of the stars descended into it; and therefore answered any question asked from him. The name of this figure was Saklapes.  

The Sabeans believe that in some of their idols a white hand appears. Further, the wise men of Persia, Greece, India, and the Sabeans, all acknowledge the stars as the Kiblah, and the blessed Emperor (Akbar) also received divine commands with regard to them.

In the histories of the Turks is to be found that Jangiskhan  worshiped the stars, and several

rem invocabunt Esculapii filium—{see Iycophron, v. 1054}; and that he was often confounded with the sun, as son of Apollo, who also was the sun, and of the nymph Coronis, who was the daughter of Phlegyas, that is, "the heat of the sun."

1 Saklapes probably stands for Serapis. It is known that Serapis and Bacchus were the sun of autumn and the sun of spring. Serapis bore sometimes the character of the Egyptian Chnúm, surnamed Esculapius. To predict and to resuscitate were powers attributed to Apollo-Esculapius. As the latter, so had Serapis a serpent. He was also Osiris. Helios-Serapis and Jupiter-Serapis are read upon bronzes. Temples of Serapis were numerous in Asia, Thracia, Greece, and Italy. I shall only mention that of Antium, and that at Rome, on an island of the Tiber, beyond the pons Palatinus.

2 Jangis khan, originally called Tamujin, was, according to Chinese and
things of wonderful meaning were connected with his person. In the first line was that which they call the state of washt. Some of the spirits of the stars were his assistants. During several days he was in a swoon, and in this state of senselessness all that the world-conquering Khan could articulate was Hu, hu! It is said that on the first manifestation of this malady, he obtained union with spirits, victories, and revelations of mysteries. The very same coat and garment which he first put on were deposited in a wardrobe, there sealed up, and kept by themselves. Every time that the illustrious Khan fell into this state, his people dressed him in that coat, and every event, victory, purpose, discovery of enemies, defeat, conquest of countries, which he desired, came upon his tongue; a person wrote down every thing, and put it into a bag which he sealed. When the world-seizing Khan recovered his senses, every thing was read to him and he acted accordingly, and every thing he had said took place. He possessed perfectly the science of divination by means of combs, and having burnt them, gave his decisions in a manner different from that of Moghul authorities (see Geschichte der Ost-mongolen von Isaak Jacob Schmidt, Seite 376), born in the year of the Hijra 538 (A. D. 1162), in Dilim Jatu'n. It was in the year 1206 of our era that he received, in a general assembly of submissive Tartars, the name of Jangis-khan, "Great Khan:" his own tribe, which was that of Moghuls, before him called Bida, he raised to pre-eminence over all the Tartars.

V. III.
other diviners who paid attention to combs. It is said that, when this conqueror of the world fell into the hands of his enemies, he recovered his liberty by the assistance of Amīr Shīr Khān, who, having given him a mare of Kirang, enabled him to join his men, who had already despaired of his life. Tului Khān, who was then in his infancy, said one day: "My father, sitting upon a mare of Kirang, is com-
ing near." On this very day, the Khan returned in that manner to his camp. When the Turks saw the wonders of his acts, they opened freely the road of their affection to him. Such was his justice and equity, that in his army nobody was bold enough to take up a whip thrown on the road, except the proprietor of it; lying and thieving were unknown in his camp. Every woman among the Khorāsāniān, who had a husband living, had no attempt upon her person to fear. Thus we read in the Tabkat Nāṣerī, "the degrees of Nāṣer,"¹ that when Malik Tāj-ed-dīn, surnamed the King of Ghōr, re-

¹ This is a work of Nāṣer eddīn Tuṣī (about whom, see vol. II. p. 417, note 2, and p. 449). He was the favorite minister of Hulagu Khan, whose arms he had successfully directed against Baghdad and the Khalif. The Khan, after his conquests, took up his residence at Maragha, in Aderbīgān; there he assembled philosophers and astronomers to cultivate science, under the direction of Nāṣer eddin. In our days the place is still shown where the observatory of this astronomer was situated, and where he compiled the astronomic tables, known under the name of Jai-khanī.
turned with the permission of Jangis Khan, from the country of Tálkán to Ghór, he related the following anecdote: When I had left the presence of Jangis Khan, and sat down in the royal tent, Aghlán herbi, with whom I came, and some other friends, were with me, a Moghul brought two other Moghuls, who the day before had fallen asleep when on the watch, saying: “I struck their horses with the whip, rebuking them for their guilt in sleeping, yet left them; but to-day I have brought them here.” Aghlan faced these two Moghuls, asking them: “Have you fallen asleep?” Both avowed it. He then ordered one of them to be put to death; and that his head should be tied to the hair lock of the other; the latter then to be conducted through the camp, and afterwards executed. Thus it was done. I remained astonished, and said to Aglan: “There was no witness to prove the guilt of the Moghuls; as these two men knew that death awaits them, why have they confessed? If they had denied, they would have saved themselves.” Aghlan Herbi replied: “Why art thou astonished? You, Tají Khan, you act in this way, and tell lies; but, should a thousand lives be at stake, Moghuls would not utter a lie.”

Jangis Khan raised Oktáyi Khan to the rank of a Khalíf, “successor.” Chátayí Khan, who was his

1 Jangis Khan had four sons, whose rank of seniority is differently
elder brother, in a drunken fit dashed his horse against Oktáyi Khan, and then hurried away. When he became sober, he reflected upon the danger which would ensue from his act, and that the foundation of the monarchy might be destroyed in consequence of it; therefore, presenting himself as a criminal, he said to his brother: "How could a man like me presume to measure himself with the King, and dash his horse against him! Therefore I am guilty, and confess my crime. Put me to death, or use the whip against me: you are the judge." Oktáyi replied: "A miserable like myself, what place should he take? You are the master: what am I—that is, you are the elder, I the younger, brother." Finally, Chengháyi, presenting him nine horses, said: "I offer this as a grateful acknowledgment that the King did not exercise his justice towards me, and that he forgives my crime."

When Oktáyi Khan dispatched Jermághún, a com-

---

stated by different authors, and among whom he divided his vast empire. Oktáyi was to rule all the countries of the Moghuls, Kathayans, and others extending towards the East. He died in the year of the Hejira 639 (A. D. 1241). Cháttayi was to possess Mawer ul nahir, Turkistan, Balkh, and Badakhshan. He died in the year of the Hejira 638 (A. D. 1240). Jují was to reign over Desht, Kapeh, Kharism, Khizer, Bulgaria, Lokmin, Alan, As, Russia, and the northern countries. He died in Hejira 624 (A. D. 1226), during his father's life. Tuli Khan received for his share Khorassan, India, and Persia; he died soon after his father; but his sons, Manjuka, Kobal, and Hulagu became celebrated in history.
mander of a district furnishing ten thousand men, with an army of thirty thousand warriors, to re-
duce the sultan Jelal eddin,1 king of Khārazm, at the time of the breaking up of the army, he said
to one of the Omrās, who was subordinate to Jer-
maghūn: "The great affair of Jelal eddin in thy
"hand will sufficiently occupy thee." Finally, this
Amir, having fallen upon the Sultan Jelal-eddin in
Kurdistan, destroyed him completely. The libe-
rality and generosity of Oktāyikān was as conspi-
cuous as the sun. When Tayir Baháder, in the year
of the Hejira 625 (A. D. 1227) moved the army of
the Moghuls from Abī' al to the country of Sistān, they
besieged the fort Arak; at that time the plague mani-
ifested itself among the Moghuls, so that, at first, a
pain was felt in the mouth, then the teeth moved,
and on the third day death ensued. Malik Sālākin,

1 Jangis Khan, during his terrific career, in the fourteenth year of
slaughter, devastation, and conquest, fell upon the empire of Kharism
and Ghazni. Muhammed of the Seljuks was driven from all his posses-
sions, and died a fugitive. He had before divided his empire between
his four sons, to one of whom Jela'î eddin, he had assigned Kharizm,
Khorassan, Mazinderan, Ghazni, Bamian, Ghur, Bost Takanad, Zamigdand,
and all the Indian provinces. This prince, retiring before superior forces
towards Ghazni, gained two battles over the Moghuls, but was at last
obliged to fly to the banks of the Indus. There, closely pressed by the
enemies, who murdered his captive son seven years old before his eyes, he
threw his mother, wife, and the rest of his family, at their own desire,
into the water, and then swam, with a few followers, across the river,
before his admiring pursuers, who followed him no further.
the governor of the fort, fixed upon the stratagem that seven hundred young men should lie in ambush: who, when they should hear the sound of the war-drum from the eastern gate, opposite which they were placed, were to break out from the ambush, and fall on the back of the enemies. Conformably with this plan, in the morning the eastern gate was opened, and the Muselmans were engaged in the assault; but when the drum was beaten, nobody came forth from the ambush: after three watches, a man was sent to bring intelligence from that quarter, but he found them all dead.

The world-conquering Jangiz Khan, at the time of his wasting away, said to his sons: "Never deviate from your faith, nor lend your powerful support to other religions; because, as long as you remain firmly rooted in your faith, your people and companions will acknowledge you as the chiefs of their faith, and count you as the leaders of worship; but he who changes his religion for that of others, being a chief of the faith, may be still considered as a chief by the people of the new religion; but in the eyes of his own people will lose that dignity: because he who passes over with you to another faith will esteem as chiefs those of the new faith; besides, he who remains attached to my faith will also be displeased with you for not having continued in the religion of his fa-
... thers.” To sum up all, as long as they conformed themselves to the last will of the Khan, they were powerful; but when they deviated from his counsel, they sunk into distress and abjection. The stars were favorable to them in every thing.¹

It is related: Kik Khan, who was of the family of Chaghaty Khan, was one day walking with noblemen of his suit in the plain, travelling about in the desert. At once, his looks fell upon bones; at the same moment he became thoughtful, and then asked: “Do you know what this handful of bones says to me?” They replied: “The King knows best.” He resumed: “They demand justice from me as being oppressed.” He demanded information about the history of these bones from Amir Hazarah, who held this country under his dependence. This governor inquired of Amir Sadah, who administered this district under him; and after reiterated

¹ Jangis Khan died in the year of the Hijra 626 (A.D. 1228), in his sixty-sixth year. He left an empire which extended from the Indus to the Black sea; from the banks of the Wolga to the remote plains of China; and from the arid shores of the Persian gulf to the cold deserts of Siberia. Having, in his early age, been driven by his subjects from his home, he passed several years under the protection of a Christian prince, Awenk Khan, or Ungh Khan, known to Europeans under the name of Prester John; and was therefore supposed by some to have adopted the Christian religion: thus much is true—he and his successors protected the Christians and persecuted the Mohammedans, until Nikuda’r Oglan professed the Mohammedan faith, in A.D. 1281, and drove the Christians out of his empire.
investigations, it became clear that, nine years before, a caravan had been attacked at this place by a band of highwaymen, and plundered of their property, a part of which remained still in the hands of the guilty. At last it was recovered from the murderers, and restored to the heirs of the slain who were in Khorásán.

It is said that, when an army of the Moghuls was occupied with the siege of the fort of Imbâl, in which were the mother and several women of the king of Khârârem, nobody had ever given information that the garrison was distressed for want of water. Although a quantity of rain-water was collected in the reservoirs, so that during years they had no need of spring-water, yet at the time when the Moghuls were encamped before the place to reduce it, no rain had fallen, and one day not a drop of water remained in the reservoirs; the next day the women of the Turks and Naṣârâ eddîn, with thirsty lips, compelled by necessity came down to surrender; but at the very moment that they arrived at the foot of the fort, and the army of the Moghuls entered it, a heavy rain began to pour down, so that the water ran out from the ditches of the fort. When this intelligence was brought to the Sultan Muhammed, sovereign of Khârazem, he become insensible, and when he recovered his senses, he died without being able to utter a word.
Upon the whole: as long as the Sultans of the Moghuls preserved the worship of the stars, they conquered the inhabitants of the world; but, as soon as they abandoned it, they lost many countries, and those which they kept were without value and strength. ¹

Section IV.—Upon the sayings of his Majesty (Akbar), dwelling in the seventh heaven.

First, the ordinances of conduct which the Nawab, the wise and learned Shaikh Abu 'l Fazil wrote, with the pen of accuracy, by orders of his Majesty, dwelling in heaven, in order that the governors of the countries occupied by his sovereignty, and the clerks, may pay attention to their execution.

This is "God is great;" this is the patent of the Ilahi faith: and the ordinances of conduct are a work of instruction, which sprung from the fountain of benevolence, and the mine of kindness of sovereignty,

¹ The duration of Jangis Khan's dynasty reckoned from the year of the Hejira 599 (A. D. 1202) extended by fourteen princes to 736 (A. D. 1335), comprising 137 lunar, 133 solar, years. It does not appear that change of religion, by itself, had any influence upon the decline and fall of this dynasty.
and according to which the regulators of the royal offices, the managers of the Khalifa's court among his fortunate sons, the gentle-minded princes, the Omrahs, high in dignity, all men of rank, the collectors of revenues and the Kótwals may settle their practices; and in the arrangement of important affairs in great cities and in villages, and in all places maintain their authority.

The principal point is summarily this: that, in all transactions, they may endeavor to deserve the divine favor, by their usages and pious practices; and that, humbly suppliant in the court of God, without partial complacence to themselves and to others, they may execute the law in their proceedings. Another point is, that they may not too much like their private apartment; for this is the manner of the desert-choosing dervishes; that they may not accustom themselves to sit in the society of common people, nor to mix in large crowds; for this is the mode of market people; in short, that they may keep the medium between the two extremes, and never forsake the just temperance; that is, avoid equally excess in dissipation and retirement. Besides, they are enjoined to venerate those who are distinguished by devotion to the incomparable God; to take the habit of vigilance in the morning and evening, and particularly at midnight; and at all times, when they are free from the affairs of God's
creatures, to occupy themselves with perusing the books of the masters of purity and sanctity, and the books of moral philosophy, which is the medicine of spirituality and the essence of all sciences; such as *Ikhlās Naseri, “the Ethics of Naş'ery;”* and *manjiat va mahelkat, “the Causes of Salvation and Perdition,” Ahyāyi ḍlûm āl din, “the Revival of the Sciences of Faith;”* the *Kimiāyi Sâadet, Al-chymy of Felicity;”* and *Masnavi, “the poetical composition of the Mâlavi of Rûm,”* so that having attained the highest degree of religious knowledge, they may not be liable to be moved from their station by the fictions of the masters of deceit and falsehood; as in this state of dependence the best sort of worship is, after all, the most im-

1 A work of Naş'ir-eddin Tusi, upon whom see vol. II. p. 417.
2 This is a celebrated work of Ghazâli.—(See vol. II. p. 330, note.)
3 A work of the same author.
4 *Rums* is the surname under which *Ali Ebn Abbas*, an illustrious poet, is most known. He was of Turkish origin, but born in Syria. He composed several works, which Avisenna used to read with delight, and the most difficult passages of which he commented. He died in the year of the Hejira 283 (A. D. 896)—(see Herbelot). But the poet above alluded to is *Mowlana Jelal eddin Rumi*, whose proper name is Muhammad of Balkh, who derives his origin from Muhammad, son of Amam. He is praised as the greatest mystical poet of the Orient, the oracle of the Sûfis, the nightingale of contemplative life, the author of the Masnavi (a double-rhymed poem), the founder of the Mawlavis, the most celebrated order of mystic Durwishes. He died in the year of the Hejirah 661 (A. D. 1262). We shall quote hereafter a specimen of his poetry.—(See upon him *Schöne Redeâüste Persiens*, by baron von Hammer, pp. 163 et seq.)
portant concern of creatures; that, without being influenced by friendship or enmity, without regard to relations or strangers, they may with an open forehead raise themselves to a dignified rank; further, that they may, to the extent of their power, confer benefits upon the religious mendicants, the miserable and indigent, particularly upon the pious recluse in a corner, and upon the saints, who, straitened in their expense and income, never open their lips for a demand; that, being in company with the pious hermits seeking God, they may beg their benediction; besides that, having weighed the faults, errors, and crimes of men in the balance of justice, they may assign to each his proper place, and by the balance of well-founded appreciation bestow retribution upon each; that by the judgment of sagacious men they may find out in the crowd him whose faults ought to be concealed and passed over, and him whose guilt is to be examined, proclaimed, and punished; for there are faults which deserve greatly to be repressed, and others which are to be treated with great indulgence; it is required that, to show the right way to the disobedient, they use advice and gentleness, harshness or mildness, according to the difference of rank and season; when advice remains without effect, then imprisoning, beating, maiming of members, and capital punishment may be inflicted, according to the diver-
sity of cases; but in putting a man to death they ought not to be too rash, but rather employ an abundance of considerations:

"A head once severed cannot be refitted to the body."

Whenever practicable, they ought to send the delinquent worthy of death to the King's court, and there represent his case. If keeping him be likely to occasion an insurrection, or (sending him to the King's court) become the cause of trouble, in this necessity he may be executed; but flaying alive, or throwing a man under the feet of an elephant, which is practised by violent kings, ought to be avoided. The treatment of every man is to be conformable to his rank and condition; because to a high-minded man a severe look is equivalent to death, whilst to an abject person, even flagellation is nothing. Besides, remission is to be made to any body who, by his genius, knowledge, and virtue should have acquired consideration, and when the magistrates observe in his conduct any thing unbecoming in their opinion, they ought to tell it to him in private. If one of the historians of the times relates something wrong, they are not to rebuke him severely for it; for a rebuke is a barrier upon the road of truth-speaking; and he upon whom the incomparable God has conferred the aptness of speaking truth, deserves to be accounted precious:
for men are excessively weak, and those who are of a
mean origin and depraved, have no inclination to
speak truth, but choose to submit to every sort of
abjectness. He who is of a good disposition is cau-
tious that nothing in his speech may be disagree-
able to the ears of his master, and that he may not
incur disgrace. But the man of noble sentiments,
who prefers his own loss to the advantage of others,
possesses the science of the philosopher's stone.
Administrators ought not to be fond of flattery,
as many affairs are left undone on account of flat-
terers; nor ought they, on the other hand, to ill treat
those who are not flatterers, as a servant may also
be obliged to say unpleasing things.

The judges should attend personally, as much as
possible, to the examination of the plaintiff (verse of
Sādi):

"Throw not his complaint to the diwān (tribunal),
"As he may possibly have to complain of the divan itself."

The plaintiffs ought to be examined in the order
in which their names are inscribed on the list, in
order that he who came first may not be subject to
the inconvenience of waiting. The disposal of pre-
cedence or delay is not to rest with the first regis-
trars of the court. If a person be accused of acting
criminally, the judges ought not to precipitate his
punishment; for there are many eloquent slander-
ers, and few well-intentioned speakers of what is
right. During the period of anger, they ought not to let the bridle of reason slip out of their hands, but act with calmness and reflexion. It becomes them to grant privileges to some of their friends and servants, who are distinguished by great wisdom and devotedness. At the time of overbearing grief and affliction, when the wise abstain from speaking, let them not exceed either in words, silence, or imbecility. They should be sparing with their oaths, as much swearing raises a suspicion of lying. They ought not to accustom themselves to offend an interlocutor by evil surmises or by bad names: for these are vile manners. Finally, it is their duty to show solicitude for the promotion of agriculture, the welfare of the cultivator, and the assistance of tenants; in order that, from year to year, the great cities, the villages, and towns may rise in prosperity, and acquire such facility of improvement that the whole land may be rendered fit for cultivation, and consequently the increase of population be carried to the utmost.

These ordinances, separately written, are to be communicated to every agent of government, that they may apply their minds to the execution of them; in short, having given notice of them to all subjects small and great, the magistrates ought not
to deviate from them under no circumstance nor in any manner: and to prevent the soldiers from entering the houses of the inhabitants without their permission; besides, in their proceedings, they should not rely upon their own judgment, but ask the advice of those who are wiser than themselves; not obtaining this, they ought nevertheless not to desist from seeking advice; as it happens frequently that even the ignorant may indicate the road of truth, as it was said (by Sadi):

"Now and then, from the aged sage,
"Right advice is not derived;
"Now and then, the unmeaning ignorant
"By accident hits the butt with his arrow."

Moreover, advice is not to be asked from many persons: for, right judgment in practical life is a particular gift of God; it is not acquired by reading, nor is it found by good fortune. It may also happen, that a set of ignorant men opposes thy endeavors, and causes irksome embarrassment in thy way, so as to retain thee from the dictates of thine own reason, and from the right-acting men, whose number is always small.

The magistrates are also directed never to charge their sons with a business which belongs to servants; and never to be a guarantee for what is done by their sons; as thou canst easily find amends for what passes between others; but, for what occurs
to thee a remedy is difficult. It may become thee to listen to excuses, and to look with half-shut eyes at some faults; for there is no man without guilt or defect; rebuke sometimes renders him but bolder; sometimes depresses him beyond measure. There are men who must be reprehended at each fault; there are others in whom a thousand faults must be overlooked; in short, the affair of punishment does not suit the dignity of the important concerns of royalty, and is to be carried with calmness and judgment to its proper aim. A governor ought to grant all facilities to God-fearing and zealous men, and to inquire from them the good and the bad, never ceasing to collect information: for royalty and command borrow security from vigilance. He ought not to oppose the creed and religion of the creatures of God: inasmuch as a wise man chooses not his loss in the affairs of this perishable world, how in those of religion, which is permanent and eternal, should he knowingly tend to his perdition? If God be with his faith, then thou thyself carriest on controversy and opposition against God; and if God fails him, and he unknowingly takes the wrong way, then he proves to himself a rule of erroneous profession, which demands pity and assistance, not enmity or contradiction. Those who act and think well, bear friendship to every sect. Besides, they avoid excess in sleeping and eating, without
deviating from the measure of what is necessary, so
that, rising above the relinquished step of brutish-
ness, they attain a distinguished rank of humanity.
Let it be recommended to watch by night as much
as possible; never to show violent enmity towards
any man; and to beware of making one's bosom the
prison-house of rancour; should it nevertheless take
place from the infirmity of human nature, let it soon
be stifled: for, in the interior of our soul resides the
true agent, the unparalleled God, and raises tumultu-
tuous strife for the sake of provoking the investiga-
tion of truth.

A governor should disdain laughing and joking;
he should always be informed of every occurrence
by spies; but never rely upon the information of one
of them, because truth and disinterestedness are
rare among them; therefore, in every affair, let
him appoint several spies and intelligencers, who
are not to know each other; and, having written
down separately the account given by each of them;
compare them with each other. But the notorious
spies are to be dismissed and discarded from his
presence, nor access granted to persons of mean
birth and depraved habits, although this sort of
people may be usefully employed against other bad
men; but he should never let the account-book slip
out of his hands, and always entertain in his heart
suspicion against this class of men, that they may
not perhaps, under the guise of friendship, usurp the place of honest men. Let him observe those near him and his servants, that they may not, on account of their approaching him, oppress others. He ought to be on his guard against the flattering-tongued liars, who in the garb of friendship act the part of real enemies, as disorders are occasioned by their agency. Great personages, on account of abundant occupations, have little, but these malefactors have a great deal of leisure; therefore, from all sides and quarters, precautions against the latter are required. To cut short all prolixity, a governor ought to find men worthy of confidence, and pay the greatest attention to the promotion of knowledge and industry, so that men of talent may not fall off from their high station among men. He ought besides to favor the good education of the old families of the royal court.

The warlike requisites and arms of the soldiers are by no means to be neglected. Further, the expenses must always be less than the revenues: this last is of the most essential concern, for it is said: Whoever spends more than he receives is a blockhead; he who equals his expense and income is to be accounted neither wise nor stupid; but he lays no foundation of any establishment; he is always subject to service, expecting favor, and dependant upon promises. A commander is
bound to be true in his words, particularly with the functionaries of government. Let him constantly practise shooting with arrows and guns, and exercise the soldiers in arms; but not be passionately devoted to hunting, although he may sometimes indulge in it for the training of troops, and the recreation of the mind, which is indispensable in this world of dependencies. He is never permitted to take corn from the class of the Rayas, with the intention to hoard it up for selling it at a high price. Let him attend to the beating of the kettle-drum at the rising of that luminary which bestows light upon the world; and at midnight, which is properly the beginning of sunrise, and during the progress of the great majestic light from station to station, let him order small and great guns to be fired, so that all men be called up to offer thanks to God.

Somebody ought to be placed at the gate of the court, for bringing all petitions before the high presence of the King. If there be no Kūtwāl,1 he ought, observing well the paris and rules of it, to apply himself to the performance of this office, and not on account of considering it rustic (low) business, say to himself: "How can I do the business of a Kūtwāl?" but from piety acknowledging the greatness of God, he ought to submit to this charge.

1 Police officer or inspector.
To explain clearly its duties, the first of all is, that the Kútwál of every city, town, and village write down, with the agreement of the people, their houses and buildings; as well as register in a book the inhabitants of every part of a place from house to house, and, having taken security from house to house, grant them free intercourse with each other; having determined the divisions in each of them, a head man of the division is to be appointed, so that the good and bad men may be under his superintendence; he must also appoint spies, by whose means every occurrence by night and day, the arrivals and departures in each quarter, are to be recorded. He ought to establish that, whenever a theft is committed, fire breaks out, or any other mishap takes place, at the very moment succor be given by the neighbors, and likewise all householders tender their services: if they be absent without necessity, they are to be held guilty. Nobody can undertake a journey without giving information of it to his neighbor, the head man of the division, or the recorder of news. No man of bad character is to be received in any quarter of the place, and all those who have not given security, are to be kept separate from the other inhabitants in the great public house, to which a head man and a recorder of news are to be attached. The Kútwal ought to be perpetually informed of the income and expense of
every individual, for the sake of survey and precaution, and fix his attention on it: for, any body whose income is small and expense great, cannot certainly be without guilt. It is incumbent on him to follow an indication, and never to be remiss in attention to persons of good birth and right intentions. This inquiry is to be understood as a measure of order, and not as the means of rapine and oppression. Further, the Kütwál’s business is to establish in the bazar, "market," brokers of all sorts, after having taken security from them, that he may receive notice of whatever is bought and sold. He ought to declare that whoever buys or sells anything without notice, is subject to a fine. The names of the buyer and seller are to be entered into a daily register, and nothing is to be bought or sold without the consent of the head man of the division. Moreover, the Kütwál must appoint guards for watching at night in every quarter, every street, and in the whole district of the town, and endeavor that in the quarters, bazars, and streets no stranger be found; he must apply to the search and pursuit of thieves and pickpockets, and other delinquents, and leave no trace of them. Whatever is purloined or plundered he must bring forth, together with the pilferers, and if not, by returning the equivalent, he must make good the damages. It is his duty to ascertain the property of strangers and deceased persons, in
order that, if there be heirs, he may remit it to
them, and if not, deliver it to the Amin, "superin-
tendant," and write an explanation thereof to the
Royal court, so that at any time when the true pro-
prietor is discovered, he may be put in possession
of it. In this transaction too, he ought to manifest
his right principles and his good origin, so as, per-
haps, to come up to what is customary in the coun-
try of Rûm. The Kûtwal is further bound to en-
deavor that there be no trace of wine-drinking to be
found, and to reprehend, with the concurrence of
the judge, the buyer and seller, the abettor and
perpetrator thereof; so that the people may take an
example from it; nevertheless, if any body, of high
character for prudence for the sake of relaxation of
mind, makes use of wine as a medicine, no oppo-
sition is to be made to his usage.

The Kûtwal must be sollicitous for the cheapness
of provisions, and not allow rich men to buy and to
hoard a large quantity to sell it dear afterwards.
Let him take care of providing the requisites for the
Nâþiroz, "new year;" this is a great festival, the
beginning of which is the time when the great world-
illumining luminary enters the sign of Aries, at the
commencement of the month Farvardin (March).
Another feast is on the 19th of the said month,
which is the day of the most glorious sun. Other
feasts are as follows: the 3rd of Ardibihest (April);
the 6th of Khordad (May); the 10th of Aban (October); the 9th of Azar (November); in the month of Dāi (December) are three festivals, viz. on the 8th, the 15th, and the 25th; besides, the 2nd of Bahman (January), and the 15th of Isfandiarneud (February). The known festivals are to be celebrated according to regulations; and the nights of the Nāiu-róz and Sherif, "glorious," are to be illuminated by torches, in the manner of the night Bharrát, in the 8th Arabian month, called Shābān, "consecrated to the memory of forefathers;" and in the first night which is followed by the morning of a festival, the kettle-drum is to be beaten, which is also to be done on an elephant's back on all festivals. A woman ought never, without necessity, to appear on horseback. The Kútwał is enjoined to separate the fords of rivers for bathing from those for fetching water, and to assign particular fords to women.

The emperor inhabiting the seventh heaven, Akbar, wrote a book of advice for the King Ahás Safavi, and this was also penned by Shaikh Abu 'l Fazil. Some precepts from this book are as follows: The high personages of the people, who are the depositors of the divine secrets, are to be considered with eyes of benign admiration, and kept with zeal in our conciliated hearts. Acknowledging that the bounty of the incomprehensible God embraces all religions,
let us entirely devote ourselves to the culture of flowers in the rose garden of the perpetual spring of peace, and unceasingly attend to the *Nas eβ ul dyin*, "establishment of the thing itself," as to the study of promoting one's happiness; as the Almighty God, opening the door of his bounty to the different religions¹ in their various means of salvation, maintains them; so, in imitation of him, it is incumbent on the powerful Kings, who are the shades of divine providence, never to desist from this rule, because the Creator of the universe confided to them this vast population for the sake of directing the state of the apparent world, and of watching over all mankind, not without preserving the good name of exalted families.

In Multan, we saw the Shah Salám ulla; he was a man unmarried, attached to the unity of God, and to sanctity; having retired from the world, he said: "I was often in the society of Jelál eddin Akbar; I heard him frequently say: 'Had I possessed before the knowledge which I now have, I would never, for my sake, have taken a wife; for to me the elder matrons are mothers, women of my age sisters, and the younger ones daughters.'" One of my friends heard this speech, which has just been attributed to the blessed emperor, from the

¹ The original means *masha'reb*, "drinks, drinking vessels," above rendered by "religions."
mouth of the Nawáb Abu 'l Hassen, surnamed Lashker Khán Mashhédí. Shah Salam ulla related also that he heard the lord khalífah of God say, weeping: "Would to God my body were the greatest of all, that the inhabitants of the world might take their food from it, and not hurt any other living being."

A proof of the extensive views of this celebrated King was, that he employed in his service men of all nations—Firangis, Jews, Iránians, and Turánians; because, if they were all of one nation, they would be disposed to rebellion, as it was the case with the Usbëks, and the Kazel báshan, who dethroned their sultan; but the King Abáh, son of sultan Khodabendah Safaví, who succeeded him, reduced the Kurjís to order. He also paid no attention to the wealth of heritage, but without showing partiality to lineage or religion, he promoted the skilled in science and laws.

CHAPTER XI.


IN THREE SECTIONS.

Section I. Of the religion of the philosophers, and of some branches of their questions.
SECTION II. Of their reputation.

SECTION III. Of the wise men, and of late philosophers, and of those of that class who existed among all the nations of the children of Adam, and still exist; named in Persian Zirek, and Farzanah; in Hindi Budhvan, Badisher, Set mat, Set pati, Kiani- sher, Chater, Pah danter, and Jami; in Greek Filsofi; and in Arabic Hakim.

SECTION I. — Of the religion of the philosophers, and of some branches of their questions.

The distinguished men of that class divide themselves into two sorts: the one are the Oriental, the other the Occidental. As to the religious customs of the Orientals, let it be known, that they are also called Ravâkin, and in Persian Keshish, "the religious," Pertavi, "the splendid," and Roshendil, "the enlightened," and in Hindi Ner mel men and Jokisher: these names relate to sanctity. The Occidentals are called in Persian Rah beri, "way-guides," and Joja, inquirers;" in Hindi Tärkek.

As to their tendency and opinions—whatever relates to the creed of the Orientals has already been stated in the chapter on the Yezdáníán, who are also entitled Azarhóshangian, but all that is attributed to the two sects is symbolical. The ancient philosophers of Greece, down to Aflátún (Plato), were Oriental; it was Arás tu (Aristotle), his disciple, who then took the lead in the doctrine, the centre of which with this class is the argumentative reason.
Both sects, by means of their discussions, cannot explain the nature of the self-existing being; the essence, unity, particularity, and all attributes are inherent in his holy nature, as I have said in the account of the religion of the Hoshanganians. They have said besides: God is the world in its universality, but in its particularity mutable conformably with the whole, as it has been stated in the doctrine of the Yezdánian. They maintain, the work of God is according to his will; he does; if he wills not, he does not; but a good work is conformable to his nature: because all his attributes are perfection, in which sense they draw necessary conclusions with regard to the nature of God.

"The year of God is that which passeth away; and thou shalt not find a change in the years of God."

Their creed is: God is not the immediate actor; as it would not be suitable to the dignity of royalty and sovereignty to perform himself every business; but it is proper that he should appoint some one of his servants who, on account of his great knowledge and power, is qualified for business, for the execution of the royal orders and the protection of the subjects. The latter also may, by the Sultan’s order, name another as Vizir or Nawab, for the affairs; every one of these chiefs may instal functionaries or agents; so that the whole administration may be firmly established according to the desire and the
order of the sovereign. On that account, God created a first intellect, called in Persian Bahman, that is, "supreme soul," or Barósú, or Ferósú, or Serósh seróshán, and "the science of truth;" he who produced something "new;" he is also entitled "the "true man: 'God created man according to his image;" that is to say, pure, uncompounded, like reason, betwixt necessity and possibility, 1 in the centre between both; necessity is on his right side, possibility on his left; the perfect spirit rises from the left, which is the side of possibility. With respect to truth, the image of man is ākīl, 2 "spirit of wisdom, "the holy spirit, and the image of Eva a perfect spirit: on that account it was said that the forthcoming of Eva took place from Adam's left side. The Sofis also agree with this, as we find it explained by Shaikh Muhammed Láháji, 3 in his work Sharah-i-

1 īmkan, "possibility," signifies that, the existence or non-existence of which, is the necessary consequence of the essence of a thing. The philosophers distinguish by name four sorts of possibility: 1. āmkan zātī, "possibility with respect to essence;" 2. āmkan īstīdātī, "possibility by disposition," also called mokūnī, "eventual;" 3. āmkan khas, "special possibility;" and 4. āmkan dam, "general possibility."—(See on this subject Jorjānī's Definitions, Notices et Extraits des MSS., vol. XI. pp. 82-83.)

2 The word ākīl has a manifold and therefore often vague meaning; it corresponds sometimes to Holy Ghost. I thought it right to translate it hereafter by "intelligency," in the double acceptation of "unbodied "spirits" and "wisdom;" and also by "reason."

3 His whole title is Shemṣeddīn Muḥammad ben Yāhya, ben Ali Lah-
ja'ī, a native of Lahjan, a town in the province of Gilan. He wrote in
Gulshen, "the Commentary of the Rose-bower." Jesus, the son of God, proceeds from this "holy spirit." When wisdom manifests itself through somebody, it is called his "spirit of wisdom;" and when impressions of sciences in all creatures have penetrated through its mediation, it is named "ar-row;" and as the perfection of the lord of the prophetic asylum is a ray of that jewel, it bears the name of "Muhammed's light."

"If not for thee, I would not have created the worlds." 1

These are the attributes of its nature, and besides these it has many names. By the intervention of the first intelligence came forth the second intelligence, the spirit and body of "the crystalline heaven;" and the soul of the heaven above the crystalline firmament is called "hāvāyī mānāvi, "the "true soul." By the intervention of the second intelligence, the third, and the spirit and body of the heaven of the fixed stars were produced. In this wonderful way, intelligences and spirits were formed, until the spirits of the tenth class; 2 among

A. D. 1474 a work under the title Meṣaf-i-hul dājaib fi sherh-i-Gulshen-

rāz, "the Key of Marvels, in explanation of the Mystery of the Rose-

bower." The latter work was quoted vol. 1. p. 82.

1 See vol. 1. p. 2. note.

2 I shall attempt to sketch, in the smallest possible compass, the fundamental ideas of Asiatic cosmology, which are rather confusedly stated in the text.

According to the Dasatir, God created primitively, immediately, and
these ten bringers of good news (Evangelists) are distinguished; likewise nine heavens were brought

singly, the supreme intelligence; this produced the second intelligence, with the primitive soul and body; the second intelligence brought forth the third, and the corresponding heavenly sphere, with soul and body; and so down to the tenth intelligence, to wit that of human reason. The modern Orientals kept the first-born supreme intelligence, which to the Muhammedans was sanctified by the verse of the Koran, saying: The first being which God created was intelligence, and established a double series of descending intelligences and ascending heavenly spheres, as follows, according to the ancient and modern system:

COSMOLOGY

OF THE DASATIR.

Intelligences.
The 1st intelligence.
II .......... The 1st intelligence. The IXth heavenly sphere. The uppermost Heaven.
III .......... II .......... VIII .......... That of the nodice, or of fixed stars.
X ................... The human.
XI ................... The human.

OF THE MODERN ORIENTALS.

Spheres.
The difference between the system of the Dasatir and the latter consists only in this: that the first enthrones the first supreme intelligence, or reason, above all nine heavenly spheres, and assigns to the second intelligence with its soul and body the ninth sphere, in which the latter system places the first intelligence, and the third intelligence corresponds to the eighth sphere, and so on; each intelligence is placed in the first system, one sphere higher than in the latter; so that the numbers of intelligences and spheres, counterparts of each other, do not form a perfect Dekas, which mutually meets in the sacred number five, but they make an Endekas. Besides, the Muhammedan philosophers call the soul of the second intelligence “the truth of truths,” and identify it with Muhammed, who is said to have declared: The first being which God created.
into existence, that they may correspond to nine prophets. From the tenth class of intelligences came forth the matter of the elements, and bodies, and the spirits of elemental existence. The philosophers said, that ten kinds of intelligences are enumerated, not because there may not exist any more, but because these are required; and likewise we want the number of nine heavens, without its being prohibited to add any other. The Eastern philosophers however declare themselves against numbering the kinds of intelligences, because, with them every kind of thing has its god, whom they call "the god of the species," in Persian Dāra, the angel of rains, the angel of rivers, to which the following sentence relates:

"Each thing has its angel to whom it is confided, and an angel descends with every drop."

The Oriental philosophers hold the bodies to be shadows of the uncompounded lights.

"Seest thou not that God has spread his shadow over me?"

According to the sages, the kinds of intelligences and spirits of heaven are the heavenly angels, who have no body nor any thing corporeal, neither feathers nor wings. When an effulgence of the luminous attributes of the self-existing Being falls upon them, it is by the mediating power of this ray, that

*was my light.* — (See upon this subject *Heidelberger Jahrbücher der Literatur.* 1823. *Erste Hälfte.* pp. 313, etc.)
deeds of wonderful purity proceed from them; and in this production there is no need of a motion, nor of an instrument, in like manner as in the forthcoming of a work of God his will is sufficient. This meaning has been made intelligible to the understanding of the vulgar by saying, that an angel with feathered wings traversed the distance of a road which could not be travelled over in a thousand years. They say also that Isrâ'îl is one of the powers of the sun; the angel of death proceeds from Saturn; Mikâ'îl from the moon; and Jebrîl emanated from the tenth power of intelligence. As often as, on account of the revolution of the heavens or the motion of the stars, something suitable manifests itself in the elemental matter, compounded and uncompounded, it issues into existence by way of emanation from the superior wisdom; and the revelation of the prophet, and the instruction of the perfect to mankind, takes place by the intervention of the last-mentioned angel. On that account there is an intrinsic connexion between the souls of the prophets and this by-standing angel. According to the Eastern philosophers, Jabrîl is a god of a kind similar to human nature, and called in Persian Wakhshur, "prophet," and Serôsh pâjâm sipâr, "Serosh, the message-bringer." In the opinion of the philosophers, the crystalline heaven is the ninth heaven, and the heaven of the fixed stars the throne of God.
The exalted rational spirit is without an habitation, and, without being in the body, is connected with it, in a manner similar to that of a lover with his mistress. This doctrine is very ancient with the Orientals, as has been stated in the account about the Azar Hôshangian, but with the first master among the learned, Aristotle and his followers, it is a tradition. According to general consent, the soul is eternal.

"Believe not that those who were killed in the way of God are dead; on the contrary, they are living and nourished at the side of their Lord." 1

To unite the soul with the body is as much as to drive Adam from heaven; to long for the body is to bear the commands of Eva; and to perform bad actions is to eat of the forbidden tree; anger is the serpent; lust is the peacock. They hold that Iblis represents the power of imagination which guides us, and the sensual influence which denies the knowledge of words and things consentient with reason, and contends with the power of reason; that what is stated in the law, that all angels prostrated themselves before Adam, except Iblis, signifies that all bodily powers, which are the angels of the earth, are obedient to the soul of Adam, except the power of imagination, that is Iblis, which is rebellious, and sometimes gets the better of judgment. Reason says, that a corpse is to be

1 Koran, chap. III. v. 163.
accounted a mineral, and no wise to be feared; but imagination says: "this is true; nevertheless we "must fear;" and when one finds himself in a house alone with a dead man, it may happen that his mind experiences an agitation of terror. The Sufis too agree with this, as we find it expressed by the venerable Shaikh Mahmúd Shósteri¹ in a chapter of the Meráţul Mohakakin, "the mirror of the investi-"gators of truth." It is stated in the Akhwán ós afás, "the companions of purity," of Mullá Alí, that there were intelligences and spirits which were not or-"dered to adore Adam, as being of a higher rank, as it is written in the Koran, that God, the All-just, addressed this speech to Iblis:

"Thou art proud; believest thou thyself to be one of the more exalted "beings?"²

And this was the occasion on which the angels of the earth were ordered to adore Adam.

The Orientals maintain that when the soul real-"ises, as it ought to do, the conditions of its primitive origin, it obtains emancipation from the bodily bonds, and joins the intelligences and spirits: this exalted dignity is Paradise.

¹ Shósteri, or Tosteri, "native of the town of Shoster or Toster," is the surname of Abu Muhammed (above Mahmud) Sahil Ben And. He is reputed as one of the principal chiefs of the Sufis; he was a disciple of Zu al nun, and condisciple of Jionaíd. He died in his eightieth year, in the year of the Hejira 283 (A. D. 896).
² See pp. 8-9, note 2.
“O peaceful soul, return to thy lord willingly and readily; and who-
ever desires to meet his lord, let him perform good works.”

In this high state it is possible to behold the face of God. There is another sect which asserts, that the All-Just is visible; they say right; because the rational soul sees with interior eyes: another sect which denies the seeing of God is also right; because he cannot be seen with bodily eyes,

“The eyes attain him, and attain him not.”

But the soul which has left the narrow prison of the body, but has not attained the field of its beatifying residence, unites, for taking a seat, with the body of any one of the celestial spheres with which it has some relation; it finds rest in the higher or lower heavens, according to order and distinction; it is engaged in the contemplation of beauteous forms, and the noble endowments of one who praises God in the delight of that sphere, which, with some, means the fancy of a particular kind, and is blessed by the enjoyment of delightful imaginations and representations. What is stated in the code of law, that the souls of the vulgar among the believers are in the first heaven; this is founded upon the words of the prophet.

“His acquisition is but a known place.”

The meaning of this relates to the different degrees of merit.

By “Paradise” is understood one of the heavens,
eight of which are counted, and these are beneath the ninth, which is the roof of the Paradise, as it is stated in the traditions. But, when the souls not yet come forth from the pit of the natural darkness of bodily matter, are nevertheless in a state of increasing improvement, then, in an ascending way, they migrate from body to body, each purer than the former one, until the time of climbing up to the steps of the wished-for perfection of mankind, yet according to possibility, after which, purified of the defilement of the body, they join the world of sanctity: and this final migration (death) is called nasikh, "obliteration."

"The verses which we have abrogated, we have replaced by others."

Some call this state Al-Adratf, "boundary," which

1 Al-Adratf, the plural of Adratf, from the verb arafoo, "to distinguish between two things, or part of them;" some interpret it as above, "a wall; anything that is high raised, as a wall of separation may be supposed to be." In the Koran, chap. VII. entitled Al-Adratf, v. 44, it is called "a veil," to wit: "Between the blessed and the damned there shall be a veil, and men shall stand on Al-Araf, who shall know every one of them by their mark, and shall call unto the inhabitants of Paradise, saying: 'Peace be upon you: yet they shall not enter therein, although they earnestly desire it.' It appears a sort of purgatory for those who deserve neither hell nor heaven. In this sense it is taken above. Others imagine it to be a state of limbo for the patriarchs and prophets, or for the martyrs and saints, among whom there will also be angels in the form of men. But, on the day of universal judgment, all those who are confined in this place shall prostrate themselves in adoration before the Lord, and hear these words: "Enter ye into paradise: there shall come no fear upon you, neither shall ye be grieved." —

Ibid., v. 47.
means, a wall between heaven and hell, behind which shall be those who in their conduct fell short of goodness, until the time of being permitted to enter into heaven. If the iniquities of the souls predominate, then, descending, they assume the forms of animals corresponding to their prevailing character: thus, the souls of the powerful malefactors and of the furious enter into the bodies of lions; the proud become tigers; the formidable, wolves; and the crafty and covetous appear as little ants; in this manner they are all ravenous, grazing, flying, creeping; and this state of things is called masakh, "metamorphosis."

"As often as their skin is burnt we renew it with another, in order that they may taste punishment."

"There is no kind of beast on earth, nor fowl which flieth with its wings, but the same is a people like unto you."

Sometimes, descending, the souls are united with vegetable bodies; and this is entitled rasakh, "firmness."

"Under the form which thy master wills."

Sometimes they enter into mineral bodies, as for instance into metals; and this is named fasakh, "fracture."

"We let you grow according to your acts."

The learned Umer Khiyam says:

1 Koran, chap. VI. v. 38.
"Endeavor to acquire praise worthy qualities: for, in the field of
destiny,
Thy resurrection shall be in conformity with thy qualities."

This threefold division they call "hell." The number of the stories of hell, according to the fol-
lowers of the law, is seven; that of the simple ele-
ments, four; and that of the compound elements,
three: altogether seven. Every soul, on leaving the
elemental world, enters into one of the stories of
hell. According to the Masháyín, "Peripatetics,"
the human soul which, during its connection with
the body has contracted bad habits, becomes afflicted
and distressed by the impurity of such human attrib-
butes as are accounted defects of the mind: on ac-
count of the extinction of sensual pleasure which
had grown into a fixed habit, the soul is bewildered,
and its base customs and qualities bear manifestly
upon it under the guise of a serpent, a scorpion, a
burning fire, and by all the torments which are
recorded in the law-book, whilst, on the contrary,
the noble habits of the virtuous shine under the
guise of Huris, Kásurs, sons, and youths, and in all
the blessings of heaven.

Sirát, "the bridge of the last judgment," signifies nothing else but the temperature of power; as
it has been established in the doctrine of Ethics:
for instance, the excess of courage is temerity, a
deficiency in it is cowardice; a medium between
both is valour; and, as to keep the middle tenor, is very difficult, this has been emblematized by something which is finer than a hair and sharper than the edge of a sword, and by three arches, which indicate the due mixture of three powers, viz.: knowledge, courage, and lust. Under hell is meant elemental nature.

We shall pass to the interpretation of the gates of heaven, the number of which is eight; that of the gates of hell, seven. It is established that there are five external senses and five internal; but all of them are not apt to perceive without the assistance of inference and imagination; because it is imagination which perceives the forms, and inference completes the perception of sensible things. The two internal with the five external senses, make seven. If they attend not to the commands of reason, each of them goes for imprisonment to that hell which is under the heaven of the moon, and if they listen to these commands, they reach with the ninth rank of intelligence the eight gates of heaven for salvation and emancipation, as well as enter the Paradise which is among the heavens.

"As to him who disobeyed, and preferred the worldly life, hell shall be his abode; and as to him who feared the being of the Lord and refused to give up his soul to concupiscence, Paradise shall be his abode."
Upon the angels of punishment, — It is to be known, that there are seven rulers of the world over the seven stars which revolve within the twelve signs of the zodiac; seven and twelve make nineteen, and over these nineteen rulers, that is, managers of the world, are other nineteen inspectors. In the space of the nether earth are seven powers of vegetation, viz.: that of nourishment, watering, birth, retention, attraction, mildness, and repulsion. There are twelve powers of animal life, viz.: five external, five internal senses, and two powers of movement, namely, lust and anger. Mankind, as long as they remain in prison beneath the heaven of the moon, and not severed from sensuality and its ties, is indubitably and continually subject to the impressions of the upper and nether rulers, and to sufferings; but if it rids itself of these conditions, it enjoys freedom in this and in the other world.

Nakir and Monkir point to our praise-worthy or blameable conduct. The body is a tomb, and so is the belly of the mother, and the interior part of the heaven of the moon.

An account of the pages of human actions and their recorders; and of the descent of angels and demons to the good and the wicked.

Know that, of every speech or action which is
said or done, a mark is made by them; and when, in any one of them a repetition occurs, the mark becomes permanent, as it may be assimilated to what takes place in acquiring a knowledge or learning an art. As the marks of good and bad actions of mankind are determined, so every body shares accordingly pleasure or pain. Words or deeds, one by one, being revealed and described, establish conviction; so that disavowal becomes impossible. This is the office of two recorders, the one of whom stands to the right and the other to the left; whatever of one’s speeches and actions is praise-worthy, this is called “angelic;” and whatever is blameable is named “satanic.” This is what the prophet of Arabia said: “From goodness arises an Angel, from ‘badness a Satan.” The balance typifies the rule of justice in the retribution of conduct, so that there may not be any disparity; the basins of the balance contain the good and bad actions; if the basin of the first descends heavy, everlasting heaven is bestowed; if it ascend light, hell.

“He whose weight is heavy, shall be admitted to a delightful life; “and he whose weight is light, shall fall into hell.”

Praiseworthy speeches and actions are the properties of dignity, steadfastness and peace of mind; blameable words and deeds belong to perturbation, doubt, and want of conviction; he who acquires composure and dignity of mind, obtains the grace
of God; this grace is the treasurer of paradise, who is Razvan, "the porter of heaven;" but doubt and perturbation are the leaders to misfortune and to disdain; and disdain is the treasurer of hell, who is called Mālik, "the keeper of hell."

AN ACCOUNT OF MOUNTAINS AND SEAS, AND OF WHAT OCCURS UPON THE EARTH OF THE LAST JUDGMENT.

It should be known, that a mountain can be the emblem of a body, which is as overgrown with wool, and the seas can signify the elements; or it may be proper to call the mountains "elements, which are "opaque," and the seas "the skies." Besides, from a mountain, bodies can be desired; as it may be the station of angels, and from the sea angels proceed. Attempting to investigate the nature of God we meet with a veil, and this veil is darkness. The only light we find is, that whoever travels over the stages of materiality and spirituality, attains rest in the seat of purity,

"Near the mighty King."

The veils of darkness are like colored wool raised up.

"The mountains shall become like carded wool of various colors "driven by the wind." "

1 Koran, chap. Cl. v. 4.
He lifts up the immense veil before the light, as then the contradiction, the mutual opposition, and the unsuitableness of conduct which arises from the sensuality of the body, vanish at the passing away of the body; conformity and concord, which belong to unity and harmony, manifest themselves; certainly nothing of repugnancy and no sort of apprehension remains; the poison of serpents and of scorpions is no more; the wolf associates with the sheep, the falcon with the little partridge, and confidence between those who feared each other, appears;

"When the animals will unite;"

When there is no body, there is no death. This is what the prophet declared: "On the day of resurrection death will be summoned and annihilated;" he likewise said: "On the day of the last judgment hell will be made visible:

"Hell manifests itself to whosoever looks."

On no other day but this, hell, as it is, can be seen; because one who is plunged in the ocean, how can he see the ocean? It is when he rises above the waves that he can distinguish them:

"A spirit appears better on the border of an expanse."

I have now given an explanation about the streams of heaven and hell; the pleasures and pains during the time of the soul's progress and regress. The running streams signify life, which the celestial com-
munity enjoys; milk is the cause of nourishment in early infancy, and is more excellent than water; because, although its use be at times salutary for all, yet, in different circumstances, it is not so for all. Rivers of milk signify rivers of knowledge for noble persons; they proceed from the origin and development of sciences, and from these rivers is derived the enjoyment of the celestial beings, whose state may be compared to that of infancy. Honey is the cause of recovery to the sick and afflicted, and is more excellent than milk, because its advantage is reserved to a certain number only; and rivers of honey in heaven are emblematical of rivers of noble sciences; and the enjoyment of the select in heaven is derived from these rivers. Wine is the cause of the removal of terror, and fear, and sadness; and is more excellent than honey, because it is prohibited to the people of the world, and permitted and legal to the inhabitants of heaven; and it is a purifying draught of the water of Paradise:

"Their lord made them drink a purifying beverage."

And rivers of wine in heaven signify rivers of knowledge, for the nobles, among noble personages, and their enjoyment in heaven is derived from these rivers:

"There will be rivers of limpid water, and rivers of milk,
"The savor of which shall not be altered; rivers of wine
"Will be a delight to those who drink of them;
"And there will be rivers of purified honey."
For the inhabitants of hell are four rivers, in opposition to those in heaven; they are called "that of heat; that of water, blood, and matter; that of liquid pitch: and that of poison;" that is to say: death, ignorance, simple ignorance, and compound ignorance; for it is said:

"These are the similes which we propose to men; the wise only understand their explanation."

---

ACCOUNT OF THE TREE TUBA, WHICH IS IN HEAVEN, AND THE TREE ZAKUM, WHICH IS IN HELL.

It is to be known that Tūba¹ is a celestial tree which sends branches into every corner of heaven; and this is an emblem of the tree of wisdom, from which branches extend to every corner—to any body, whether it be elemental or imaginary; that is to say, to every mind which is illumined and warmed by a ray of the sun of wisdom; it is by this light that his speech and conduct answer the exigency of

¹ Tūba, says Herbelot, according to the Commentators of the Koran, is a word derived from the Ethiopian language, and means properly "eternal beatitude." The Tuba, as the heavenly lotois tree, or tree of life, occurs in all mythologies, in the Chinese, Indian, Persian, Egyptian, and Scandinavian. This tree is represented upon the coffin of a mummy which exists in the imperial cabinet of Vienna; a deity pours out from its branches the paradisical fountain, which, according to the Mohammedans, issues from the roots of the tree of life.—(See The Mines of Orient, vol. V.)
wisdom, and that he considers well the end of his actions; so that he has never to repent of any one of his words or deeds, which is a sign of knowledge.

The tree zakûm,¹ represents the tree of nature, a branch of which extends to every corner, that is to say, whatever power a man (actuated by it) exerts, he never considers the end of the action which he does, and has therefore always to repent of his words and deeds, which is a sign of ignorance.

As to an explanation about the Har and Kasur, it is to be known that both names relate to secrets of hidden things and sciences, which are concealed from the eyes of the profane by a veil, or by the pavilions of sublimity:

"The Hur and Kasur are concealed in the pavilions."

The hand of men with an elegant and fanciful conception has never reached, nor shall ever reach, them.

"Nobody has ever touched them before, neither men nor genii."

For these Hur and Kasur belong to men endowed with sanctity and truth; as often as these perfect personages approach them, they find also virgins, and enjoy each time a pleasure such as they never

¹ This tree is imagined to spring from the bottom of hell. There is a thorny tree, called zakûm, which grows in Tahâma, and bears fruit like an almond, but extremely bitter; and therefore the same name is given to this infernal tree.—(See Sale's Koran, pp. 104, 310.)
had before; because each time they meet with the beginning of a new meaning, finer than the former, although they obtain these objects before their death.

It has been stated by some sages that, when they were intent upon some high undertaking, they declared after its conclusion: "How can emperors and their sons enjoy such a happiness, which is still to be increased when all impediments will be removed." Know, men attached to exterior evidence said, that whatever is commonly believed of the last judgment, and what is connected with the soul of the world, implies nothing else but that, from the time when the Almighty God brought forth out of nothingness into existence, the heavens, the stars, the material bodies, the three kingdoms of nature, and the essences, the duration of the world shall extend to that period when he will again plunge the whole into non-existence, and this shall be "the other world."

The learned say besides, that the composition of the human body, and its conjunction with the soul, make but one period of time, although birth and life appear two distinct periods; the one comprising the sensible and perceptible world, the other the rational and intellectual world: for

"Whoever is not born twice, shall not enter at the same time into the kingdom of heaven and that of the earth." ¹

¹ This seems an incorrect quotation from St. John's Gospel, chapter III.
This is the speech of the Lord Jesus, and with him the present and the future world have also a twofold signification, also both a particular and a common one. As to the particular—there is something external and internal in every one; body and soul in every one; this is his present and future world. As to the common signification—there is an external and an internal world, that is, the material world is the present, and the future is the internal world. As to what is stated in the ostensible law, that the earth has seven stories and the heaven also seven, the interpretation of this is, that the earth is divided into seven regions, whence is concluded that the heaven also is divided into seven, separate from which they account the Kersi or Arsh, that is the ninth heaven. As to what is said, that on the day of resurrection heaven will be folded together,

"On the day on which we shall fold the heavens, as the angel folds the book (of good and bad actions of men), we shall replace them as they were formed at the beginning of the creation. The heavens will then be folded by his grace, power, and strength."

verse 3, which is as follows: "Jesus answered and said unto him (Nicodemus): Verily, verily, I say unto thee, except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God."—Further, v. 3: "Verily, verily, I say unto thee, except a man be born of water and of the spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God."—V. 6: That which is born of the flesh, is flesh; and that which is born of the spirit, is spirit."—V. 7: "Marvel not that I said unto thee, you must be born again."—V. 8: The wind bloweth where it listeth, and thou hearest the sound thereof, but canst not tell whence it cometh and whither it goeth: so is every one that is born of the spirit."
And the earth changed into another.

"One day we shall change this earth into another earth."

And after this change the earth and heaven will be annihilated; the earth will be like pure silver, and upon this earth no sin whatever will be committed: in all this, the day of resurrection, heaven, and hell are rendered present. As to what is asserted that this earth will be changed into another—the Orientals say, this is meant to relate to a vision which is called the region of symbolic truth. And the rendering present heaven and hell; this also refers to an attribution of good and bad. Whoever assumes the form of Hur or Kásur, serpent or scorpion, is rendered happy or miserable. As to the transmutation of the earth—this needs no interpretation: what wonder is it that the culture of a region passes into that of another country; and the passage from the region of the sensible into that of allegory is evident in the transformation of the folded heavens. It has also been maintained that "the book of God" is one thing, and "the word of God" another: because the word is derived from the world of commands, which has its purport from the invisible and rational world; whilst the book is from the world of creatures; that is, the material world; the

\[1\] The word *dālām*, "world," has here (as it occurs with the corresponding Sanskrit word *loka*) the meaning of state, "condition."
word, when written down, becomes a book; a command which is brought to pass becomes an action; and this is, with these believers, the meaning of the words: ُRun fa yakun.

"(God said) 'Let it be,' and it was."

The world of command is devoid of contradiction and multiplicity; it is pure in its essence; but the world of creatures contains contradiction and multiplicity, and no atom of all atoms of beings is out of the material world.

"There is nothing fresh or dry but in the true book (the Koran)."

Besides, the world of forms and of perceptible things is to be considered as the book of God, and every thing as a Surah, "a chapter," of the Surahs of this book; the alternation of days and nights, the changes and alterations in the horizon and in the phenomena are the vowel points of this book; the days and nights of this book, Surah after Surah, verse after verse, letter after letter, follow each other, as in writing the lines are read in succession; thus thou proceedest, from line to line and from letter to letter, until thou findest the meaning which is hidden in the subject of the words and expressions, until thou knowest and renderest evident to thyself the purport of the book:

"We shall show our verses (of the Koran) in the horizon (every where)," and in their souls, until it become evident to them that it is the truth."
And when thou understandest the book and hast satisfied thy desire, certainly the book is then closed and put out of thy hand.

"On the day on which we shall fold the heavens, as the angel folds the book—the heavens will then be folded by his grace, power, and strength."

And it was said, "On the right hand," that it may be manifest, that those who are at the left can have no share in the possession of heaven.

The change of the earth is thus interpreted, that mankind has two states: at first a terrestrial body and a heavenly nature, subject to the dictates of passion and of lust; and in this state all creatures are in the troubles of imagination, and pride, and conceitedness. Then takes place the first blast of the trumpet for the sake of rest, in order that the terrestrial, who are subject to the qualities of the body, and the celestial, who possess those of a higher nature, may both of them become dead to the troubles of imagination, pride, and conceitedness, unless a few of the qualities of the former state remain alive; as this, on account of these very qualities, may be indispensable by the power of necessity.

"And the trumpet was blown, and all the beings who were in heaven and upon earth were troubled, except those whom God willed (that they should not).

The second blast of the trumpet will be for recalling all men to life, so that the terrestrial, who are
endowed with the qualities of nature, may resuscitate from the death of ignorance and the sleep of heedlessness, and rise up; that they may avert their face from material objects and bodily pleasures, which are understood under the name "world," and devote themselves to reasonable pursuits and spiritual enjoyments, which are essential, so as to know every thing in its real nature: which is

"Then the trumpet shall be blown, and instantly they shall resuscitate, and see."

In this state, the body, world, and the nature of reason and law, are broken.

"The earth was illumed by the light of his Lord; he placed the books, and he brought the prophets and the witnesses."

Then the earth of darkness shall be changed into the world of light, and the heaven of nature into the sphere of spirits:

"On the day on which the earth shall be changed for another earth, as well as the heavens; and it shall then be known that there is but one God, the Almighty."

The obscuration of the stars, and the extinction of the sun’s and the moon’s light are interpreted, that the stars signify the external and internal senses, each of which is in its corresponding sign in heaven; the spirit of animals and the light of the moon are referred to the light of the soul; as the human soul has in fact no light of its own, but solicits an abundant loan of it from the sun of reason, and
diffuses it according to its own deficiency. It is said, that when the human soul manifests itself, then sensuality remains out of its action:

"When the stars shall be obscured;"

And when the light of reason breaks forth, then the human soul also is dismissed from its action, and when the benefitted unites with the benefactor, then an incomparable form shows its face;

"He reunited the sun and the moon;"

And when the light of God shines forth, that is, when "knowledge is infused," which is equivalent to revelation, manifesting itself, then reason and sight are removed from the action, which they call

"When the sun shall be folded up." 1

There are fifty stations in the field of judgment:

"Present is the Creator and the master;"
"At every station another question;"
"Whoever gives his answer with justness"
"Shall reach his station with rapidity."

The stations are in their order as follows: five external and five internal senses; seven powers of passion and lust; three spirits of nature, that is, of minerals, vegetables, and animals; four humors; three kingdoms of nature; four elements; eight temperatures; seven forms of imagination; the other four will be stated on another occasion.

1 Koran, chap. LXXXI. v. 1.
The book of God signifies knowledge. As to the last judgment and the resurrection of bodies, intelligent men said, that each atom of the atoms of a human body, which are dispersed, will be all collected on the day of resurrection, and restored to life, and at this hour there will be no question put about anything done, but what is come to us from the prophets and saints, this we must believe. The learned say besides, that the question is here about the soul, which on the day of resurrection returns (to its origin), and this substance is pure, and does not require to be suitable to any dimension, color, or place, but is independent of all these, and on that account fit for sciences and knowledge of all things; its extreme excellence is to be able to collect for review all things from the first origin to the last extremity, and to know that whenever it attains that degree of perfection, it has returned to the place of its origin; and this is the knowledge of purity, which is remote from the defilement and mixture of what is material. The learned assert besides, that the night of power, "the night on which the Koran was sent down," refers to the beginning, and the day of resurrection to the place to which one returns; because the nature of night is to conceal things of which few may have information, and the nature of day is to bring to view things of which all may take notice. Further,
the whole of the notions and powers of primitive creation is contained in the knowledge of God, who is understood under the name of "primitive, permanent, and predestinator." Every body possesses not this knowledge; it was then on account of the belief that the predestinations were concealed in it, that "the night of power" was said to be "primitive," and as in the place to which one returns (that is at the resurrection) every thing concealed shall become manifest, and every one be informed of it, on account of this belief, this place was referred to "day." As on this day, all are to rise from the tomb of the body, and to awake from the sleep of heedlessness, it was called "the resurrection." According to the learned, Kâbah (the square temple at Mecca) is an emblem of the sun, on which account it is right to worship it; and the well Zem zem" signifies likewise "the great luminary," as Hakim Khâkâni said relatively to both:

"O Kâbah, thou traveller of the heaven!"
"O Zem zem, thou fire of the world!"

Hajer ul âscad, "the black stone at Mecca," represents the body of Venus, which on the border of the heavens is a star of the planets. Some have interpreted the resurrection of the bodies in the sense of the learned, who referred it to the revolution of the

1 A well at Mecca, see this vol., p. 14-15, note 1.
heavens, and to the influences of the stars upon the terrestrial globe.

"Every external form of things, and every object which disappeared,
"Remains stored up in the storehouse of fate;
"When the system of the heavens returns to its former order,
"God, the All-Just, will bring them forth from the veil of mystery."

Another poet says:

"When the motion of the heavens in three hundred and sixty thousand years,
"Shall have described a minute about its centre,
"Then shall be manifest what had been manifest before,
"Without any divergence to the right or to the left."

The great revolution with them, according to the word of Berzasp, the disciple of Tahamüers, is of three hundred and sixty thousand solar years: that is, as the motions of the heavens take place in a circle, their positions are necessarily determined; when, according to that revolution, the positions of the heavens manifest themselves so that from the contiguities, the adwâr and ikwâr, "the cycles," the zatk and fatk, "the shutting and opening," from the conjunctions of the whole and from the unions, all parts of the phenomena show the very same necessarily determined position, in its reality without increase and decrease. In the books of the Persian

١ ادوار و أکوار

... are the cycles or revolutions of years, according to which the astrologers pretend to prognosticate the accidents of human life. Every adwâr consists of 360 solar years, and the ikwâr of 120 lunar years; the whole art consists in finding the combination of these years, and their respective relations.
sages is stated that, as the motions of the heavens are circular, certainly the compasses return to the same point from which the circumference began to be drawn, and when at a second revolution the compasses run over the same line upon which the former circumference was drawn, undoubtedly, whatsoever has been granted in the former circumference, shall be granted again; as there is no disparity between two circumferences, there will be no disparity between their traces; because the phenomena, having returned to that order in which they were found in the beginning, the stars and heavens, having made their revolution about the former centre, the distances, contiguities, appearances, and relations having in no aspect been contrary to the former aspects, certainly the influences which manifested themselves from yonder origin shall in no manner be different.

This is called in Persian mahin cherkh, "the great circle;" and in Arabic dawrah-i kabra.

Farábi¹ says: the vulgar form to their own sight

---

¹ Abu Naṣr Muḥammad Ebn Turkhan al Fārābī, a native of Farab, a town situated on the occidental confines of Turkestan, afterwards called Otrar. He is esteemed as the greatest philosopher among the Muselmans, and at the same time the most detached from the world. To him is attributed the translation of Aristotle's Analytics, under the title of Anolathica. Avisenna confessed to have derived all his science from him. Ghazali counts Fārābi and Avisenna among the philosophers who believed the eternity of the world, but not without a first mover, which doctrine is believed by the Muselmans to be atheistical. Fārābi died in
their belief according to the shape of their imagina-
tion, and will continue to form it so, and the place
of their imaginations will be a body of the heavenly
bodies. The venerable Shaikh Maktul tends to
establish in his demonstrations, that the heavenly
bodies are places of imaginations of the inhabitants
of heaven, and that beneath the heaven of the moon,
and above the globe of fire is a spherical body, with-
out motion, and this is the place of the imaginations
of the inhabitants of hell.

It is to be known, that this sect hold the world to
be eternal, and say that, as the sun's light is to the
heaven, so is the world to God. Nothing was that
had not been, and nothing will be that is not. Fur-
ther, according to the expounders of theological
law, the world is a phenomenon of time. The phi-
losophers assert, the meaning of that phenomenon
is "procreation;" and the phenomenon of procrea-
tion is not contradictory to "permanency;" infinite
permanency coalesces with time.

the year of the Hejira 339 (A. D. 950), according to Ebn Chal and Abul-
feda, quoted by Pococke (p. 372); according to Herbelot in Hejira 343
A. D. 954).
SECTION II.—OF THE REPUTATION AND THE TRUTH OF
THE PROPHETIC DIGNITY.

Know that, when individuals of mankind want
to associate in the concerns of life, they find it in-
dispensable to have recourse to customs, regula-
tions, and religious faith, in order that they may
be concordant, and that oppression may be ex-
cluded from their transactions and associations, and
the order of the world preserved. It is requisite
to refer the customs and regulations to God, and
to proclaim that they proceed from God, in order
that all may adopt them. On that account the ne-
cessity of theology and of a prophetic mission became
evident, in order that the institutes for the govern-
ment of the creatures may be established, and, by
means of mildness and severity, men might be in-
duced to be concordant, and the different conditions
of the world arranged. And such an institutor is
named "illustrious sage;" his precepts are likewise
celebrated; among the eminent moderns, his title is
that of "prophet," or "legislator," and that of his
precepts "the law." But his deputy, who is a
judge, ought to be a person distinguished by divine
grace, that he may promote the instruction and ar-
range the affairs of mankind; such a man is called
by the wise "an universal ruler," and his precepts
are entitled "the practice of the empire;" the mo-
derns gave him the name of Imám, and to his precepts that of Imámet. The unusual customs, which are called májazát, "miracles,"¹ and kirámát, "prodigies,"² have been submitted to investigations from which it results that the vital spirit, or soul, is the cause of the accidents which are manifested in our body, such as anger and violent emotion. It may be that the vitality attains such a force in every

¹ májez, is an extraordinary thing, operated by prophets for the confirmation of their prophecy.

² Kera'ém, signifies a prodigy, or sign, manifested by any pious person without his claiming prophetic dignity.—(See Pococke, Specim. Hist. Arab., p. 186. 1st edit.)

The Asiatic Doctors admit that extraordinary things may be operated by men who pretend to be deities, prophets, Valis (Saints, of whom more hereafter), and magicians, who are supposed to command demons. Thus they quote Pharaoh, who arrogated divinity to himself, and performed miracles, and thus it shall be with the Antichrist. Celestial favors granted to Valis are believed by the orthodox Muhammedans, upon the strength of the Koran and authentic traditions. To these are added innumerable tales accredited among the superstitious, some of which are ingeniously combined with a moral lesson. Jàmi, in his Lives of Sús, quotes the following words of another illustrious personage, whom he does not name:

"The principle on which all is comprised is, that, when a man performs an extraordinary action, renouncing something which other men are wont to do, or which he himself was wont to do, God also, on his part, by a sort of compensation, changes, in that man's favor, some-

thing in the ordinary course of nature. It is that which the vulgar call Kera'met. But distinguished men understand by this word the divine favor which gave a man aid and force to renounce the things to which he was accustomed. This is what we understand by Kera'met. This explanation differs from that given above. The whole doctrine relative to this subject is united with that of Sufism, which is hereafter to be de-

veloped.—(See Notices et Extraits des MSS., vol. XII. pp. 357-369.)
manner, that its relation to this world of depravity becomes of that nature as is our relation to our own bodies: then its desire proves the cause of the accidents; it brings about what it wishes in this world. On that account, all the learned agree on this point, that, in every respect, the soul is of an extreme ingenuity and sagacity, so that, of whatsoever kind the knowledge may be to which it turns its attention, it renders itself master in one day of the whole science, and the power of its memory is such, that it recollects whatever it has heard but once, and, to whatsoever object it directs its look, the soul will give an account of it, of the past as well as of the present. Another power of the soul is to know, either in a dream or by ilhám, "inspiration," an event before it takes place. A further power of the soul is, to discover the purport of whatever it sees. All this together is the attribute of the soul. When, on account of pious austerity and struggles in the cause of God, one's sensual spirit is kept in due temperature, it becomes like an essence of heaven, and

"ilhám, means what is thrown in a man's mind by way of emanation, or with the exclusion of diabolical suggestions; that is, not by way of thought and reflection. It is also explained, a knowledge which rises in a man's heart and excites him to action without his demanding a prodigy, or the investigation of a proof for believing the truth of what is so revealed to him. — (See Definitions of Jorjáni, Ext. et Not. des MSS., vol. X. pp. 76-77.)
his rational soul borrows as much as possible from the heavenly spirit, in the same manner as a polished mirror receives the image from a painted surface. Whatever comes forth from the rational soul in the way of generality, of that the rational soul gives an account by means of images in the way of particularity, and brings it home to common sense by way of allegories. And when comprehended by common sense, it becomes evident, and there is no difference between what comes to common sense from the exterior or from the interior; on which very account some have entitled it the common sense, as being sensible from both sides. Further, he whose constitution is better tempered, and whose power of imagination and common sense is brighter, he, after being freed from worldly dependencies, will possess a righter fore-knowledge, such as that in sleep: for sleep also is suitable to prescience, and the revelation of some prophets was received during sleep.

Upon the meaning of Revelation and Inspiration.

Some of the novices who feel themselves in this state, comprehend at once something which they did not understand before; they suppose they are
as if hearing something from within, and this they call "a voice from an invisible speaker." It has been said that, in miracles and supernatural events, there is no doubt of our spirit being the phenomenon—which manifests itself in the human body from mental excitement and exultation; then it may happen that the spirit receives such a force and perfection, that its relation to the world of corruption be like our relation to the body whence its desire may be the mover in this exterior world.

There is another wonderful science and property of things. The lord Shaikh Abu Ali¹ says in his book, "the Ascent to Heaven:" All the spirits are subject to more perfect intelligences, except "the Holy Ghost," who is the mediator between the self-existing Being and the first intelligences, and this is "the command;" and the word of God means "the revelation," which the Holy Ghost makes by the intervention of perfect intelligences, and which is manifested by the prophetic spirit; whence, whatever is the speech of the prophet, all is the expression of the word of God, and his word is futile by itself, and the name of holiness comes from God alone.

¹ Avisenna. (See, upon this celebrated personage, vol. II. pp. 168-175.) He and Al Farabi, before-mentioned (p. 170, note 1) are, according to the concurring opinions of the Arabs, the most distinguished chiefs of the Arabian philosophers, properly so called. The logic of Avisenna has been translated by Vattier, 1688.
UPON THE INTERPRETATION OF THE MIRACLES OF THE PROPHET.

The learned possess a great number of versions on this subject, but the best of all interpretations is that of the lord rais, the wise Abu Ali Sinâ, who declares: "So said the prophet of God, Muhammed, the selected (peace be upon him): "One night I slept in the house of my father’s sister; it was a night of thunder and lightning; no animal uttered a sound; no bird was singing; no man was awake; and I slept not, but was suspended between sleep

1 The ascent of Muhammed to Heaven has been mentioned (vol. II. p. 339). The prophet gave no explicit account of it in the Koran, yet traditions of what he himself had related of it, although not without various versions, are preserved, and believed with equal faith as the verses of the sacred book themselves, in which frequent allusions occur to the circumstances and events of which Muhammed’s voyage to Heaven is composed. These, indeed, however absurd they may appear to unbelievers, contain the fundamentals of the Muhammedan mysticism. On account of this importance, I shall add to the notice given above, by Avi-senna, some particulars contained in the narration published from original sources by the Baron of Hammer Furgstal Gemäldezaal moslimischer. Heerscher. III. ter Band. 1837, Seite 81, etc.)

2 Muhammed was sleeping in the house of Omm Hani, the daughter of Abu Thaleb, in the sanctuary of the Kâba, when Jabril awakened him; the angel called Mikail to bring him a cup full of water from the sacred well Zemzem (see vol. III. pp. 14-15. note 1). Jabril cleft Muhammed’s breast, drew his heart out, washed it, and, with three cups from the sacred fountain, infused into him faith, knowledge, and wisdom. He then conducted him out of the sanctuary to a place between Safa and Merva, where he made the prophet bestride Borak (see vol. II. p. 339), which, as the Angel said, was mounted by Abraham.
and waking: the secret meaning of this might have been, that it was a long while before I became desirous of understanding the divine truth. Under the shield of the night, men enjoy greater freedom, as the occupations of the body and the dependence of the senses are broken. A sudden night fell then, and I was still between sleep and waking; that is, between reason and sensuality. I fell into the sea of knowledge; and it was a night with thunder and lightning, that is, the seven upper agents prevailed, so that the power of human courage and the power of imagination sunk from their operation, and inactivity manifested its ascendancy over activity. And lo! Jabrîl came down in a beautiful form, with much pomp, splendor, and magnificence, so that the house became illuminated; that is, the power of the holy spirit came upon me in the form of the command, and made such an impression upon me, that all the powers of the rational soul were renewed and enlightened by it. And what the prophet said in the description of Jabrîl, "to have seen him whiter than snow, with a lovely face, black hair, and on his forehead the inscription: 'There is no 'God but one God,' the light of his eyes charming, the eyebrows fine, having seventy thousand curls twisted of red rubies, and six hundred thousand pearls of a fine water," that is, he possessed
so many beauties in the eyes of pure reason, that if an impression of these beauties was made upon a sense, it was able to perceive those which have been described, and the purport of the words: "there is no God but one God," appeared in a determined light: that is he whose eyes fall upon his perfections is removed from the darkness of infidelity, and doubt, and worldly connection; and in such a manner he feels himself fortified in the certitude of the Creator, and attains such a degree of virtue, that hereafter, upon whatsoever creature he looks; his faith in God's unity will be enhanced by it. And such were the charms of the angel that, if one possessed seventy thousand curls, he would not attain to his beauty; and such was his rapidity, that thou wouldst have said, he was flying with six hundred wings and arms, so that his progress knew neither space nor time."

"What he said came upon me, and he took me to his bosom, and gave me kisses between the eyes, and said: 'O thou sleeper, how long sleepest thou? rise!' That is, when the power of holiness came upon me, it caressed me, opened the road of its revelation, and exalted me; a certain delight which I cannot describe diffused itself in my heart, and transported me to devotion. The angel then continued: 'How long sleepest thou?' that is, why indulgest thou in the delusions of
falsehood? thou art attached to the world, and,
as long as thou remainest in it, and before thou
awakest, knowledge cannot be obtained; but I,
from compassion towards thee, shall be thy
guide on the road. Rise.' I trembled at his
words, and from fear jumped up from my place:
that is, from timid respect for him no reflection
remained in my heart and mind. He further said:
'Be calm, I am thy brother, Jâbrîl;' thus, by his
kindness and revelation, my terror was appeased.
But he unfolded more of his mysteries, so that
fear returned upon me. I then said: 'O bro-
ther, I feel the hand of an enemy.' He replied:
'I shall not deliver thee into the hand of an ene-
my.' I asked: 'Into whose?' He answered:
'Rise, and be glad, and keep thy heart within
thyself:' that is, preserve thy memory clear,
and show obedience to me, until I shall have
have removed the difficulties before thee. And
as he spoke I became entranced and transport-
ed, and I proceeded on the footsteps of Jâbrîl;
that is, I forsook the sensual world, and by the
aid of natural reason I followed the footsteps of
holy grace.” What the prophet said: “I saw
Borâk upon the footsteps of Jâbrîl,” signifies,
the practical reason which triumphs by means of
the power of sanctity, and by its assistance gains
the ascendancy over this world of corruption: for
from the heavenly intelligences proceeds practical reason, which is the supreme king and assistant of the soul, at any time when it may be required. It is to be compared to Borak for this reason, because it was the illuminator of the night, and the vehicle of the protector, who on that journey wanted it: on that account the prophet called it Borák. And as to what he further said: "It was greater than an ass and smaller than a horse;" this means, it was greater than human reason, but smaller than the first intelligence. And "Borak's face was like that of a man," signifies, he had a propensity for human order and much kindness for men, as a family by its manner and likeness among men has a bearing to kindness and arrangement. What the prophet stated of "a long hand and long foot," means that his benefit extends to all places, and that his bounty keeps all things new. What he stated: "I wanted to mount Borák, but he resisted until Jabríl gave assistance; then he became obedient to me;" this implies, I was under the influence of the corporeal world; I desired to associate with reason; but this was refused until the power of sanctity washed off by a bath the entanglement of ignorance and the hinderances of the body, so that I became pure, and by such means attained the bounty and advantage of practical reason.

What the prophet further said: "When I pro-
"ceded on the way, and had left the mountains of Mecca, I saw a wanderer following my steps, who called out: 'Stop!' But Jābrīl said: 'Hold no conversation; go on.' I went on." By this the power of the imagination is indicated; that is: when I became free of the sight of my limbs and every thing belonging to me, and yielding no more to sensuality, and thus proceeded, the power of imagination, upon my steps, called out to me to stop; for the power of imagination is dextrous, and certainly is great, exerting itself in all affairs, and serves in lieu of intellect to all animals; but it is not right to allow imagination too much liberty, because it then descends to an equality with animals, and disorders its noble nature; further, whoever is assisted by the grace of God, follows not, on all occasions, the imagination. As to what the prophet said: "Behind me called out a woman, deceitful and beauteous: 'Stop until I join thee!' Jābrīl also said: 'Go on, and beware of stopping:'" this means the power of imagination, which is deceitful and bedecked, resembling a woman, to whom most natures are inclined, and who keeps men in her bondage; besides, whatever she does, is all art,

1 The ride proceeded to Jerusalem; a troop of Angels surrounded them on all sides. On the way Muhammed was called to successively by two men, the one of whom was a Jew, the other a Christian, and by a seductive female; the prophet did not stop at the voice of either.
without foundation, and contaminated by fraud and deception; nay, the very business of women is artifice and fiction: the power of imagination is not otherwise seductive. To continue: the lies and false promises of women being so many lures, they render mankind their slaves with their show, and never keep their faith; so that all they affect turns out to be futile. Thus, when a man follows the steps of imagination, he never attains true intelligence, as he always remains upon the track of outward ornament and in the bondage of corporeal appearance, without reality.

"And as to what the prophet stated: When I went on, Jabriel said: 'If thou hadst waited until she had joined thee, thou wouldst have become a friend of the world;'" this means: that worldly affairs are without reality, brittle and soon decaying, and that worldly occupations have a value but in conjunction with the views of a future state; inasmuch as occurrences and appearances are a deception, and are esteemed as adjuncts to the secrets of a high intelligence; and whoever devotes himself to the former rests behind the higher intelligences, and, in the illusion of vanity, rests imprisoned in the pitfall of ignorance.

And what Muhammed said: "When I left the mountains and these two persons behind me, I wenton until I reached the house of sanctity
(Jerusalem); and as I entered it, a person came to me, and gave me three cups—the one of wine, the second of water, and the other of milk. I wished to take that of wine, but Jabriel forbade it, and pointed to that of milk, which I took and drank:” the meaning of this is: When I freed myself from sensuality, and knew the state of imagination and deception, and resolved in myself to enter the world of spirits, then I saw three spirits in the house of sanctity—the one was that of animal life, the second that of nature, and the other that of rationality. I wished to proceed on the footsteps of brutishness, and compared it to wine, the power of which is seducing, clouding, and ignorance-increasing, like passion and lust, and wine is the darkener of the two other powers. And he compared nature to water, because from it is derived the support and stability of a person, and man depends upon the temperament of the agents which act in the body; water is also the vital strength of ani-

1 This obscure passage appears to allude to a gloss found in the Desātir, English transl., p. 183. After having said that there are four elements, the Commentator subjoins: “The water is of the shape of a ball, the half of which being broken, is filled with water, so that the water and earth together compose one ball. And as the elements penetrate into and affect each other, a sort of middle nature is produced, which is called constitution or temperament. If a body that is united with a temperament has the probability of subsisting for a protracted time, and of retaining its compound substance, it is called permanent, or perfect;” if not, imperfect, or wanting perma-
mals, and the promoter of growth and increase. And the rational spirit he compared to milk, as being a salutary and agreeable nourishment, and promoting welfare. And as to what he said: "I wished to take the wine; but he forbade it, that I might take the milk:" is in allusion to most men, who, being badly disposed, do not desist from obsequiousness to two spirits, those of nature and brutishness; and whoever is badly disposed demands what is material, and the pleasure and enjoyment of these two spirits are of this kind.

"The Prophet said farther: When I arrived there I entered the mosque, and the crier called to prayer; and I stepped forward, I saw an assembly of prophets and angels standing to the right and the left; every one saluted me, and made a new covenant with me." This means: When I became freed from all converse and concern with brutishness and nature, I entered the mosque, that is, I retired into the inmost of the soul; by "crier of

"'nence.' " — Lower down: "And there can be no temperament so equalised that the elements in it should be exactly of the same quantity and mode. And in proportion as a temperament more nearly approaches equality, the soul bestowed on it by the Originator of being is more perfect."

1 In the temple of Jerusalem, Muhammed was saluted by choirs of angels and prophets, as the first of interceders before God, the last of prophets, and as one who will assemble the people on the day of judgment.
"the mosque" is understood the power of remembering and praising God; by "one's Imaam," meditation; and "the angels" mean the powers of the inmost soul, such as abstraction, memory, praise of God, and the like. Further, "saluting them" refers to the comprehending of all the mental powers. Thus, when one wishes to mount up to the terrace of a house, he must first have a staircase by which he may, step after step, ascend, until he attains the summit of the terrace; in like manner also are these refined powers to be considered as ladder-steps, upon which, the one after the other, a man ascends until he arrives at his aim.

"And what the prophet said: When I became free, I raised my face upwards, and I found a ladder, one step of which was of silver and the "other of gold:" this means, from the external to the internal sense; "gold" and "silver" denote the superior value of the one over the other.¹

¹ From the temple, the prophet was conducted by Jabrill to the rock upon which Abraham was ready to sacrifice his son Isaac. From them rose a ladder to heaven; not only were the steps alternately of gold and silver, but also, on one side shone edifices of emerald, and on the other palaces of ruby.

² Here Jabrill took Muhammed upon his wings and flew with him to the gate of Paradise, which was guarded by a legion of Angels. In the first heaven he saluted Adam, who sat between two gates, and was looking now to the right, now to the left; when to the right, he laughed; when to the left, he wept; for the right hand led to heaven, the left to hell: the first father's joy or sadness followed his children going to either side.
"And what he said: I arrived at the heaven of the universe; the gates yielded and I entered. There I saw Ismā'il seated upon a throne, and a crowd before him, with their eyes fixed upon his face. I made my salute, looked at him, and went on." By "heaven," is understood the moon; by "Ismā'il," the body of the moon; and by "the crowd," those whose conditions are under the influence of the moon.

"What Muhammed said: I entered the second heaven; there I saw an Angel excelling all others; by his perfect beauty, he captivated the admiration of the whole creation; one half of his body was of ice and the other half of fire; and yet there was no counteraction nor enmity between them. He saluted me, and said: 'Be welcome! All things and riches are thine.'" This means: it was the heaven of Mercury; and the import of this is, that every star has a determined influence, either auspicious or inauspicious; but Mercury acts in both ways; with an inauspicious connection inauspiciously, with an auspicious one auspiciously; so that one half is good and the other half bad." The "welcome," and the gift of "prosperity and riches," mean: the power of the mind, and the multiplicity of sciences which the star bestows."

1 In the second heaven, Muhammed saw Jesus and St. John at his side. They returned his salute.
What the prophet said: "When I arrived into the third heaven,¹ I there saw an Angel, equal to whom in excellence and beauty I had seen none; placid and joyful, he was seated upon a throne; and a circle of angelic effulgence was diffused about him." This was the heaven of Venus, and it is not necessary to comment its beauty: it denotes gladness and festivity."

Further: "When I entered the fourth heaven,² I there saw an Angel, surrounded with royal pomp, seated upon a throne of light; I made my obeisance, to which he replied with entire haughtiness, and, from pride and majesty, he bestowed neither word nor smile upon any body about him. When he answered my salute, he said: "O Muhammed, I see all things and riches in thee: glory and happiness to thee." That is, the fourth heaven," the residence of "this angel," means the sun;" he represents the conditions of kings and great personages; his "smile" is his influence upon good fortune," and his "congratulation" signifies his bounty for any body's prosperity.

"In continuation: When I arrived at, and entered, the fifth heaven,³ I happened to have a view of hell; and I saw a black region, and, on its bor-

¹ In the third heaven was Joseph, the ideal of beauty.
² In the fourth heaven was Idris (Enoch).
³ In the fifth heaven resided Aaron.
ders was seated a terrific and dark Angel, who was engaged in the business of punishing bad men.” That is “the fifth heaven, with its angel,” signifies “Mars;” this planet denotes the state of criminals and of blood-shedding men; and by “hell” is understood any account and description of the conditions which are appropriated to them.

“Moreover, When I entered the sixth heaven, I saw an angel sitting upon a throne of light, occupied with counting his prayers by beads, and with uttering benedictions; he had wings, and curls set with jewels, pearls, and rubies. I bowed before him, to which he returned blessings and congratulations, and wishes of joy and prosperity, and said: ‘I give thee perpetual blessing.’” That is, “the sixth heaven,” and “its angel,” signifies “Jupiter;” and he relates to persons of rectitude, abstinence and knowledge; his “wings and curls” signify his light and rays; and his “blessings,” his auspicious influence; for he bestows great felicity, and all sorts of good proceed from him.”

“To proceed: When I attained the seventh heaven, I saw an angel seated upon a throne of red rubies; not every one had access to him, but he who approached him found a kind treatment. I

1 In the sixth heaven appeared Moses.
2 In the seventh heaven, Muhammed saluted Abraham, as he saluted the holy persons before-named, who returned his salute.
made my reverence, and he returned an answer
by blessing me." This is understood to be "the
seventh heaven, and " that angel" was Saturn.
He is averse to greatness; but, whatever impression
he makes is perfect and entire; and when he shows
favor it is greater than any other; " every one can-
not approach him:" that is, it happens seldom
that one falls in with a fortunate situation, but, if it
occurs, the happy result is such as to surpass all
others.

"In sequel: When I proceeded, 'I arrived at the
heavenly mansion of the angel Jabriil; I saw a
world full of light and splendor, and such was
the effulgency that my eyes were dazzled. To
the right or left, to whatever side I turned my
looks, they met with angelic spirits, engaged in
devotion. I said: 'O Jabriil, who are this class
of beings?' He answered: 'These know of no
other fixed business but praying, counting their
beads, and visiting churches.'"

1 Jabriil then conducted Mohammed to his own usual residence. There
was the heavenly lotus tree (the tree of knowledge), around which a
divine light was diffused, and legions of angels were ranged. Beneath
the roots of the tree four sources were flowing: the first, Kauser, spiri-
tuous, like wine; the second, Selsebil, sweet, like clarified honey; the
third, the source of mildness, like the purest milk; and the fourth, the
source of mercy, like liquid crystal. Jabriil offered to the prophet three
cups, made of diamond, saphir, and ruby; the first filled with honey, the
second with milk, the third with wine. The prophet tasted the first, drank
the second, and declined the third, in which he was approved by the angel.
"There is for him, on the other side, but one place known."

"By 'the eighth heaven' is understood the heaven of the fixed stars, and there are the constellations; "the churches" mean the twelve signs of the zodiac; each community of them inhabits a determined side; they do not combat each other, as the southern have no business with the northern, and each has his fixed situation: some of the constellations are in the zodiac, some to the south, and others to the north.

"Besides, the prophet said: I saw five mansions greater than any thing else, which spread their shade over earth and heaven." He denotes here the great heaven, which in its interior incloses all the other heavens, and is the greatest of all spaces.

Again, saying: "When I proceeded, I saw four seas, the waters of each being of a different color," he implies an account of essentiality, corporeity, materiality, and exteriority; inasmuch as this account is generally perplexing, the idea of every one being conceived in a different way, and each way interpreted by every one.

And what the prophet said: "I saw angels much occupied with beads and prayers and all taken up with the precious sentence, There is no God but one God." this refers to pure spirits who are free from matters of desire, and spotless; and every man who
is remote from the world, wise, pure, and disengaged from all ties, when he separates from the body, is transported by God Almighty to the place and mansion of angels, and invested with everlasting beatitude. And the prophet assimilated him with angels, because they are seats of purity and devotion; that is, remote from corruption and perdition, and from the disturbance of sensuality, intent upon avoiding anger, and raised to the dignity of angels, perpetually engaged in the exploration of secret knowledge; they likewise never look upon the nether world, because, the body being in conjunction with mean and noble spirits, when a person fixes his sight upon low stations, he becomes liable to feel the attain of necessity, and to search for expediency among circumstances; but when he effects his separation from them, he attains the noble perfection of himself, he becomes beatified, and immersed in delight and tranquillity, in such a manner that he never throws a look upon the inferior world, because, this bodily form being taken off from him, he then, by increase of knowledge and comprehension, acquires dignity and nobleness.

"Some are upon their knees, and some prostrate themselves."

Some are spiritual, some praisers of God, some bent before him, some holy, and some purified cherubim, conforming in customs, lords, and princes.
"Still more: When I left this assembly, in my progress I arrived at a sea without borders; however I strained my sight, I could not perceive any boundary or shore; and at this sea I saw a river, and an angel who was pouring the sea-water into the river, and from thence the water ran to every place." By "the sea," he implies the first intelligence; and by "the river," the first spirit.

"Likewise: On the level of that sea, I perceived a great desert, greater than which I had never seen any space, so that, in spite of my endeavor, I found neither the beginning nor the end of it." That is: I could not assign a limit to what was more extensive than any thing else, as the comprehension of a pure being belongs only to a perfect intelligence.

"In continuance: On the level of the sea and the desert, I saw an angel surrounded with every grandeur, splendor, and pomp, who guarded both halves with facility; he called me to him, and having joined him, I asked: 'What is thy name?'

'He answered: 'Mikáil: I am the greatest of all angels; whatever is difficult, ask it from me; and whatever thou desirest, demand it from me: I will satisfy all thy wishes.' This means: When I had learned and considered all this, I understood the first command. And the Angel represents what is
called "the Holy Ghost," and is said to be "a che-
"rub." Whoever has access to him and receives
his assistance, evinces himself as wise, and partici-
pates in spiritual enjoyments.

"And also: When I had set myself free from
"saluting and questioning, I said: 'To arrive at
"this place I experienced much trouble, and my
"purpose in coming here was to attain know-
"ledge, and the sight of God Almighty. Grant
"me guidance, that I may satisfy my desire, and
"then return home.'" That is: by the pure
command, which is the holy word, he wished that,
as, after the study of nature, his inward sight was
opened to clear evidence, he might behold every
thing such as it was; he wished that he might find
the absolute Being, the first cause, the self-existing
necessary Being, the supreme good; and that he
might know his unity so that in him multiplicity
cannot exist."

"What the prophet further said: That angel
"took me by the hand, and gave me a passage

---

1 I followed here the manuscript of Oude, which reads:

و شناسن وحدت اور چنان که دری شکر کنند

2 From the mansion of Jabrill they proceeded to the heavenly taber-
nacle, called bättl māmūr, "the house of delightful culture," and
formed upon the model of the ancient Kāba, which, during the deluge,
was carried by angels up to heaven and placed perpendicularly above
the modern sanctuary of Mecca. Seventy thousand angels were always
"through several thousand curtains into a world, "where I saw nothing like what I had seen before, "until he brought me at last near the Lord of glory; "then the command came to me: 'Approach.'"

This means that the holy God is exempt from body, substance, and wants, which are found in this world.

going out and in to worship. In entering it, Jabrill gave the precedence to the prophet; they arrived at a golden veil, which the angel touched. Here the Angels sang: 'There is no God but God; and from behind the veil the voice of God answered: 'I am God, and no God exists but me.' The Angels added: 'Muhammed is the prophet of God;' and God confirmed it by the words: 'My servants say the truth; I have sent Muhammed as my apostle.' Now, Muhammed was raised up by angelic hands; Jabrill remained behind. The prophet proceeded through seventy thousand veils of light and darkness; each veil had the opacity of a thousand years, and as many years separated the one from the other.

Now he had attained the green rail with green cushions, illumined with a green light clearer than that of the sun. Muhammed was then called to approach; he adored; saw the Lord in the most beauteous form; and received the revelation of the Koran; before all three objects: 1. the five daily prayers; 2. the final verses of the second Sura of the Koran; 3. forgiveness of all sins, except that of idolatry, for his people. Here the Almighty pronounced the words: "If it had not been for thee, the world "would never have been created."—(See vol. 1. pp. 2-3.) A drop flowed from the throne into the mouth of the prophet, who by it imbibed all the knowledge of the anterior and posterior world. All the Angels joined in a chorus, singing: "There is no God but one God, and Mu-

**hammed is his prophet; and the great concert terminated with the words of the Koran, (chap. 11. v. 280): "The Apostle believeth in that "which has been sent down unto him from his Lord, and the faithful also. Every one of them believeth in God and his Angels, and his Scriptures, and his Apostles. And they say: 'We have' heard and "'do obey; we implore thy mercy, O Lord! for unto thee must we "'return.'"
"Again: In that majesty I immersed my sense
and motion, and found entire relaxation, content-
ment and tranquillity." That is: I acquired such
a knowledge of his purity and of his beneficence,
as no living being can comprehend with his sense:
for he may have a clear perception of bodies, and
observe forms and images; a substance *endowed with*
a memorial intelligence conceives ideas; but the self-
existent, necessary Being is out of this category,
and cannot be understood by sense, imagination,
and memorial power; in his majesty there is no
motion, because motion is a change of existence;
but the self-existent necessary Being is such as to be
the mover of all things.

"The prophet said further: From fear of the
Lord I forgot all things I had seen and known
before, and I felt such an exaltation, inspira-
tion, and inward delight, that thou wouldst have
said: 'I am intoxicated.'" That is: When my
intelligence found access to the knowledge of unity,
I considered and investigated the parts, and from
this study the rational soul derived such enjoy-
ment, that all the powers of brutishness and nature
desisted from their action, and such an immersion
into unity manifested itself, that there remained no
consideration for the science relative to substance
and bodies.

"Again: I felt some impressions of God's prox-
imity, so that I was seized with trembling; and I heard the command: 'Proceed,' and I proceeded. Then came the word: 'Fear not nor be disquieted.' This means: When I was initiated in the mystery of unity, I learned that the self-existent necessary Being is without the divisions of this world; I trembled at the boldness of my journey, which had attained such a height and distance; and I apprehended failing in the proof of the unity; but I heard the words: 'Come nearer;' that is: dismiss thy pondering, fear, and terror; for such is the proper state of a believer in the unity of God, to be continually immersed in a spiritual ecstasy, so that he may never fall back into the disgrace of brutishness, and fear and hope belong to the state of brutishness.

Moreover: I drew nearer, and upon me came the blessing of the Lord, such as I never had heard before;' that is: I received the revelation, the true words of the self-existent, necessary Being: and his speech is not like that of creatures by letters and sounds; no! his speech is evidence of knowledge, by itself pure, communicating to the spirit what he wills in a universal not a particular way.

Further: The command came: 'Say thy prayer:' I replied: I cannot; for thou art thyself such as thou hast said.' This means: When he was able to perceive the excellence of the belief in the unity of God, he found the truth of the words of the self-
existing necessary Being; he then felt such delight as he had never experienced before; he knew that the self-existing necessary Being is worthy of all prayers, but he felt at the same time that he could not express his prayers with the tongue, because an arrangement of letters is required for every thing which falls from the tongue, but that which has no connection except that of parts and the whole, is not suitable to the true, necessary, and self-existing Being, as he is not conceivable, either in parts or in a whole. The prophet knew that his prayer could not properly come from the tongue, as it is no business of the senses, but belongs properly to reason; but reason knew that an object highly deserving to be praised requires a praiser worthy of it, one whose knowledge may be adequate to the power of the being to be praised, so that the speech may prove suitable to the intention. The self-existent necessary Being is an object of unity without an equal, therefore the praise of any one will never be worthy of him. Besides, the prophet trusted also to God's knowledge, for he is all knowledge, and the knowledge of him is the theme of prayers to his being without letters and sound, and not by reason: he himself is his own ornament; he himself is his eloquence.

What the prophet further said: "The word came to me: 'What dost thou wish?' I said:
"Leave to ask whatever comes into my mind, so that my difficulties may be removed." This means: that when God asked: "What dost thou wish," and I said "leave," it was knowledge I wished: because in this journey no other consideration but that of pure reason had remained, which was to approach the majesty of the self-existent Being, and to understand his unity, which cannot be obtained but by the gift of knowledge. The prophet wished to be rendered worthy of him, and by full knowledge to acquire the dignity required, that he might then exhibit every difficulty that occurred, and receive a categorical answer. For the guidance of mankind, he composed the rules of the law in words which came suitably to the ears of men, so that at the same time the meaning of them was fixed, and the veil of advice remained upon such things as are not required to be known; what proved also an assistance to that knowledge, was the journey, consequently to which the law was given, and the account of which was drawn up for publication in such a manner, that the sense of it was obvious to none but to the investigators of truth.

The prophet also said: "When I had performed all this, and returned home, on account of the rapidity of my journey, I found the bed-clothes still warm." That is: he performed a journey of reflection, and travelled with his mind; the pur-
pose of this voyage was, by the consideration of the created beings to attain at the self-existent necessary Being; and when he had completed his mental task, he returned back into himself; he needed not a day for this business, but in less than in the twinkling of an eye recovered his former state; whoever knows, understands why he went; and whoever knows not, looks in vain for an expedient. It is not right to communicate these words to an ignorant or low person, because the enlightened alone can enjoy this fruit."

So far the words of the example of the wise, the Shaikh Abú-áli Sīna.

In the book of the investigators of truth is to be found, and from the tongue of the intelligent the information has been received, that the moon is one of the archangels, and cherubim of God. Being a celestial body, he cannot be cleft, and the supremacy of his power is not subject to absurd changes of form, nor does he undergo them. Consequently, the fissure of the moon, which is mentioned in the Koran, is an evident allegory, the sense of which is obvious; because every star and sphere has an internal foundation, called "reason," so that of the moon among all bears the title of "superior wisdom." It is also established in the fundamentals of the philosophers among this sect, that the utmost dignity and perfection of man, attributable to corporeity, is that which unites and coalesces into one,
"with superior wisdom;” whoever attains that degree, comprehends also any other to which he may proceed, without any new study for it; and no degree of human perfection and no knowledge is excluded from it. Hence, whenever this matter is understood, the fissure of the moon typifies nothing else but renunciation of the external for the internal, which is the “superior wisdom.” As the lord prophet (the peace of God be upon him) is the master of the lunar sphere, to cleave (or divide) the moon means to attain to the innermost recess of the moon. But this creed belongs to the learned of the Mashāyīn, "peripatetics;” the Ishrākīan say, the true solution of this enigma is contained in their fundamental science; viz. light is the type of the primitive creation of the world, and they divided whatever is contained in it, in two parts: the first is a light, in which there is not the least mixture of obscurity and darkness, proper to corporeal matter; the second sort of light can be mixed with some material darkness. The first sort of light, pure in a general and real acceptation, originates from primitive matter, and, according to their showing, emerged absolutely free from parts; but the second sort of light is mixed with obscurity, and throws rays on all sides; its knowledge can be comprehended by generalities and particularities, whence by its power it passes into action. In their metaphysics it is also settled, that
the furthermost stretch and connection of beings, and
the utmost term of completion, consist in this, that
knowledge, may become manifest in the whole by
generalities and particularities, so that nothing may
remain deficient in any degree of power. When-
ever this matter is settled, then the moon in their
language signifies a mixed light, with this property,
that it brings into action all the knowledge hidden in
its efficacy, and by means of the reflection of rays
elicits perfection.

Whoever is well founded in these notions acquires
the faculty that all sciences, whatsoever they may be,
come forth from him. It is then the moon which
signifies mixed light, and the rending asunder of it
means the arising of sciences and excellence, and
their manifestation; that is, bringing forth all that is
within, by means of breaking its exterior form.

As to fixing the seal of the prophetic office, and
to completing the apostleship, so that after the pro-
phet of Arabia no other may appear, they said what
follows: The seal of the prophetic office means the
acquisition of ʿâlī fāal, "superior wisdom;" that
is: whoever obtains it, and makes the proper use of
it, possesses the seal of the prophetic office: because
the first prophetic dignity is his intelligence, which
is the real (intrinsic) Adam, "man." The prophetic
seal is the tenth rank of intelligences,¹ and that

¹ See page 143 of this volume.
which is reared up by superior wisdom renders the prophet’s knowledge vain, and takes his color: that is to say, if one hundred thousand prophets like himself realise in themselves the person of superior wisdom, they are possessors of the seal, the last prophets, because it is superior wisdom, which is the seal, and they know themselves to be mahu, “effaced,” and superior wisdom to be existing.”

But the Ashrákíán say, that the first prophet is the majesty of the cherubic light, that is the first intelligence, and the possessor of the prophetic seal is the Lord God of the human race, that is, the intelligence which legislates the human race. Further; whoever found grace with the Lord of mankind, and became his near attendant, his Káim makám, “vice-regent,” although the authority of such a person be vain by itself as delegate, yet he, too, is called the possessor of the prophetic seal (the last prophet): so, as Azízi said:

“From head to foot, my person became my friend: hence, if I wish
“To see the friend, I place the mirror before me.”

Kásam Khan said:

“I will in such a manner make myself one with thee, that if one day
“You seekest thyself, thou mayest find me within thy tunic.”

As to the interpretation of what they say, that the prophet had no shade—this refers to an able son: as after Mohammed (the peace of the Highest be upon him!) the prophetic mission did not devolve
upon a son of his: hence the saying that he had no shade. It is also said, that never a fly sat upon the body of the prophet; which means that he never was tainted by avarice.

SECTION III. — Of the Successors of these Philosophers, and the Chief Followers of this Creed.

Of this class, several learned men were personally known to the author of this book, but he will give an account of those only who were well founded and skilled in this creed. First, the doctor in theology, Hrbed, whom the author visited in Lahore. This doctor was a descendant from the family of Zardúsht, the prophet of God; he was conversant with Persian, showed great proficiency in Arabic, and in other sciences, in Shiraz, and held intercourse with learned Frangis. At last he came to India; always devoted to austerity, he led a pure and holy life. He composed hymns in Persian, Hindi, and Arabic, to the majesty of the light of lights, the powerful luminaries, and the stars. He acknowledged as a Kiblah the splendor-shedding bodies, and made his own, in spirit and word, the work of the lord Shaikh Maktul. Secondly, the doctor Manir was met by the writer of this work, in the year of the Hejira 1055 (A. D. 1643-4), in Kabul; he was one
of the Sáíds of Shiraz, but entered the elemental world in Irák Ajem; he was skilful in sciences, and lived as a chaste independent and pious man; like Hirbed, he abstained from all sorts of animal food, and sang the hymns which go under the name of Shaikh Maktul, in praise of the luminaries, and venerated the stars; and both these persons paid homage with the sun, refulgent with light. The third was Hakím dostír, who in 1054 of the Hejíra (A. D. 1644-5) came to Lahore. He drew his origin from Ispáhan, but was born in Bálkh; he studied in the service of the followers of Mulla Mírza Khan; then, having gone to Iran, he held intercourse with Mír Muhammed Báker dámád, with Shaikh Baháv-ed-dín Muhammed, with Mír Abúl Khásem Kandérsákí, and with other learned men and Ulámá of Shiraz, not without great profit to himself; he attached himself to the rule of the Masháyín, "peripatetics," and repeated the prayers which were written by the chief of this persuasion in praise of the self-existent Being, the intelligences, and spirits, and stars; and he was very zealously addicted to the worship of the heavenly bodies; although without pious austerity, yet he abstained from wickedness, and kept the way of moderation; according to the custom of merchants, he travelled a great deal. A fourth was Kámrán, of Shiraz. He also followed the creed of the Masháyín; he possessed the natural and revealed
sciences; and after having acquired excellence, he happened to find himself at the mountain which is near the sea-ports of the Frangis; he took a great liking to their society, and was attracted by the religion of the Nasáreans: on that account he studied the Gospel, and derived great profit from their doctrines. Afterwards he went to India, where he contracted friendship with some Rájas; he became fond of their religion; read, with learned Brahmans, the sástras of the Hindús, that is, their scientific books, and in these also he became a master of art among the learned of India. Although ostensibly he adopted the said faith, yet he remained attached to the religion of the ancient philosophers. He showed great aversion to lying, thieving, debauchery, and unnatural love; and, according to the custom of the wise, forbore from killing animals; but now and then he indulged in a draught of wine, saying that it is very salutary. He was wont to sing hymns, which are in use among the Yúnian philosophers, and are now translated, in praise of God, the high intelligences and spirits, and the stars. He accepted no gift from any body; he was employed in trade, but he contented himself with a competent capital. Mír Abú ’l Kásem Kandarsakí called him "a brother dear as "life," nay, wrote to him as to an "elder brother." In the year of the Hejira 1060 (A. D. 1640-1) he retired to solitude at the Serai Faryh, "the fortu-
"nate palace," near the heaven-built town of Akbar-abad. It is said that, in his malady, he bestowed all he possessed in gift upon the Durvishes, and the ready money upon the Brahmins of Vishnu, and the like, who never hurt a living being. He delivered garments into the care of one named Muhammed, that this man might distribute them among the poor upon the road of Kachmir and Kabul, where the cold is severe, which Muhammed did; he there collected forage and provisions, which were given to cows, asses, to travellers, and the indigent, because they carry loads; he also confided scientific books to one called Hushiar, that he might give them to doctors devoted to science, and Hushiar so disposed in Agra of the works which he had received, and sent them to his friends. During his mortal malady he was constantly engaged in reading the Alhiyat shafâ, "the hymns of recovery," and in translating the Assilijia, "Theologia," and he sang cheerfully: "I believe in the divinity of the most high Creator, the prophecy of intelligence, the Imamet of the spirit, the heaven as a Kiblah, and the liberation of philosophy, and I detest the free-thinkers.

is supposed to be one of Aristotle's works, which is said to have been translated by Abenama, a Saracen, from Greek into Arabic. This translation was found in the library of Damascus, by Franciscus Roseus, and at his request rendered into Latin, by Moses Koras, a Jew, but in a very barbarous style. This interpretation has perhaps never been published. Soon after, or about the same time, Petrus Nicolaius ex
and other religions.” At the moment of death, he pronounced the names of the self-existent Being, of the intelligence and spirit, and of the stars, and the by-standers also joined him in chorus, until he had left the mortal garment. His life exceeded one hundred years, and he had preserved his strength and his faculties entire. He gave these directions to Hûshîar, that after death to be burnt would be preferable, but, if the people prevented it, Hûshîar should bury him with his feet to the West, as all distinguished personages, such as Aristotle and his followers, repose in the same way. Hûshîar executed his will, and also, according to his direction, burnt at the head of his tomb, during a whole week, every day and every night, a lamp to the honor of the star which at that time ruled over him, and distributed the food and raiment which are appropri-
ated to that star among the Brahmans and necessi-
tous, who all prayed to render the star propitious,
in order that the soul of Hakím Kámrán might be
united with the pure spirits. Húshíár went after-
wards to Agra, and I saw a book in the hand-writ-
ing of Húshíár, in which was stated, that he, after
Kámrán’s death, saw him in a dream clothed in
a fine garment, and sitting by the side of the lord
“camest thou to this place?” He answered: “The
“pure spirits, when they saw me free from worldly
“desires, drew me to them, and by the aid of their
“intercession, I was made one of the angels.”

The creed of the Hakíms Hírbed and Manír, with
regard to the reality of inspired persons, was, that
these celebrated men were perfect sages, and mas-
ters of an excellent condition; by their words and
deeds they reached the state of perfection, on which
account they treated mysterious questions relative
to theoretical and practical wisdom with the confi-
dence of pure truth; but for the sake of the vulgar,
they used a typical and allegorical language, leaving
it to other sages, the able chiefs and saints of their
persuasion, to explain the law and the religion: this
is the creed of philosophers.

The prophets of Persia, such as Abád, Zardusht,
and the like, are called Vakhshúr; the apostles of the
Yonán and of Rome are Aghášá daimún (Agatho de-
mon); "Hermes, and the like, whom they name "possessors of fame;" the prophets of the Hindus, such as Ráma, Krishna, and the like, are entitled Avatárs; and the prophets of the Turks, such as Aghrires and Aghár khan, are distinguished by the name of Abúl-mas. The prophets of Islám, from Adam, the father of mankind, to Muhammed, are called resul. In like manner the prophets of other nations were distinguished by titles such as buzery, "great," or sádik, "pure." They said: it is right that no other prophet should come after the one: which is signified by the seal of the prophetic mission, that is, "the utmost dignity of mankind." Ibn Makandá Sáheb-i-Mah Kashgher, also was reckoned among the prophets, and such was the controversy which arose about the head-khaláfet, the distinction, precedence, and rejection of the lords among each other, that it has not yet been brought to a satisfactory conclusion. They said that there were four celebrated doctors; if a controversy arose, this is nothing less than what is proper to mankind, as no man can be free from the attributes of his race; on that account they abstained from reviling the case of Moáváh, but they said that he was a great personage. But the creed of the Hakim Dostur was, that the prophets of the Persians, Hindus, Yonans,

1 See pp. 105–106.
2 See pp. 3 and 80.
Turks, and Arabs, and such people, were promoting the establishment of a sort of knowledge and of some sorts of sciences; the philosophers, exerting themselves by the aid of the reasoning faculty, become founders of theoretical schools, and also lend their assistance with respect to theology. The scope of an Hakim is, that his reason may direct its laborious efforts towards all quarters, and, inasmuch as may be in its power, to bear a resemblance to the Lord God, the self-existent Being. The utmost endeavor of the prophets is, that the order of the world may be evident to them, so that they may, according to this order, arrange the affairs of society. But this order of affairs cannot be exempt from the excitement of desire, terror, and dubiousness; although, certainly, whatever the masters of law and religion have combined into a system, may be explained by what certain eminent philosophers have exhibited. Among other things it is said, that the world is very ancient, and its eternity without beginning and end indubitable.

In the sequel, a learned Hakim raises pretensions to inspiration, excites others to the adoption of a creed which he endeavors to render firm. But Hakim Kámzán assented to no inspiration, he said:—In ancient times, sages established customs and regulations for the order of the world, and, as long as the inhabitants conformed to them, there was not the
least oppression in their doings; until finally they collected into a nation, worshipping pleasure and bent upon worldliness; then arose concealment of truth from the people, union by the strength of parentage, combination by fraud, and enveigling by means of enchantment and the like, by which idiots were drawn into a net. When those who implored protection were seized by the oppressors, helpless, the prudent among them bent down their heads; because when the strong become masters of the day, men submit to them on account of their being superior to the weak people, who have timid souls; thus they accepted their dominion by force, and contention ensued in the world. Moises was held to be an enchanter, and called rabi Moises; rabi being the name given by the Jews to the learned; Jesus was accounted a physician, and entitled Hakim Jesus, son of Joseph, the carpenter; Muhammed bore the name of "the prophet of God, the king of the Arabian poets;" Krishna went under the name of

مُلُكِ اِسْحَارِی عَرب. This is not quite correct: Muhammed introduces in his Koran (ch. XXXVI. v. 69) the Lord saying: "We have not taught Muhammed the art of poetry; nor is it expedient for him to be a poet. This book is no other than an admonition from God, and a perspicuous Koran." The Arabian prophet, according to the best accounts, liked to hear poetry read, but never perused any himself, although he frequently spoke in the metre called رجز rijaz. The only Arabic verse which he often repeated was the celebrated one from the poem of Lebid:
Avatâr chahnâl,¹ that is, the "incarnation of the lewd, "and devoted to women." And thus the celebrated prophets were distinguished. The intelligent know well that the most high Creator does not articulate words, but the sacred dictates which the vulgar receive are to be thus considered—that, if those books which they call "heavenly," such as the Koran, were really the words of God, which were delivered in time past to our ancestors, such as to Adam and Noah, it would be right that they should be also communicated in time to come to future generations, expressing, viz.: that in such a time and year, and month and week, on such a day, at such an hour, a person shall appear, in such a town and such a street, tribe sprung from such a one, with such a name, and such an aspect. But such an account is not to be found in the Koran; it is only by the interpretation of his followers that many traditions about Muhammed are current. The same may be said of

Is not every thing, except God vain?

Aisha, his favorite consort, declares in the traditions, that he hated verses, and never recited one correctly. One day he attempted to quote the known verse of an Arabian poet:

The days bring to thee news that thou dost not know;
And some man brings news the spirit of which he doth not understand.

But he altered somewhat the order of the last words, "'Prophet of God!" said Abu bekâr, "the verse runs not so." Muhammed answered: "I "am no poet."—(Gemâldein d. Mstl. Herrscher, 1. der Band, Seite 230.)

¹ chhalana, "tricking, deceiving."
other prophets. For if it were stated in the book of Jesus, that at the determined time, as we have just shown, there shall appear a person whose name in Arabia shall be Muhammed, sprung from the father Abd 'ulla and the mother Aminá, from the children Hashem and Korésh, inhabitants of Mecca; and he shall be the last prophet of the age; all the Christians should acknowledge and believe in him. And in the same manner there should have been, in the book of Moses, a prediction of Jesus, and a further account of events which took place at his appearance. But this is not the case, except that the followers of Jesus seize, in figurative language, on whatever may suit their persuasion. Thus it happened that one of the Afgháns applied the words: "Say, there is " but one God," to himself.

He further said: "If I agree to their prophetic mission, whence was it shown that this people were prophets? for, if pursuant to their claim to prophetic office and legislation, we adopt what at every time is held out as legal, why are their fundamental articles of faith in contradiction to each other with respect to the knowledge of the self-existent Being? Thus, in the Pentateuch of the Jews, God has a body, and corporeity; and the Christians believe Jesus a son of God, and the Muhammedans according to the Koran believe God to be without an equal, and not to be described. If God be similar to what
he is represented in all these books, he is not unlike a man who does not know himself, and at each time gives an account of himself, which he varies, and of which he repents. If they say, the real sense is the same, the figurative expression and interpretation only change, it is not less evident, that the books and the prophets have been sent for the purpose of leading men to God, and not to instigate them to rebel; or, after having proclaimed his word, to combat each other by controversy. He commands the sacrifice of their blood and property for the common good. And if they say, the servants cannot disagree about the knowledge of God, why then is it written in the books that they must know him in that, and in no other way? and why do we perceive such a contradiction in the deeds, and frequently in the words, of the celebrated prophets? The intelligent man can no longer recognise them by their noble actions.

Somebody said to the Hakím Kámrán: "Give me in substance the belief of the Sunnites and the Shíáhs." He replied: "The creed of the Sunnites is, after the praise of God the most high, and the attributes of the prophet, blessing and mercy of God upon all transgressors and sinners, men, and women; and the creed of the Shíáhs is after the praise of God, and the attributes of the prophet, the curse of God upon all believers, men
"and women; and Muselmans, men and women."
And he had much to say about this subject.

Abu 'l Hassan Taherani, surnamed Isfahán, son of
Gháib báig, surnamed I'timád eddouláh, became a
follower of Kámrán, by the persuasion of the friends
of the latter, as the author of this book perceived in
a letter, written by Rafid 'l Káder to Hakím Kámrán,
in which the former declared himself the disciple of
Kámrán, whom he called his master, and addressed
in a suitable style. Thus was also Zemán Baig born
in Arghún, his father, a native of Kabul, was sur-
named Mahábet Khán, who, by his gravity, bravery,
and wisdom, acquired a high rank among the Omras
of the Indian Sultans. He was in a friendly con-
nection with Kámrán, and in the letters which the
mighty khan wrote to Hakím Kámrán, he showed
him great respect, and professed himself his dis-
ciple. It is said that, at a banquet, Mahábet Khan
declared the saying of the prophetic asylum—

"I was a prophet, and Adam in water and mud—"

to be without sense. Further, whoever acknow-
ledges the prophetic mission of Muhammed accounts
it to begin after the prophet's fortieth year, and who-
ever does not acknowledge it, is free in this opinion.
Muhammed said: "I was a prophet, and Adam in water
and mud." Kámrán went seldom into the houses
of this sect, and kept himself at a distance from
them. When, yielding to a thousand entreaties, he
visited them, he changed his usual dress, sat only a moment with them, and rose immediately; he never ate with them, nor accepted he any thing from one of this sect. When asked upon his keeping himself at a distance from them, he said: "The spirit of brutishness and savagery holds its mastership over you, and I cannot always associate with brutes and beasts of prey." He remained even a long time without seeing them. But Abd ul rasul frequented him, and, conformably to Kāmrān’s advice, detached himself from worldly desires, and crushed anger and lust in his mind. On that account Hakim Kāmrān, having conceived friendship for him, taught him first the rules of grammar and etymology, then the Sherah Shamsiyah, "Commentary upon Shamsiyah;" besides the physiological part of the Commentary upon Hedāyah al hikmet, "the Guide to Science," composed by Hossain, son of Māyīn ed-din Maibedi; further, matters relating to the Com-

1 Shamsiyah, "the sun’s course, elliptic," is the title of a treatise composed upon logic by Nagmeddin Ali Ben Omar al Kazvini, who was a disciple of Nusir-eddin al-Tusi. The said work is dedicated to Khogia Shams-eddin Muhammed, perhaps one of the twelve princes called Sarbedarian, who reigned thirty-five years in the town of Sebzvar, in Khorassan, and in other places which they had conquered.—(Herbelot.)

2 M filmed is a town of Persia, the native place of Kāzi Mir Hossain Ibn Māyīn ed-din, above-mentioned. He is one of the commentators of the work above quoted, which is divided into three parts, comprising logic, physiology, and theology, and was composed by the Shaikh Asir
mentary upon *Hikmet al 'din,* "the Science of what is "essential," and afterwards the Commentary upon *Ta'jrid,* "Divestment of what is accessory," with marginal notes; also the physiological part of the Commentary upon *Ishâret,* "Indications (allegorical, symbolic, and others);" and, finally, the *Ila'hiyat shafa,* "the Hymns of Recovery." Thus also, Mulla Yacub read with him the *Ta'hir,* "Writings" of Euclid, and a Commentary upon *Tazkerah,* "Commemoration;" and was attached to him. Likewise Mir Sherif, having read the *Mutawel,* "Development," and the *Ta'far,* "Explanation," of Baizavi, resolved to follow his school;


1 The author of *Hikmet al 'din* was Najem eddin Abu 'l Hassan Ali, son of Muhammed, surnamed Dabiran al Katebi al Kazvin'i. He was a disciple of the celebrated Nasir-eddin Tusi, and died in the year of the Hejira 675 (A. D. 1276).

2 There exists a work entitled *Isha'ret,* composed by *Asir-eddin Mifsazzel,* before-mentioned.

3 The *Tazkerah* was written by Nasir-eddin Tusi.

4 The *Mutawel* denotes a Commentary, the author of which is Sâad-eddin Tafatarani (or "Tagtarani," according to Herbelot), upon the work *Meftah al alâm,* "the Key of Sciences," and which is entitled *Tulkhis al Meftah,* "Explanation of the Key."

5 Baizavi is the surname of Nasir eddin Abu Said Abdalla Ben Omar, a native of the town Baizah, in the province of Fars, about forty-five miles distant from Shiraz. He was a *Kâ'zi,* "judge," of the last-named town, from which he passed to Tauris, where he died in the year of the
and what is more astonishing, Mulla Usám read with him the illustrations and demonstrations which are in the fundamentals of Hanifa's religious law, and adopted his faith. But Mulla Sultan, although he acknowledged his high rank of excellence, never adhered to him. And Hakím Kámrán said: "What is not understood, becomes a subject of dispute." Thus Mulla Sultán followed with intense application the study of the soul, and the chain of demonstrations relative to it, but he said: "I am not able to understand its nature, and am, in that respect, like a parrot." Among the able disciples of Hakím Kámrán was Hakím Meshed, who passed through all degrees of science before him, and possessed his entire confidence.¹ Hakím Kámrán was wont at that time, when he gave lessons of science, to wash his head, hands, and feet, to burn sweet perfumes, and to turn his face towards the sun, in which his disciples imitated him. He did not confer his instruction upon every body, but refused it to the depraved, the oppressors, and the voluptuous; nor did he hold intercourse with low persons.

Hejira 683 or 692 (A. D. 1286 or 1292). He composed a literal Commentary in two volumes upon the Koran.

¹ Here a play upon a name is omitted: جرن کامران به تجزیره Kámrán est: as Kámrán, in business, is Ka'mrán, "fortunate."
CHAPTER XII.
OF THE RELIGION OF THE SUIFIAHS,¹ CONTAINED IN
THREE SECTIONS.

SECTION I.—Some of their tenets.
SECTION II.—The open interpretation of their open confessions.
SECTION III.—Some individuals among them.

SECTION I.—OF SOME OF THEIR TENETS.

These sectaries, like other philosophers, always
were, and are, scattered among all nations of the

¹ Several derivations are given to the word Sufi; it may be here suffi-
cient to adduce the three most specious of them. Some derive the
name from the verb صفا, Sufa, "he was sincere, pure;" this derivation
is claimed by these sectaries themselves, who frequently call them-
themselves Asfî’d, "pure," as may be seen in Jami’s work, Tohfat
ol ebrar, "a present offered to the pious;" and in Guishenraz (work
quoted). To this etymology is objected, that a substantive derived from
the said verb should be صفی, صافی, and not صورفی. Others deduce it with
grammatical strictness from صورفی suf, "wool," and sufí signifies
therefore "wool-dressed." But the fact is, that not all wool-dressed per-
sons are Súfís, and not all Súfís are wool-dressed: a Súfí may wear a Dur-
vish’s patched coat, or satin, as it was said by a true Súfí. If, of the two
etymologies quoted, the first does not answer the grammatical construc-
tion, the second does not render the meaning to be expressed. The latter
appears to me so much more important, that I am disposed to pass over
an anomalous construction, which in other names is not without nu-
merous examples. Nor would I be averse to derive the word, with other
eytymologists, from the Greek σωφίς, "wise," or σωφίτης, "pure;" not-
withstanding the general use of representing in words of Greek deriva-
tion the sigma, σ, by a sin, س, and not by a sad, ص, if I did not
world, and are called in Persian vêzahederûn, "intervally pure," or rôuchen-dil, "enlightened minds," or Yêkâna-bîn, "seers of unity;" in the Hindu language, Rakhisher (Rakshasas) and Tapisher (Tapasis) Gyanisher and Gyâni (Jnânis), or Atma-jnânis. The lord Maulavi Jâmi, in his work entitled Resâlah-i-vajjudiah, "treatise upon existence," states, that the universal Being is distinct from any intellectual and exterior existence, inasmuch as every individual from among the intellectual and exterior beings belongs to some class of beings; but the universal Being is not subordinate to the condition of any thing; he is absolute and sovereign, and not general, not partial, not special, not common, and not one by (the number of) unity; for, it is neither a substance nor an accident, but by itself one, and not a multiple. These things however are necessary in

perceive a great difference between the doctrine of a Sofs and that of a Suîf, which latter bears most especially an Asiatic character, and the origin of which remounts to the kings Mahabad and Jemshid (Dasâtîr, Eng. Transl., pp. 23, 97). Our author says: "Sûfism is to be found among all nations." The first Muhammadan Sûfî is said to have been Abu Hashem, a native of Kufa, who died in the year of the Hejira 139 (A. D. 767).—(See Notices et Extraits des manuscrits de la bibliothèque du Roi et d'autres bibliothèques, vol. X. p. 290.) The origin of such a character among Muselmans, if not in name, yet in fact, may be traced further back to the first century of the Hejira.—(See note 2, p. 18.)

1 The more correct title of this work is Resalah il vujud.—(See Geschichte der Schönen Rede-Künste Persiens von Joseph von Hammer, S. 314).
the sovereign being, according to their degrees and stations,¹ but the real Being, under the condition of no substance whatever, is distinguished by the name *martibah-ahadiyat,* ² "degree of unity," and all names and attributes are (as it were) consumed by this degree, which the Yogis express by the title *hakikut al hakîyek,* ³ "reality of realities." But the real Being, under the condition of all things which are necessarily himself, according to generalities and specialities, is called by names and attributes of the divine degree, and this degree is entitled *Vahedet-i-mokam,* ⁴ "solitariness of station," and *jamah,* ⁵ "un-" on." The real Being, under no condition of "a "thing" *(shi)," and under no condition of "nothing" *(łâshi)," is called *huviyat,* ⁶ "essence, absolute being, "objectivity," and it is manifesting itself" in all exist-

¹ بحسب مراتب ومقامات
² مرتبت احديبت
³ حقيقيته الحقا يبقى
⁴ وحدت مقام
⁵ جميع
⁶ شيء
⁷ لشي
⁸ بزيت, a substantive formed from *هو, hu, "he is" *(Yahu Yehovah).
⁹ I interpret in this place the word *sâ`ir* in the sense which is given to it by the commentator of the Gulshen Raz, in a passage of that work which will be quoted hereafter.
ences, and under the condition of "a thing and no-
thing," is the form of the universe.¹

Some of the sagacious have stated that, in the
same manner as the sun is radiant, so the real Being
manifests himself at once; for in opposition to it is
ądem, "non-entity," and from the superabundance
of manifestation the tongue and language (in the
effort) to express and to describe, to define and to
explain, become dumb. The final explanation of
the two words, vojud, "existence," and ądem, "non-
entity" may be, that existence is the negation of
non-entity, and non-entity the negation of existence;
and the Lord of unity is the grand origin of the mul-
tiplicity of names and attributes. The first attrib-
ute, which emerged into manifestation by this Lord
from within, was intelligence; and in this degree all
adyān sabītah, "fixed realities,"² were under intellec-

¹ The above shš' and la'šš' is evidently the sad asat, "being, not
"being," of the Hindus, an attribute of the divinity, combined with its
unity. "For," says the author of Gulshen Raz (see German Transl.,
p. 17), "unity exists in non-existence as well as in existence; multipli-
"city proceeds but from relation; difference and variety of things pro-
ceed from the change of the possible: as the existence of both is but
"one, they furnish the proof that God is but one."

² एयन न आत्मन्त्र
Adyān signifies "substances": these are things
which maintain themselves by themselves; or realities, which occupy a
space by themselves, without their existence in space depending upon the
concomitant existence of another thing. This is the contrary of acci-
dents, the existence of which depends upon the concomitant existence of
the substance which serves to support them, or which is the place by
which they are supported. Adyān sabītah, that is, "fixed substances,"
tual forms, and in this degree the Sūfis give to the true highest and absolute Being the name of "All-Wise." The impulsion of divine wisdom to procure to his fixed ideals the superiority over non-entity is by them entitled irādet, "providence," and the name of murid, "he who wills," attached to God. As often as the divine knowledge becomes joined to accomplishment and victory, as having are realities of things inclosed in the science of God, that is to say, the figures of realities of divine names in the scientific presence. They are posterior to God only as to essence, and not as to time; for they are eternal, as much on the side of the past as on the side of the future. When it is said, that God produces them by emanation, the posteriority which is thereby expressed, refers but to essence, and is not true in any other sense. (See Jorjani’s Definitions in Ext. et Not. des MSS., vol. X. p. 63.) We may, in a language more familiar to us perhaps, express them by "eternal ideals," or "prototypes of realities." Silvestre de Sacy adds to Jorjani’s explanation, that the question is here about divine names, that is, attributes of God as emanating from his essence, and residing in him, but not yet produced externally by any action. The scientific presence mentioned in this explanation appears, to him, to signify the divine majesty, inasmuch as manifesting its presence to beings which have no other existence but in the science of God.

1 Ⅳ، "inclination, design, will," According to Jorjani’s Definitions (see Ext. et Not. des MSS., vol. X. p. 37), irādet is a quality which produces in a living being a state, the effect of which is that he acts in one manner rather than in another. In its exact sense, it is a faculty which has no other object in view but that which does not exist; for "the will" is an attribute, the special object of which is to give existence to any thing, and to produce it conformably with the words of the Koran: "When he wills a thing he says to it: "Be," and it is." Irādet is also interpreted an inclination to any thing which follows the opinion of utility, and in this sense I have translated it above "providence."
given to the existence of knowledge the superiority over contingencies, in this degree they call this victory kadaret, " might;" and in this degree originated the name of Kadir, "Almighty." With respect to the seeing of God, as the meaning of knowledge is his presence in face of the existing external figures of contingencies, in this degree, the name of Bāsir, "the All-Seeing," offered itself. Likewise, the meditation upon God, by those who praying, recite his emblematic attributes, is the time of propitiating; and the granting of these prayers is called samīd, "hearing:" whence proceeded the name samā, "hearer." Further, the will of God, the Highest, becoming concentrated in this state, having joined the letter kaf (k) to the letter min (n), so as to manifest by action kun faikun, 1 "Be, and it "is:" this state they called kalām, "the word," and the name of mutkalem, "speaker," was produced on this account.

The lord Shaikh Muhammed Shosteri, 2 in his treatise Hak al yakin, 3 "the truth of conviction," has

1 I think it ought to be Shabisteri instead of Shosteri, as I find in Baron von Hammer's Gulshan-raz (pp. 27-32) a treatise entitled Hak ol yakin, as above, attributed to the before quoted Mahmud Shebisteri (vol. 1. p. 82), of whom more hereafter. The whole title of the above-mentioned work is Hak ol yakin fi maarifet-i-rebbil dalemin, "the truth of "conviction in the knowledge of the Lord of the world."

2 The word yakin signifies "an intuitive certainty," produced by energy of faith, and not by arguments and proofs.
stated, that the action of choice prevails with the
self-existent Being over necessity, because choice is
presupposed in the nature of might, and provident
choice, as well as vicissitudes and excitement, are
parts suitable to a purpose, and providence came to
succour every one of the necessitous crowd, by pro-
creating remedies against the evils without number
which are determined by necessity, in opposition to
that necessity whence pure procreation proceeds.
When the free agent is straightened in his choice,
then choice assumes the nature of necessity. Thus Ibn
Mā'yīn eddin Maibedī relates, in his Fāvātah, "Prole-
gomena," that the Sūfis say: The wished for, but nev-
er-found Being proceeds from the field of pure non-
entity, and the bare negation puts no foot into the
station of evidence and habitation of bodily existence,
in the same manner as the wished-for but never-found
Being never assumes the color of bodily existence;
certainly, the real Being also does not take the color
of non-entity. The substance of any thing cannot
be caused to vanish into non-existence; thus, if thou
consumest a stick in the fire, its substance is not
annihilated although its form changes, and becomes
manifest in the form of ashes. The self-existent
Being is an essence which is stable in all conditions,
and in the accidents of existence, in the forms and

1 See page 217, note 2.
states which undergo changes, the divine procrea-
tion of the world is the manifested light of his abso-
lute reality, under the shape of divers combinations
which thou beholdest.

"Certainly God made the heaven and earth to shine."

In the book of the sagacious is found that the
beautiful of this world enjoys the advantage of his
beauty, when he beholds and considers its reflexion
in a looking-glass; on that account, the absolute
Being, having been revealed in the mirror of exist-
ences and appropriate places, and having seen his
beauty in various mirrors, and in every one of them
being exhibited under a shape worthy of himself,
become manifest in a series of multitudinous appear-
ances.

The Súfis further say: God is pure, conformable
to his essence, above all purity and comparison, and
in the gradations of names and attributes praised
in both ways. Whoever dispenses with the com-
parison of something which has no equal; does not
know that, declaring God to be without an equal, is
comparing him with pure beings. The friends of
God say that his name is of three kinds, viz.: he is
itlák, "absolute," by his essence, or considered as an
unsubstantial (abstract) thing; and they give him

1 The original text has here باعتبار امر معمدي. Itibar has in the Dictionary, among other significations, that of "rea-
the name of zāt, "essence," like that of kadus, "pure, holy;" that is, considered as a substance, he is the Being the meaning of which is not dependent upon the meaning of another; they call him sifet, "excelling in attributes," and hāl, "living;" that is, considered as a substance, he is a Being whose meaning is dependent upon that of another. They name him fāl, "action," like khālik, "Creator," which is the general name of God, as well as

soning or computing by comparison; considering with attention; calculating properly," which appears to me the only meaning applicable in this place; ba itibar may perhaps here be better interpreted by "in the acceptance (assumption) of." This word occurs twice with āmūr, amur (the plural of āmr), in the following important passage of Gulshen raz:

Baron von Hammer interprets amū'ri itibarī by "Gegenstande der Erscheinung," that is "objects of appearance;" I dare differ somewhat in the expression, but not in the meaning of these words: "Existence manifests itself (see p. 222, note 9) in its own place; things perceived by senses are mere objects of acceptance; things of acceptance are not real. There are many numbers, but one only is numbered (that is, numbers are only one unit, repeatedly employed). The world has no existence but as a metaphoric image: its state is entirely a farce and a play."
rahmen, "mercy;" but the great name is at last khafa, "the concealed (mysterious)." A person asked the lord Shaikh Bayezid Bastami: "Which is the great name of God?" The Shaikh answered: "Communicate thou to me his least name, that I may give thee in return his greatest:" that is to say, the names of God are all great.

The sagacious say: Every era is the epoch of the fame and dominion of a name, and when this epoch expires, it becomes concealed under the name which it had at the epoch of its flourishing state.  

1 Bastam is a town of Khorasan, the native place of Abu Yezid Taifer ben Issa, one of the most celebrated Sufis of Persia. He had inherited the flocks of another mystical personage, called Habib Ajemi. Bastami attained the supreme degree of spirituality—perfect union with God. He occasionally branched out into all the enthusiasm imaginable, saying that God was with him and near him, nay in the sleeve of his garment; and then again he came at times into the regular order of piety and devotion, hoping that God would forgive him his sins, and let his latter end be that of the righteous. It is said of him (see the third Majalis, "conference," of Sadi) that, having once called out to God for union with the supreme Being, he heard the voice from above: "Abu Yezid, thy thou is still with thee; if thou wilt come to me, abandon thyself and come." He died in the year of the Hejira 261 (A. D. 874).—(See Transact. of the Lit. Soc. of Bombay, vol. I. p. 100; Malcolm's Hist. of Persia, p. 395; Pend nameh, edit. and transl. by Silvestre de Sacy, p. 231.)

2 Silvestre de Sacy, in the translation of a part of the Definitions of Jorjani, gives the following note as translated from the Persian (see Notices et Extraits des MSS., vol. X. p. 67): "The Sufis declare that every time the turn of the manifestation of a name (divine); when the turn of this name is terminated, it conceals itself under another name, for which the turn of denomination is arrived. The periods of the seven
They say, the names of the Deity contain the distinct forms in the divine science, and these are called *adyan sabitah* "fixed substances," whether general or partial, and these intellectual forms received existence in eternity without beginning, by *fayz*, "emanation," from the essence of God endowed with most holy emanation. Further, the intellectual forms rise into evidence with all dependencies and necessary consequences of the most holy emanation. The fixed substances have a relation to the names "planets, each of one thousand years, are attached to it; and the words of the Koran, speaking of God: "Every day he is in action, indicate it; because one day of thy Lord is equivalent to one thousand years of yours. Verse. O thou whose light manifests itself in the vest of the world, thy names are manifested in the nature of man; thy science shows itself by the science of (Muhammad) the seal (of prophets); thy bounty is manifested by the bounty of khatem (the seal). The divine names are distinct forms, which are called *adyan sabitah*, "fixed realities."—Extracted from the Divan of Ali.

1 The word in the text is "ازل", *azīl*, which means duration of existence during a series of *finite* times, and *infinite* on the side of the past, as "ابد", *abīd*, signifies duration of existence during a series of *finite* times, and *infinite* on the side of the future. (See Definitions of Jorjiāni, in *Nat. et Ext. des MSS.*, vol. X. p. 39.)

2 *فیض* is translated by Silvestre de Sacy "emanation;" and *فضْلُ الْقَدْس* *fayz al kudis*, by "émanation très sainte" (see *Ibid.*, p. 66). In common acceptation, *fayz* signifies "plenty, abundance, bounty, grace;" *fayz al akdes* means also "communication of divine grace made to angels, prophets, and other superior intelligences without the intercession of the Holy Ghost."
of bodies, and to the external substances of spirits, and between all beings there arises an interposition dependent on the degree of excellence which it has with respect to God. All the reality of accidental beings lies in the external existence; the reality of individuals is dependent upon fixed times, and every one emerges into existence at his time.  

The Súfis maintain that all attributes of perfection are necessarily inherent in the supreme holy essence; that is, are fixed by the purity of his essence. What in the accidental substance is fixed by properties, for instance, thy substance, is not sufficient for the revelation of thyself; as long as the attribute of God's essence, which is the principle of that revelation, has not taken firm hold of thee, this revelation

١ ایوان خارجیه، adyan kharj'ah. The scholastics have distinguished fixed and external substances; the Súfis distinguish substances in and without God.

The word وقت, waktu, "time," has a technical signification.—According to Jorjáni, it means: "Your state, that is, that which is required by your actual disposition, and is not produced by design." Shehab eddin Omar Sohaawardi (who died A. D. 1234) says: "Time is what dominates man; man is not dominated by any thing more than by his time; for time is like a sword, it executes its decrees and cuts. By time is therefore meant what comes forcibly upon a man without being the fruit of his action; so that, subject to its power, he is constrained to conform to it. It is said: 'Such a one is under the dominion of time,' that is, he is retired from things which are his own, and transported to things which belong to God."
cannot be obtained. On the contrary, God, the most High, stands not in need of that revelation of things, on account of the purity which is inherent in him; but his essence is the principle of that revelation; that is, his essence and attributes are one. On this account, the Amir of the believers, Ali, said:

"The perfection of the belief in the unity of God consists in the negation of attributes."

The lord Shaikh Daudi Kaiseri says in the Sherah-fes us, "Commentary upon the bezels:" 1 the knowledge of God the most High, in his essence, is the identity of the essence, and the knowledge of this world is that of the forms of things in it, whether generally or partially; and if one essence is said to be the receptacle of manifold things, this acceptance is not to be feared, as the things are identical with God according to the acceptance of "existence," and in truth are different only according to the acceptance of being either involved or manifested. Further, in reality, there is neither state nor place, but there is one object exhibited under forms of decoration and portraiture by external appearances. Kasā, "God's

1 *Fes'us' ol hikem,* "the bezels of philosophemes," is one of the most celebrated works composed by Mohi eddin Ibn Arabi, upon whom see a subsequent note. This work was commented, not only by the above-mentioned Dauid Kaiseri (of Casarea), but also by Anif-eddin Telmesani, and others. — See Baron von Hammer's *Geschichte des Osm. Reiches,* II ter Band, Seite 637.)
"universal judgment or decree (predestination)" is
the summary decision of the conditions of existence,
as the decision for the death of all mankind; and
Kadr¹ is "the interpretation of that decision by
"determined means, and in consequence of results
"conformable to the faculties;" for instance, the
decision of the death of Záid, on such a day, by
such a malady. Kas a, "predestination," is the
eternal knowledge concerning existences, and this
knowledge is dependent on the áyán sábitah, "fixed
"substances." Each thing demands, by disposi-
tion,² a peculiar emanation of God.

The Súfis say, according to the sacred text:

"God created man according to his image."

We have the power of acting on account of our
being the mirror of the supreme essence; if we say:
"The action is ours," it may be right; and if we say;
"It is of God," it is equally true. The master of
the rose-bower says:

"Masnavi. Recognise the mark of God in every place,
"Never place the foot without its own limit.
"Whoever has a faith other than that of Jahr³

¹ Upon Kas a and Kadr see vol. II. pp. 362–363, note 1.
² إستعداد, "disposition," that is, when a thing possesses
the near or remote quality for action.—(Jorján's Definitions.)
³ The name of Jibr is common to several doctors of Muselmanism.
The most ancient of them is Abu Abd-állah Jibr Ben Abd allah, al
Ansari, a native of Medina, as it is indicated by his surname. Jibr,
*Is, according to the word of the prophet, to be accounted a Guéber.

"In like manner as that Guéber said: 'Yezdán, Aherman,'

"So was it as if that ignorant blockhead had said: 'He and me;'

"The actions have but a metaphorical connection with us,

"A connection with him in reality is a ludicrous play.

"How came it, O man without intelligence, that, from eternity,

"This man should be Muhammed, and the other Abú Jehel?"

It is written in the glorious Koran:

"If any thing good happens to them, they say: 'It comes from God;'

"and if any thing bad, they say: 'It comes from me;' say: 'Every

" thing comes from God.'"

The Súfís say that the whole heaven is a body, the first intelligence its soul, the breath of the whole his heart, and the spirits of the seven planets, of the fixed stars and the rest, are his power.

"Your creation and your resurrection are as those of one man."

The Shaikh Mohi eddin ¹ says in his Fas ḫawdū, according to Mirkhond, first a pagan, after having examined the sacred books of all other nations, Jews and Christians, was vanquished by Muhammed's eloquence, and adopted his faith.

Another Jahr is Abu Mussa Jabr Ben Has̤'an al Sṳf̤, author of the book Kitab al Jafr, and of many other, some say five hundred, works upon the philosopher's stone. He lived in the middle of the third century of the Hejira (about A. D. 864).

A third Jahr, an Andalusian, is surnamed Shems-eddin.

¹ Mohi-eddin, "he who makes religion revive and flourish," is a surname borne by several Muselman doctors. The above-mentioned is Mohi-eddin Ibn al Arabí, born in Kordua, in Spain, of an Arabian family, called Taysî, in the year of the Hejira 360 (A. D. 1164). He studied in the academy of Seville, and then visited Asia Minor, Syria, and Egypt, where he heard the most distinguished Shaikhs of his time. He became the founder of a mystic school from which, among other remarkable disciples, the great Maulana Jalal-eddin Rums issued; he is called "the
"chapter of repentance." The world is the image of God, and he the soul and governor of the universe, further he is the great mankind. The lord Maulavi Jâmi, in the Nakl-al fas'us, "the ready money of bezels," states, that there are two divisions of the beings of the universe: the first consists of those who on no account have any sort of connection with the bodily world, in conformity to office and direction; these, called Cherubim, are divided into two classes: the one take not the least notice of the world and its inhabitants, and are named "the great Angels;" the other, although not connected with the bodily world, are yet entranced in astonishment as witnesses and valuers of God's power, standing at the curtain of the divine court, and being the ministers of the supreme bounty; before them is an angel enti-

"Pole of the mystic world." He died in the year of the Hejira 638 (A. D. 1240), in his seventy-sixth year, and was buried at the foot of mount Cassius, near Damascus, where his sepulchral monument is still well preserved. He left thirty-three works, which are enumerated by Baron von Hammer, the illustrious historian of the Ottoman empire.—(See vol. II. pp. 490. 637 of the German work.)

The Muselmans in India revere, under the name of Mohi-eddin, a saint, son of Zangui and Bibi Fatima, called also Shaikh Saddo. He lived at Sambhal, in Rohilkunt, according to others, at Amroha, in the province of Delhi, where his tomb still exists. There the devotees assemble every year, on the 11th day of the 2nd Rabia (the 4th month of the Arabian year) and celebrate the saint's memory, by particular fatihas, "prayers," addressed to him, and other acts of devotion.—(See Mémoire sur les particularités de la Relig. Muselm. dans l'Inde, par M. Garcin de Tassy, pp. 46-54.)
tled "the great spirit," greater than whom no angel exists. According to another interpretation he is said to be "the highest secretary and first intelligence." This great spirit (the blessing of God be upon him!) holds the first rank of this class. The spirit, who is called Jabril, follows after him in this legion.

"The rank which he possesses is a place known."

Another division is composed of those who have connection with the bodily world according to order and office; these are named "spirits," also divided into two classes: the one are spirits who perform their office in the heavens, and these are entitled "the high angels;" the other class are those who perform their office upon earth, and these bear the name of "lower angels." Many thousands of them are appointed to the human race, and many thousands to minerals, to plants, and the animal kingdom. The people of the revelation (prophets) say: "There, where seven angels are not assembled, not a leaf can germinate from a branch;" the seven angels are meant to be seven divine powers. Thus, the spirits of fire, who are called Jin and Siatin, "genii and demons," belong to the kind of lower angels, and Iblis is their chief and ruler. The lord Shaikh Mahmúd Shósterí says, that Iblis is the power of imagination, which the learned call "the material." The Súfis give it the name of "the founda-
"tion of material substance," or Enka. According to the Súfis, matter is maddam, "not eternally existent." They call the absolute body the universal body." The Súfis say, as is found in the Fawálah, that the spirit of mankind is the absolute spirit of the divinity; thus the spirit of mankind, for the sake of elocution— that is, excellence—expresses itself by sound; and sound, for the sake of elocution, by various distinct modulations, which in utterance are made sensible, becomes a word, and by the combination of words a language acquires reality. The Shaikh Muhammed Láháji says, in his Commentary on Gulshen raz, "the Mystery of the Rose bower," that the meaning of the expression "the divine spirit," is "the revelation of truth in the circus of multiplicity," and in the Sharh mahtas er, "abridged Commentary (epitome)" on Gulshen, is found that, in like manner as the spirit of mankind becomes sound, and sound a word, so also the divine

---

1 See hereafter an explanatory note upon Enka.
2 See page 141, note 3.
3 A work already quoted (vol. I. p. 82) composed by Mahmud Shebisteri. His native place was Shebister, distant eight parasangs (about twenty-eight miles) from Tabriz, near which place he was buried in A.D. 1329. He wrote the Gulshen-raz three years before his death, as an answer to fifteen questions addressed to him by the great Shaikh Husse-in, of Khorassan, who died A. D. 1318, one year after the composition of the just-mentioned most celebrated didactical work upon the doctrine of the Súfis.
spirit becomes *jaucher*, "substance," and substances become spirits and forms; thus human nature is determined in a manner that its hidden conditions proceed from the interior to manifestation.

The presence of the universal deity, which is expansive in the divine spirit and soul), is fivefold. The first is *hazeret ghaib mut'laq*, "the presence of the absolute mystery," and this is one with the *adyan sabatah*, "the invariable prototypes (realities of things)." The second is the *hazeret ghaib musaf*, "the presence of the relative mystery," which is nearest the absolute mystery, and this belongs to pure intellects and spirits. The third is the *hazeret musaf ghaib*, "the presence of the mysterious relation," which is nearest the absolute evidence; this is the world of similitude, or dream. The fourth is the *hazeret shahadet mut'laq*, "the presence of the absolute evidence," which reaches from the centre of the earth to the middle of the ninth empyrean

1 حضرت عيب مطان.
2 حضرت مطان عيب.
3 حضرت شهاديت مطانه.

*Shaha'det*, interpreted in common acceptance by "testimony, attestation, witnessing, confession, evidence," is translated by Silvestre de Sacy, in a note of Jorjani (see a subsequent note), by "assistance." It takes in the terminology of Sufis, a meaning varying according to the particular opinion of their sects; thus it coincides sometimes with "presence," whether with the qualifications of attentive expectation, whether with that of perfect intuition.
heaven. The fifth is the hazerát jāmāh, "the presence of the vest," and this is the universe in an extensive, and mankind in a restricted, acceptation.2

The Sufis besides say: The world is life and intellect, as far as the mineral kingdom; but the manifestation of intellect in every body is determined by the temperature of the human constitution. Sometimes bounty attains an excellence which is uttered with ecstasy, and becomes a modulation more powerful than that which strikes the ear; and this is the

2 This is a very abstruse doctrine. To throw more light upon it, I shall subjoin the explanation given by Jorjani upon this subject, according to the French translation of Silvestre de Sacy (see Not. et Ext. des MSS., vol. X. p. 66): "The five divine presences are: 1. the presence of the absolute absence (or mystery); its world is the world of the fixed substances in the scientific presence (see pp. 223, 224, note 2). To the presence of the absolute mystery is opposed: — 2. the presence of the absolute assistance; its world is that named Aalem al mulk (that is, the world of the throne or seat of God, of the four elemental natures); 3. the presence of the relative absence; this is divided into two parts: the one, 3. nearer the presence of the absolute mystery; the world of which is that of spirits, which belong to what is called jabrut and malikut; that is, of intelligences and of bare souls; the other: 4. nearer the presence of the absolute assistance; and the world of which is that of models (images), called Aalem al malikut; 5. the presence which comprises the four preceding ones; and its world is the world of mankind, a world which reunites all the worlds, and all they contain." This statement differs somewhat from that of our text; to exhibit and to develop, in all their variations, the systems of Sufism is far beyond the compass of these notes, and would require a separate work.
mode of the prophet (blessing upon him!). Thus is it commonly related that Jabriil brought to the blessed prophet the happy news, that his poor followers will enter heaven five hundred years sooner than the rich. The prophet, full of joy, said: "Can "none of you recite a verse?" A person proffered these distichs:

"The serpent of desire bit my heart:
"There is, to cure me, neither doctor nor magician,
"If not the friend whom I adore:
"He alone possesses the theriac and the amulet suitable to my cure."

Upon this the lord prophet, with his companions, moved about in ecstasy, with such a violence that the cloak fell from his shoulder.1

Further, the sagacious say that the forms of the sensible world are shades of seeming forms. The Sufis also maintain that a spirit cannot exist without a body; 2 when it breaks forth from a body, it obtains, according to its deeds and actions, an apparent body, which they call acquired.

1 Such a tradition existing, we cannot wonder that, from early time to our days, among the religious practices of Dervishes, Sufis, and monastic congregations, there are different kinds of dances, accompanied by song, with or without instrumental music.

2 The celebrated Leibnitz entertained a similar opinion; in consequence of his great principle of "the sufficient reason," he was persuaded that all souls, after death, remain united to an organic whole: "Because," says he, in his Théodicée (§ 90), "there is no appearance, that there be, in the order of nature, souls entirely separate from any sort of body."—(See on this subject La Palingénésie philosophique, par C. Bonnet, tome II. p. 24 et seq.)
SECTION II.—OF THE PROPHETIC OFFICE; AND EXPLANATION OF THE PUBLIC DECLARATIONS CONFORMABLE TO THE REVELATION OF INSPIRED PERSONS.

The Sūfis say: The prophet is a person who is sent to the people as their guide to the perfection which is fixed for them in the scientific presence (of God) according to the exigency of the dispositions determined by the fixed substances, whether it be the perfection of faith, or another. The Shaikh Hamîd eddin Nagîrî¹ states, in his Shahr-i-ashk, "Commen-
tary upon Love," that Abûdîyet, "devotion,"?

¹ In Herbelot's Bibl. Orient. we find Hamîd eddin, a celebrated doc-
tor, surnamed al Dharrîr, "the Blind," disciple of Kerdorî, and master
of Nassaft the Younger. The latter died in the year of the Hejira 710
(A. D. 1310). Baron von Hammer, in the catalogue of the literature of
the Sûfîs, annexed to his Gulshen raz (p. 32), mentions an Ishk-namah
"Book of Love," composed by Ferishte-o-ghli.

² غذیت means also "servitude, submission, pious fervour;" it is
reckoned one of the most essential qualities of a saint in general. An
عبد, abîd, is a person continually occupied with religious practices,
and all sorts of supererogatory pious acts, with the view of obtaining
future beatitude. It may be asked, how can devotion, as said above, be
an attribute of God? The answer is that, according to Sûfîsm, God is
every thing which appears praise-worthy to man, who can never forsake
his own nature. Thus says Sâdi in his fifth Sermon: "A hundred
thousand souls, alas! are the devoted slaves of the shoe-dust of that
Durvish (God)." He who prays from the inmost of his soul, grants his
prayers to himself; he no more prays, but is the God who, at the same time,
offers and accepts prayers.—(See Sufismus, by F. A. D. Tholuck, p. 153.)

V. III.
and rubūbiyat, "divinity," are both attributes of God; as often as the manifestation of divinity came to seize the lord of the prophetic asylum (Muhammed), and the quality of devotion became effaced in him, in this transitory state, whatever he proffered was the word of God. The Māulāvī Mānavi says:

"As the Koran came from the lips of the prophet,
"Whoever asserts, he said not the truth is a Kafr (infidel)."

And when he arrived at the quality of divinity, what he then uttered, this is called by them hadīs, "sacred saying;" further, what he said with the

1 روبیت signifies a participation in the nature and excellence of God, attainable by a mortal. There is a school of Sūfis, called Alhulīyat, who think that deity may descend and penetrate into a mortal's mind. Muhammed is supposed to have possessed this eminent quality of a Sūfī.

2 Two technical words occur (among many others) of the Sūfis حال, and مکام, which require a particular explanation. Ha'il signifies a feeling of joy or of affliction—of compression or dilatation—or of any other condition, which takes hold of the heart without any effort being made to produce or to provoke it, and which ceases when the soul reverts to the consideration of its own qualities. It is so called whether the same state be repeated or not. I generally render it by "state," above by "transitory state." If it persists and is changed into an habitual faculty, it is then called maka'īm; I render it by "station." The hāls are pure gifts of God; the maku'ms are fruits of labor. The first proceed from God's pure bounty; the second are obtained by dint of efforts. Both words may sometimes be rendered by extasy, or ecstatic, supernatural condition, in which the soul loses sight of itself to see God only, and which ceases, as soon as its looks are directed towards itself.

tongue of divinity, was a *hadis*. The meaning of the words "from Jabrill" is this, that between these two qualities (devotion and divinity), is a mind which in the manifestation of divinity is giving information from divinity, but in the quality of divinity there is nothing intervening between itself:¹ hence it is said:

"In love there is no message intervening:
"It was itself which acted as its own messenger."

The sagacious Sufis say, that what causes the revelation of the original Being in the gradations of divinity and in the wisdom of a book, and his appearance in whatever form, is the manifestation of his perfection, and this is of two kinds and in a twofold degree. The first degree is manifestation and exhibition in such a manner that whatever exists may prove complete, and this can take place only in the completeness of form; it is man who, according to the terminology of this sect, is indicated by it, that is, *essentiality*, which is the union of universalities and particularities: it is said accordingly:

"There is nothing moist—there is nothing dry, that be not in the manifest book (the Koran)." That is: Every thing is contained in the Koran.

Without him (God) there is no strength; it is by

¹ If I understand at all this obscure passage, it means: "there is an immediate connection, without any intervention, between the Deity and man."
him that every thing enters into the area of form and evidence.

" Without thee is nothing in the world;
" Ask from thyself, if thou desirest to know what thou art."

(ARABIC SENTENCE.)

" Every thing has an advantage, which, at the junction of its parts, has been placed in it."

The second degree is in the perfection of the existence of forth-bringing and exhibiting; so that every thing which exists, as it exists, is made to appear complete.

The seal, or "the last prophet," in the terminology of this sect, is a person, to whom this office can be appropriated, and from whom the great business may proceed; but, in forthcoming it is not allowed to him to be, in form, all-sufficient in dignity, and in showing this form in the world; this is not confined to a single person; but if this excellence is manifested around, it is acknowledged as the seal of dignity in this age. When this condition is established, then, by the before-said interpretation, the moon is said to be the symbol realised in this form, because, in the style of eloquence, it is generally usual to interpret the form of perfection by that of the moon, and "to divide the moon," means in figurative language to elicit thoroughly the sense

1 Suret signifies the sensible form of a thing; the figure with which it is invested.
from this form, without taking into consideration the instruments of imitation and the arrangement of artful contrivances. Thus was it with regard to the promised lord of the prophetic asylum. The lord Imâm Muhammed nürbakhsh,¹ "the light-
"bestower," in his treatise upon the ascent to heaven, stated: "Know that the lord Muhammed, the Selected (peace be with him!) ascended to heaven with a body, but this body was light, like that assumed in a dream, with which he went into a state of trance, which is an intermediate state² between sleeping and waking, and on that account it is said in the first tradition of the ascent:

"I was between sleeping and waking."

And further:

"God directed thee in the explanation of things revealed to the prophets and saints, upon whom be peace!"

That his being carried from the mosque of Mecca to the mosque of Jerusalem, is an image of the migra-

¹ Mir Said Muhammed Nurbaksh was the assumed name of Shams-oddin, a descendant from a Guebre family of Irâk. He fixed himself in Kachmir, where he became the founder of a sect which acknowledged him as a prophet and a Mahdi; and took from him the name of Nur-bakshian.— (See Journal des Savants, avril 1840; article de M. Mohl sur l'Histoire de Ferishta.)

² The word here used by the author is بزرخ, "interval of time, according to the Koran (chap. XXIII) between the death of a man and the resurrection, before which the souls of the departed receive neither reward nor punishment."
tion of the terrestrial angels from one place to another. To keep the Imámate (or presidence) during worship is to the prophet an image, that in his religion there are many heirs of the prophet, who are the saints and learned men of the age.

Boráq, the vehicle of devotion, is like an image of prayer; the saddle and bridle represent the ready mind and the perfect union of religion. The members of Boráq, of precious jewels, typify purity, candor, affection, submission, humility, and perfect love of God, rejecting all other desire except that tending towards the supreme Being in prayer. The restiveness of Boráq, and the aid given by Jabrîl in mounting Boráq present a similitude of the reluctance of the human mind to the wisdom of its knowledge of God, and Jabrîl figures the science of divinity.

The travelling by steps up to heaven, means the gradual elevation by steps, which are remembrance, rosary-beads, praising and magnifying by exclamation, God and the like, by which the heart arrives from this nether world of sensuality to the upper world.

By the first heaven, which is that of the moon, is understood the arrival at the station of cordiality. The opening of the heavenly door by an angel, and the appearance of Jabrîl, is figuratively the victory of the heart-over remembrance, as will be explained
in the sequel. The arriving at the heaven of Alá-red, "Mercury," is the image of elevation on the regions of cordiality on account of meditation on the knowledge of God, as —

"One hour's meditation is preferable to seventy years of exterior worship."

The arrival at the heaven of Zaherah, "Venus," signifies elevation of the upper angels, on account of the delight and beatitude which are produced in the interior by the love of God. The arrival at the heaven of the sun is to be interpreted as the elevation in the inner sense, on account of accomplishing the precepts of the faith, and the promulgated orders, which are derived from it. The arrival at the heaven of Merikh, "Mars," denotes the elevation which may have taken place in consequence of the war made upon the spirit of fraud. The arrival at the heaven of Mishterí, "Jupiter," offers an image of the elevation on account of purity, piety, and abstinence from anything doubtful, which are manifested by these steps. The arrival at the heaven of Zehel, "Saturn," is to be understood as the elevation from the state of spirituality to that of mystery by the blessing of exertion and sanctity, by choice or by force, which means overcoming a difficulty.

The arrival at Falek sábetah, "the heaven of the fixed stars," is an image of the elevation by the blessing of firmness in the faith, and evident proof
of diligent permanency in good practices, and fidelity in the love of God and of the people of God. The arrival at Falek atlas, "the crystalline sphere," is to be interpreted as the elevation to the utmost boundary of the angels by the blessing of interior purity, and a heart free from all desire except that after God.

The remaining behind of Borák, the arch, and Jabriil, in each station indicate the meaning, that in the worlds of the upper spirits, and the empyreal heaven, there are certain extents of spiritual faculties, and limits of imagination, so that no body can deviate from the station of comprehension, and

"The place of his acquisition is a place known."

The explanation of this is, that, as the elemental body cannot deviate from the elemental world, and the soul, however composed it may be, cannot make a step out of the nether dominion, as well as the heart cannot leave the outer skirts of the upper angelic courts, so that the mystery never comes forth from the middle of the upper dominion, and the spirit cannot make a step out of the extreme ends of the upper regions into the dâlem-i-jabrût, "the highest empyreal heaven," and the hidden cannot transgress the empyreal world. Hence proceeds the sense of qhaib al qhaiqûb, "evanescence of evanescences," the mysterious hidden.
The *Enka*, upon the mount *Kaf,* is divinity, and there is annihilation into God. He does not allow

We have already mentioned (vol. i. p. 35. note 1) the *Enka*, or *Simurgh,* " thirty birds," as an object of fabulous romance. At one time this mysterious bird was counsellor of the Jins (génii), and for the last time was visible at the court of Solomon, the son of David, after which he retired to the mount *Kaf,* which encircles the earth. According to a tradition of Muhammad, God created, in the time of Moses, a female bird, called *Enka,* having wings on each side and the face of a man. God gave it a portion of every thing, and then created a male of the same species. They propagated after the death of Moses, feeding on ferocious beasts and carrying away children, until the intervening time between Jesus and Muhammad, when, at the prayer of Khaled, this race was extinguished. Proverbially, the *Enka* is mentioned as a thing of which every body speaks without having ever seen it.

But a much greater import is attached to this name in the doctrine of the Sufis: with them this bird is nothing less than the emblem of the supreme Being, to be sought with the utmost effort and perseverance through innumerable difficulties which obstruct the road to his mysterious seat. This idea was ingeniously allegorized in the famous poem entitled *Mantek al tair,* " the colloquy of the birds," composed by *Ferid-ded-din Attar,* a Persian poet, who was born in Kerken, a village near Nishapur, in the year of the Hejira 513 (A. D. 1119), and lived 110, 112, or 113 years, having died in A. H. 627, 629, or 632 (A. D. 1229, 1231, or 1234). In this composition, the birds, emblems of souls, assemble under the conduct of a hoop (*upopo*), their king, in order to be presented to Simurgh. To attain his residence, seven valleys are to be traversed; these are: 1. the valley of research; 2. that of love; 3. that of knowledge; 4. of sufficiency (competence); 5. of unity; 6. of stupefaction; and 7. that of poverty and annihilation, beyond which nobody can proceed; every one finds himself attracted without being able to advance. These are evidently as many gradations of contemplative life, and austere virtue, each of which is described in glowing terms, for which scarce an equivalent is to be found in European languages. The birds, having attained the residence of Simurgh, were at first ordered back by the usher of the royal court, but, as they persevered in their desire, the violence of
plurality nor partnership of eternal beauty and strength, and from that exalted station there is no
descent. When a bird or man is annihilated, a
name is always without a designate object. Vás el,
"the perfect master of union," finds in this sta-
their grief met with pity. Admitted to the presence of Simurgh, they
heard the register of their faults committed towards him read to them,
and, sunk in confusion, were annihilated. But this annihilation purified
them from all terrestrial elements; they received a new life from the
light of majesty; in a new sort of stupefaction, all they had committed
during former existence was cancelled, and disappeared from their hearts;
the sun of approximation consumed, but a ray of this light revived them.
Then they perceived the face of Simurgh: "When they threw a clandes-
tine look upon him, they saw thirty birds in him, and when they
'turned their eyes to themselves, the thirty birds appeared one Simurgh:
"they saw in themselves the entire Simurgh; they saw in Simurgh the
"thirty birds entirely." They remained absorbed in this reflection.
Having then asked the solution of the problem We and Thou, that is, the
problem of apparent identity of the divinity and his adorers, they received
it, and were for ever annihilated in Simurgh: the shade vanished in the

According to the thirty-seventh and last allegory of Azz-eddin Elmoea-
dessi, an Arabian poet, who died in A. H. 678 (A. D. 1280), the assembled
birds resolved to pass a profound sea, elevated mountains, and consuming
flames, to arrive at a mysterious island where Simurgh or Enka magh-
reb, "the wonderful," resided, whom they wished to choose for their
king. After having supported the fatigues, and surmounted the diffi-
culties and perils of their voyage, they attained their aim, a delightful
sojourn, where they found every thing that may captivate the senses.
But when they offered their homage to Simurgh, he at first refused them,
but having tried their perseverance in their attachment to him, he at
last gratified their desire, and granted them ineffable beatitude.—(See
Les Oiseaux et les Fleurs, Arabic text and French translation, by M. Garcin
de Tassy, pp. 119, etc., and notes, p. 220).

The Súfis are divided into three great classes, to wit: ٤. واصلاً
tion by annihilation into God emancipation from
the confinement of visible existence, and acquires
with an eternal mansion the intimate connection
with God, and an exit from the garment of servil-
tude, and becomes endowed with divine qualities.
In the station of transition into God, Jabrīl is the
image of wisdom and of manifest knowledge, on
which account it has been declared—

"There are moments when I am with God in such a manner that nei-
ther angel nor archangel, prophet nor apostle, can attain to it."

When at the time of transition, science, compre-
hension, knowledge, and all qualities are cancelled
and vanish, then transitory knowledge unites with
the perfect science, the dangers of mankind are car-
rried off and disappear, before the rays of light of
the supreme Being. And this is the kind of knowl-
ledge which Jabrīl revealed. Above this station
resides the absolute Being. Again, ascent and de-
scent, and letter and sound denote the meaning that
mankind comprises all qualities—the high and the

va'sita'na, "those who arrived (at the desired end)," the nearest to God; 2.
ṣalākān, "the travellers, the progressive;" 3. mukī-
man, "the stationaries."—According to others (see Graham, Transact.
of the Lit. Soc. of Bombay, vol. 1. pp. 99. 100), a Sūfī may be: 1. a
sālik, "traveller;" 2. a mājezub, "one attracted in a state of
"intoxication from the wine of divine love;" 3. a mājezub sālik, "an
"attracted traveller," that is, a partaker of the above two states. I omit
other divisions and subdivisions.
low; by the exigency of its united properties, at times drowned in the ocean of unity, man is bewildered; and, at times, yielding to this prevailing nature, he associates with women. Know what Shaikh Aziz Nasfy says: Men, devoted to God’s unity declared, regarding the expression tąl asmāvat, “the folding up heaven,” that “heaven” signifies something that is high and of a bountiful expansion with respect to those who are below it, and this, causing a bountiful communication, may take place either in the spiritual or in the material world; the bestower of the bountiful communication may be from the latter, he may be from the former, world. Further, any thing may be either terrestrial or heavenly. If thou hast well conceived the sense of the heavenly and terrestrial, know that mankind has four nishā, “stages,” in like manner as the blasts of the trumpet are four times repeated: because death and life have four periods. In the first stage, man is living under the form of a thing; but, with respect to qualities and reason, he is a dead thing. In the second stage, under the form of mind, he is a living thing, but, with respect to qualities and reason, a dead thing. In the third stage, under the

1. Silvestre de Sacy translates “emanation, overflowing.”—
(Journal des Savants, dce., 1821. p. 733.)

2. Nishā is interpreted in the dictionary: growing, producing, being borne upward, etc.; above it can but signify “a condition of being.”
form of mind, qualities he is a living thing, but, with respect to reason, a dead thing. In the fourth stage, under the form of mind, qualities, and reason, he is a living thing. In the first stage, he is entirely in the sleep of ignorance, darkness, and stupidity, as

"Darkness upon darkness——"

In this stage he awakes from the first sleep; in the second stage, from the second; in the third, from the third sleep; in the fourth stage, from the last sleep; and in this awaking of the heart he becomes thoroughly and entirely awake, and acquires perfect possession of himself, and knows positively that all he had known in the three preceding stages was not so: because truth, having been but imaginary, was falsehood; and that heaven and earth, as they had been understood before, were not so. Further, in this stage, earth will not be that earth, and heaven not that heaven, which men knew before. This is the meaning of the words:

"On the day when the earth shall be changed into something else than the earth, as well as the heaven, and when all that shall be manifested by the power of God, the only one, the Almighty." 1

And when they arrived at that station and possessed positively the form of mind, qualities, and reason of an individual, certainly they knew by

1 Koran.
means of revelation and inspiration, that except one there is no being, and this being is God, the glorious and sublime; they were informed of the real state of things from the beginning to the utmost extremity. In the account concerning the obscurcation of the moon, and sun, and stars, they said: that stars have their meaning from the beginning of the light, which is produced in the hearts of the intelligent and select; that the sun denotes the utmost fulness and universality of light; and that the moon, a mediator between the sun and the star,¹ from all sides, spreads their tidings. Then the sun is the universal bestower of abundant blessings; the moon is in one respect "a benefactor," in another respect, "benefitted." As often as the sun's light, which is the universal light, manifests and spreads itself, unity of light comes forth; the light of the moon and that of the stars is effaced by the light of the sun. From the beginning, the prophet says, that—

"When the stars shall fall,

And in the midst,

"When the moon shall be obscured,"

And when the select associate with the bestower of abundant blessings, that

"When the sun and moon shall unite,"

¹ In the Desātir the moon is called "the key of heaven."
there remains no trace of *istikṣet*, "diffusion," nor of *afāṣet*, "profusion."

"When the sun shall be folded up."

It was said that the earth of the last judgment signifies that earth on which the creatures of the world will be assembled, and that earth is the existing mankind, because the permanence of all beings is not possible upon any other earth. Further, there will be the day of the last judgment, and the presence of the inhabitants of the world is not intended, nor possible, upon any other earth but the actual earth of mankind. Moreover there will be Friday, 2 and truth will be separated from falsehood upon no other earth but upon the earth of the actual mankind. Then, there will be the day of the last judgment, and no mystery among mysteries will be manifested upon any other earth but that of actual mankind. Afterwards, there will be the day of ripping open the secrets, and upon no earth will a retribution be given to any body but upon the earth of the actual mankind. Finally, there will be the day of faith.

The lord durvish Sabjány gave the information, saying: With the Sufi's heaven is beauty; certainly the other world of objects of beauty is to be referred to the beauty of God; and in hell there is ma-

1. افاضت and استفاضت.
2. The weekly holiday of the Mohammedans.
jesty;1 necessarily the other world of objects of majesty is referrible to that of God; and the Jelāliān, or "those to whom majesty applies," will be satisfied in like manner as the Jemāliān, "those to whom beauty appertains."2 Further, it is said, hell is the place of punishment; this means that if an object of beauty be joined to majesty, it becomes disturbed; in like manner majesty is made uneasy by beauty. From the lord Sabjāni comes also the information that the

1 حلال jelā'i, "glory, majesty." I suppose "terrible majesty" may be understood. We find, in Richardson's Dictionary, that a sect called Jelā'iyyat, followers of Said Jelā'i Bokhari, worship the more terrible attributes of the deity.

2 This is an obscure passage. Silvestre de Sacy (Journal des Savants, janvier, 1822, p. 13) says: "I see by the Dabistān that, by means of "allegory, the Sāfîs destroy the dogma of eternal punishment, as they "destroy what concerns Paradise; but this subject is touched upon but "in a superficial manner in the Dabistān, p. 486. "I confess, "as to the rest, that I have not yet formed to myself a very clear idea of "this theory." He subjoins the following note: "Paradise, according "to the Dabistān is, with the Sāfîs, 'the beauty of God.' جمال jemal, "and hell, 'the glory.' جلال jelal; men who, by their conduct, belong "to the last attribute of the divinity, which is designated under the "name of hell; that is the Jelā'liān, find pleasure in it, and "when it is said that hell is a place of torment, this means that those "who belong to the attribute of beauty, the Jemāliān, would "be unfortunate, if they should be placed in the situation of those who "belong to the attribute of glory, the Jelā'liān; the same would be the "case with those who belong to the attribute of glory, or to hell, if they "should experience the destiny of those who belong to the attribute of "beauty, or of Paradise."
sagacious declare: Pharaoh was worthy of the name of God, and in him the establishment of divinity gained predominance, as well as in Moses the establishment of divine mission. On that account the lord Imam of the professors of divine unity, the Shaikh Mahdi-eddin gave in several of his compositions the proof of Pharaoh's faith, and declared him to be a worthy object of veneration, as well as Moses. It is said also, that the land of Arafat signifies the land, which is sought by those who made a vow, and conceived the desire, of pilgrimage, and with their face turned towards this land, with the utmost effort and endeavor proceed upon their way and journey; if in this country they meet with the day of Arirfah, that is, "the ninth day of the moon," and accomplish the pilgrimage, they are then considered as having become pilgrims, and to have

1 Arafat is a mountain not far from Mecca.穆sinnedans believe that Adam and Eve, having been separated to perform penance, searched for each other during a hundred and twenty or two hundred years, until at last they met again upon the mountain Arafah, the name of which is derived from the Arabian verb "to know." This is one of the etymologies of this name; I omit others relating to Abraham (see D'Ollson, t. II, pp. 83-86). This mountain, in the pilgrimage to Mecca, is one of the principal sacred stations, which the pilgrims cannot enter without having taken the Ihram, or "penitential veil," on the first day of the moon Zilhajah (the last of the Arabian year); on the 9th day of the same month, called also yum-Arafah, "the day of knowledge," they arrive at Arafah, where they perform their devotions until after sunset, and then proceed to Mecca to execute the sacred rites mentioned pp. 408-409, note 2.
found the fruit of their journey, and fulfilled their desire, as is said:

"He who reaches the mount Arafah has accomplished the pilgrimage."

If they have not arrived in this land on the said day, they have not accomplished the pilgrimage, they have not become pilgrims nor fulfilled their desire. If this matter be well understood, it necessarily follows that the land of Arifát signifies the actual earth of mankind, because all beings, heavenly and earthly, are upon the way of travelling, until they arrive at the dignity of mankind, and when they arrive at it, their journey and voyage is accomplished. If on this earth, which is that of the actual mankind, they arrive on the day of Aráfat, which means the knowledge of God, they have attained their wish at the Kâbah, they have accomplished their pilgrimage, and become pilgrims.

Haj, in the Dictionary, is interpreted *kaséd*, "aspiring to," and *kas éd*, in the law, means the house which Ibrahim the prophet (the blessing of God be upon him!) built in Mecca, and, in truth, this means the house of God, according to these words:

"Neither the earth nor the heavens can contain me, but only the heart of the believing servant."

Besides, the Móbed says:

"At the time of prayer the dignity of man is shown;
"Profit by this time, as perhaps fate may seize it."

The sagacious Súfis said: Every action of the
actions commanded by law denotes a mystery of the mysteries. *Ghasel,* "bathing," means coming forth by resignation from foreign dependence. *Was u,* "ablation," indicates abandonment of great occupations. *Mazmaza,* "rinsing the mouth," refers to the rapture caused by the sweetness of remembrance. *Istinsak,* "washing the nostrils three times, by inhaling water out of the palm of the hand," denotes inhaling the perfumes of divine bounty. *Istinsar,* "drawing up water through the nostrils and discharging it again," signifies throwing off blameable qualities. *Washing the face,* has the meaning of turning our face to God. *Washing the hand* is withholding the hand from prohibited things. *Washing the feet* has reference to giving precedence to diligence upon the carpet of devotion. *Standing upright* signifies experience in the earthly station. *To be turned towards the Kiblah* is a sign of offering supplications to the divine majesty. *Joining both hands* denotes the bond of an obligatory engagement. *Keeping the hands open during prayers* means holding back the hand from all except what relates to God. *The Takbir,* "pious exclamation."

1 See D’Ohsson’s *Tableau général de l’Empire Ottoman,* tom. II. p. 46.

2 The *Takbir* consists of these words: *Allah ’u akbar, Allah ’u akbar, la ilahi ill’ Allah, Allah ’u akbar, Allah ’u akbar, va l’ilah ’il hamd.* "God, most high! God, most high! there is no God but God! God most
signifies respect to divine commands. *Kerāt*, chanting (the Koran or prayers), is perusing the divine signets upon the tables of fate, preserved in the heart by means of the interpretation of the tongue, and the renewal of information upon the boundaries of commanded and prohibited things. *Rukūd*, "bowing the head with the hands upon the knees," represents the state of resignation and submission. *Sajūd*, "prostration," indicates investigation of the divine Being, and dismissal of all pretension. *Tashahhud*, "ritual profession of religion," refers to the state of resignation and humility. *To sit down and to stand up before God five times* means understanding and appreciating the five majesties, which are: divinity, grandeur, dominion, power, and love of humanity. *Two rikāts,* "attitudes of devotion in

1 high! God most high! praises belong to God.—(D’Ohsson, vol. II. p. 77).

1 The prostration is made with the face to the earth, that is, the knees, toes, hands, nose, and forehead touching the ground. During the prostration the *tāshbīr* is recited.

2 Several prescribed attitudes and practices constitute the *namaz*, or "prayer".—1. The Muselman stands upright, his hands raised to the head, the fingers separated, and the thumbs applied to the inferior part of the ears; 2. he places his hands joined upon the navel; 3. bows the upper part of his body, and, the hands upon his knees, keeps it horizontally inclined; 4. places himself in the second attitude; 5. prostrates himself as described in the preceding note; 6. raises the upper part of his body, and, kneeling, sits upon his legs, the hands placed upon his thighs; 7. makes a second prostration; 8 rises, and stands as in the second attitude. These eight attitudes, during which he recites several times the
"the morning," are indicative of God's absolute being and of reality. Four rikāts relate to four effulgenties, which are impressiveness, agency, inherence of attributes, and substantiality. Three rikāts, imply separation, union, and union of unions, viz.: separation, in viewing the creatures without God; union, in viewing God without the creatures; and union of unions, in viewing God in the creatures, and the creatures in God; so that the view of the one may not to the heart be a veil to the view of the other. Keeping the fast refers to the purity of the interior. The sight of halāl, "the new moon," is seeing the eye-brows of the perfect spiritual guide.

before-quoted takbīr, form a rikāt. — (See D'Oehson, vol. II. pp. 77 et seq.

The apparition of the new moon is to the Muhammadans an important phenomenon, as it marks the beginning of their fasts, feasts, and other religious practices, which, to be valid, must be observed exactly at the prescribed time. On that account, the magistrates in the Musulman empire are attentive to announce the right epoch; the Muezins, or "cryers," of the highest mosques, at the approach of the new moon pass the whole night on the top of the minarets to observe the precise moment. Thus, the fast of the Ramazan, which lasts thirty days, begins at the apparition of the new moon; the commencement of the moons Shawel and Zilḥijah are important for the celebration of the two only feasts in the Muhammadan year: the first is the did-fitr, "the feast of breaking fast," which occupies one or three days, and seventy days after this is the did-kurban, "the feast of sacrifice," which lasts four days: thus the grave Muselmans allow but seven days of their whole year to festivity. As their years are lunar, these two feasts run in the space of thirty-three years through all the seasons of the year.—(D'Oehson, tome II. p. 227; tome III. pp. 4-5, and elsewhere.)
Aid, "a feast," is the knowledge of God. Kurban, "sacrificing" (killing victims), denotes annihilating the brutal spirit. Rozah, "fasting," has three degrees. The first degree is guarding the belly and the sexual organs from what is improper; the second degree is guarding one’s self from unbecoming words and deeds; the third degree is guarding the heart from whatever is contrary to God. Jihad, "holy war upon unbelievers," signifies combating the spirit of deceit. Mumen, "right faith," implies adherence to whatever is essential to the true worship of God, and tendency to it by any way which God wills, for—

"The road towards the idols is formed of the great number of sighs of the creatures."

The lord Ain ul-Kazat said, he has learned upon

---

1 The immolation of an animal in honor of the Eternal on the prescribed day is of canonical obligation: every Muselman, free, settled, and in easy circumstances, is bound to offer in sacrifice a sheep, an ox, or a camel. Several persons, to the number of seven, may associate for such a purpose. To this is added the distribution of alms to the poor, consisting of killing one or more animals, sheep, lambs, goats, to be dressed, a part of which is tasted by the sacrificer and his family, and the rest given to the poor. (Ibid., t. II. p. 423.

2 Fasting, with the Muhammedans, imposes an entire abstinence from all food whatever, and a perfect continence during the whole day from the first canonical hour of morning, which begins at day-break, until sunset. There are different sorts of fasts: canonical, satisfactory, expiatory, votive, and supererogatory. Each of them, although determined by different motives, requires, nevertheless, the same abstinence during the whole day.—(Ibid., t. III. p. 1).
his way, that the essence of all creeds is God, and that of all creeds of the sophists is this:

"All shall perish except his countenance (that is God's); all that is upon the earth is perishable."

And the meaning of the verse of the merciful is, that at a certain time he will be nothing, because on that very day all is nothing; and this very opinion is the principal part of the creed of sharp-sighted men. In the takwiyat dānī, "the strengthening of sense," the lord Ain ul Kazat, saheb-i zūkī, "pos-essor of delight," said that the mood of the verbal noun is in progressive efficiency at all times, whilst perdition of all things at all times is also constant, but has no determined future time: consequently this perdition, which is an indetermined tense, does not imply that the contingent efficiency is perdition in a future time.

The Imām Muhammed Nur bakhsh stated, that all those who are reckoned to have seen God as particular servants near to him, have said the truth; because the rational spirit, which means that of mankind, is pure and uncompounded; on that account it is not prevented from seeing God, and those who speak against the sight are also right, because the eye cannot see the mysterious blessed Being on account of his solitude. An investigator of truth has said: Those who assert the solitude of God are right: because the blessed Being is solitary.
And those who speak of his corporeity, and consider God as one of the bodies, such as fire, air, water, or earth, say right, because he is in every sort of beings. Likewise, those who hold him to be good or bad, are not wrong; because nothing exists without him, so that what happens can happen but by his order. And those who ascribe the bad to themselves are right, because in practice they are the movers of their works. So it is with other opinions, such as those who consider God as a Father with regard to all existing beings, and this opinion is true.

The Sunnites recognise Abu Bekr (may God reward him), as a khalif on the strength of his perfection: this is sufficiently founded. But the Shiâhs oppose that on the supposition of his deficiencies. Besides, every body may, conformably to his own conceptions, have some objection to Abu Bekr. In the same manner, concerning the future state, there are contradictory creeds of nations, and histories of their princes in the world adopted as certain. All these contradictions of the inhabitants of this world are to be considered in this point of view—that they are more or less belonging to truth.

The Sûfis maintain that vilayet, "holiness," in

1 A possessor of relayet, a velî, "a saint," according to Jâmi (in the Lives of Sûfis) is destined to serve as an instrument for manifesting the proof of prophetic mission. Extraordinary powers over all nature are
the Dictionary signifies vicinity (to God), and in the public circle to be chosen by the people of God, is evident prophetic mission, and interior faith is incitemental to prophecy; the prophet is its faith, and the incitemental of the faith of a saint is the mission of a prophet, and the faith of an apostle is the completion of the apostleship. Inspiration takes place without the intervention of an angel, and revelation with the intervention of an angel is the revelation appropriate to the prophet. Inspiration is also appropriate to him.

The pious Sajjan Sajani says, the perfection of sanctity is the period of a Mahdi’s time; hence all those among the saints who claimed the dignity of a Mahdi, were divine. In the same manner as every ascribed to such a man. According to the Kashef ul mahjub, “the revelations of the veiled being,” composed by Shaikh Ali Osman Ben Ebil-Ali el Ghaznavi, there are four thousand saints in the world, walking separate from each other upon the ways of God. Among these, the first three hundred are called Akhyar, “the best;” the next four hundred are the Abdal, commonly called “Santons;” after them seven hundred Ebrar, “just men;” further, four hundred Awtad, “posts or stakes;” finally, three hundred Nukeba, “chosen.” According to the author of Futuhat-i-Mekki, “the revelations of Mecca,” that is, Mahi-eddin Muhammad, before-mentioned (p. 334, note 1), there exist at any time seven Abdal, or Saints, who preside the seven terrestrial zones, or climates. Each of them, in his climate, corresponds to one of the seven prophets in the following order: Abraham, Moses, Aaron; Edris, Joseph; Jesus, and Adam, who reside as we have said (see pp. 186-89, notes 2. 1. 1. 2. 3, 1. 2.) in so many heavenly spheres. To the said Abdal belong the Oueis, that is the great shaikhs, and pious men who, nourished in the prophet’s lap, are never tainted by age.
malady of the body has a curative medicine, so every malady of the spirit has also its means of cure. Thus, as the pulse and the urine are indicative of the state of bodies, so dream and vision indicate the state of the spirit. On that account, the devotees relate the visions to their Shaikh, who is the doctor of the soul.

The Sufis say, that upon the way of pilgrimage there are seven mertebah, "degrees." The first degree consists of penitence, obedience, and meditation, and in this degree the light is, as it were, green. The second degree is the purity of the spirit from satanic qualities, violence, and brutality; because, as long as the spirit is the slave of satanic qualities, it is subject to concupiscence, and this is the quality of fire. In this state Iblis evinces his strength, and when the spirit is liberated from this, it is distressed with the quality of fierceness, which may be said flashing, and this is conformable to the property of wind. Then it becomes insatiable, \(^1\) and this is similar to water. After this it obtains quietness, and this quality resembles earth. \(^2\) In the degree of repose, the light is as it were blue, and the utmost

\(^1\) The text has ملاحم, which means "gluttonous, eager after any thing to excess;" if ملاحم, it means "inspired."

\(^2\) The ecstatic conditions desired by the Sufis are attainable only in a perfect apathy, that is, in a cessation of all action of the corporeal organs and intellectual faculties.
reach of one's progress is the earthly dominion. The third degree is the manifestation of the heart, by laudable qualities, which is similar to red light, and the utmost reach of its progress is the middle of the upper dominion; and in this station the heart praises God, and sees the light of worship and spiritual qualities. With the pure Sūfis, "the heart" signifies the form of moderation which keeps the mind in such dispositions that it may not at all be inclined to any side towards excess and redundancy, and the possessor of his mind whose fortunate lot is such a station, is praised as "the master of the heart," or "the lord of the mind." The fourth degree is the applying of the constitution to nothing else but to God, and this is similar to yellow light, and the utmost reach of its progress is the midst of the heavenly malkut, "dominion." The fifth degree of the soul is that which resembles white light, and the utmost aim of its progress is the extreme heavenly dominion. The sixth degree is the hidden, which is like a black light, and the utmost reach of its progress is the dālemi jah-rūt, "the world of power." The seventh degree is ghaiyūb al ghaiyūb, "the evanescence of evanes-

1 According to the Dict., Ferhengi Shuuri (vol. II. p. 430, edit. of Constantinople) the seven heavens mentioned in these pages as habitations of the perfect are called Hest-aureng, "seven thrones" (a name commonly given to the seven stars of the Great Bear); they have seven colors, the highest is the black.
ence,” which is *fanā*, “annihilation,” and *baka*, “eternal life,” and is colorless; this is absorption in God, non-existence, and effacement of the imaginary in the true being, like the loss of a drop of water in the ocean; and “eternal life” is the union of the drop with the sea, and abstraction from all except the proper view of the heart, or separation from the idle images which prevented the *salīk*, “traveller,” in the midst of existence from distinguishing the drop from the ocean. *Fanā*, “annihilation,” is of two kinds: partial, and universal. The partial consists in this: that a traveller is effaced at once, or that, by gradation, several of his members are effaced, and then the rest of his members. The senses and faculties pass first through the exigency of *sukr*, “intoxication,” and, secondly, through that of *sahu*, “recovery from ebruity.” The universal annihilation consists in this: that all existences belonging to the worlds of *malik*, *malkut*,

Silvestre de Sacy translates it, *la disparition de la disparition*, “the disappearance of disappearance,” that is to say, perfect absorption. We have (pp. 238-9, note †) met with the term hazeret, “presence,” which is a qualification either of attentive expectation, or perfect intuition; opposite to this we find *ghaib*, “absence, disappearance, evanescence;” this is a station attainable only to a *vali*, “saint,” by means of *jamah*, “union,” when he sees nothing else but God and his unity; this station coalesces with *fanā*, “annihilation,” when his personal existence is withdrawn from his eyes, and he acquires *baka*, “eternal, sole and sole life with and in God.”
and jabrūt, "of the angels, of dominion, and power," are effaced at once, or by gradation: first, the three kingdoms of nature are effaced; then the elements; further the heavens; afterwards, malkūt, "dominion;" finally, jabrūt, "power." Proceeding, the traveller experiences first the exigency of a sudden manifestation of majesty, and, secondly, that of beauty.

The author of this book heard from the durvish Sabjānī, that what the prophet has revealed, viz.: "that earth and heaven will go to perdition," signifies "annihilation," not as people take it in the common acceptation, but in a higher sense, "annihilation in God;" so that God with all his attributes manifests itself to the pious person, who becomes entirely annihilated. Eternal life, which is the opposite of

---

1 The word used in the original is تاژیات (tažīat), signifying here properly "a sudden burst upon the eyes, a transitory vision." This word occurs, evidently with this meaning, in the following passage of Šāfi's Gulistan. "Rose-garden," (chap. II. tale 9), which at the same time elucidates the state of the Šāfi above alluded to: "The vision (of God) which the pious enjoy, consists of manifestation and occultation; it shows itself, and vanishes from our looks,"—VERSE. Thou showrest thy countenance and thou concealst it. Thou enhancest thy value and sharpenest our fire. When I behold thee without an intervention, it affects me in such a manner that I lose my road. It kindles a flame, and then quenches it by sprinkling water; on which account you see me sometimes in ardent flames, sometimes immersed in the waves.

There are different sorts of تاژیات (tažīat, "manifestations," and whenever the mystic has attained the first degrees of such divine favors, he receives no more his subsistence but by supernatural ways.
annihilation, has also four divisions. The first degree is eternal existence with God, when the pious person from the absorption in God returns, and sees himself ُدیین واجد، “a real being,” endowed with all qualities—

“Who has seen himself, saw God.”

If in absorption he keeps consciousness, there remains duality behind.

In the abridged commentary upon Gulshan raz, it is stated, that there are four kinds of manifestations. The first is ُدیاژی,” impression,” by which the absolute being appears under the form of some corporeal beings, among which the human form is the most perfect. The second kind is ُدیبّلی,” belonging to “action,” when the contemplative person sees the absolute being endowed with several attributes of action, such as creator, or nourisher, and the like, or sees himself a being endowed with one of the attributes. The manifestations are frequently colored with lights, and exhibit all sorts of tints. The third kind is ُدیفّتی,” belonging to attributes,” when the contemplative person sees the absolute being endowed with the attributes of his own essence, such as science and life, or sees himself a real being, endowed with these attributes. The fourth kind is ُدیثی,” essence,” in which, on account of manifestation, annihilation takes place, so that the possessor of this manifestation participates in a condition in
which no trace of himself remains, and no consciousness whatever is preserved. It is not necessary that the manifestation be colored in a vest of light, or that every light be a light of manifestation. It may happen that a light proceeds from a prophet, a saint, or a creature. The symptom of manifestation is annihilation, or the science (that is intimate knowledge) of the object manifested at the time of manifestation. The evidence for the truth of manifestations is derived from the Koran, or from traditions.

"I am God; the Lord of creatures."

Moses heard the voice from a bush, and the chosen prophet said:

"I saw my Lord under the most excellent form."

1 The bush from whence Moses heard the voice of God is mentioned in the Commentary upon the Koran in the following manner. Moses, travelling with his family from Midian to Egypt, came to the valley of Towa, situated near mount Sinai; his wife fell in labor and was delivered of a son, in a very dark and snowy night; he had also lost his way, and his cattle was scattered from him, when on a sudden he saw a fire by the side of a mountain, which on his nearer approach he found burning in a green bush. The Koran (chap. XX. vv. 9-14) says: "When he saw fire and said to his family: Tarry ye here, for I perceive fire: perhaps I may bring you a brand thereout, or may find a direction in our way by the fire. And when he was come near unto it, a voice called unto him, saying: O Moses! verily I am thy Lord: wherefore put off thy shoes: for thou art in the sacred valley Towa. And I have chosen thee: therefore hearken with attention unto that which is revealed unto thee. Verily I am God; there is no God beside me: wherefore worship me, and perform thy prayer in remembrance of me."
The writer of these pages heard from the durvish Sabjáni that the Hindus and other nations, having formed and adored as Gods various different images, this is founded upon the fact, that eminent persons among them were impressed with manifestations; and in such a manner the ten ávatárs became the counterfeits of these manifestations; some of the ávatárs held themselves to be divinities, because they have been the masters of these manifestations; that the Jews and other nations acknowledge God under bodily forms proceeds from the like manifestations. Besides, that Pharâoh declared himself to be a God, comes from a like manifestation: because Pharâoh, under his own form had seen God; on that account the lord Imám Muḥammad Shaikh Mahieddin, in some of his compositions, exhibited proofs of Pharâoh's religion, and rendered this personage

1 The name of Pharâoh occurs several times in this work; but the character of this personage is viewed in a different light by the sectarians of Muhammedism. In the Koran he appears nearly as in the Bible of the Jews, with regard to Moses and the Israelites, cruel, tyrannical, presumptuous, and perishing in the Red Sea: not without having before acknowledged their God, and confessed his sins. But some Sufis see and admire in the impious daring of Pharâoh the omnipotence of his power, and adduce, in favor of their opinion, passages from some of their most celebrated philosophers. Indeed Jaleeddin represents Pharâoh equal to Moses. Sahel Ibn Abd-ullah of Shoostr says, that the secret of the soul was first revealed when Pharâoh declared himself a God. Ghazâli sees in his temerity nothing else but the most noble aspiration to the divine, innate in the human mind.
illusrious. Moses saw God under a bodily form, and did not find himself like that (exalted) being; but it was under his own form that Pharâoh saw God, and found himself like that being. Jesus declared himself the son of God; because he found himself the son of God Almighty, in a like manifestation.

Hajab, "the veil," is of two kinds: the one, of darkness, is that of a servant, like morality and exterior occupations; and the other is the veil of light which comes from God; because traditions are veils of actions; actions, veils of attributes; and attributes, veils of the essence of revelation, which relates to mystery, dependent either upon exterior

---

1 The Sûfis call جاب "veil," whatever is opposed to perfect union with divinity. In the life of Joneid Abu 'l-Kasem, who was born and educated in Baghdad, and died in the year of the Hejira 297 (A. D. 909), one of the earliest and most celebrated founders of Sûfism, we read what follows: "Somebody said to Joneid: 'I found that the Shaikhs of Kho-" rasan acknowledge three sorts of veils: the first is the nature (of man); " the second is the world, and the third concupiscence."—' These are, " said Joneid, 'the veils which apply themselves to the heart of the com-" mon among men; but there exists another sort of veil for special men; " that is, for the disciples of spiritual life, the Sûfis: this is the view of " works, the consideration of the recompenses due to acts, and the regard " of the benefits of God. The Shaikh of Islamism said (relatively to this " subject): God is veiled from the heart of man, who sees his proper " actions; God is veiled even from him who seeks recompense, and from " him who, occupied with considering the benefit, turns his eyes from " the benefactor."'—(See Notices et Extraits des MSS., vol. XII.: p. 435, Joneid's Life, by Jami, translated by Silvestre de Sacy.)

V. III.
form or inner sense. The first kind of truth is called *Kashef suri*, the "exterior revelation;" the second kind is the *Kashef mâni*, "inner revelation." The exterior revelation takes place by means of sight, hearing, touch, smell, or rapture, and is dependent upon temporal traditions; this is called *rahbâniyet*, "way-guarding," because the finding of truth according to investigation is contemplation, and some reckon this investigation among the sorts of *istidrâj*, "miracles permitted by God for hardening the hearts of sinners," and of *makr Ilahi*, "divine fascination."

Some derived the commands relative to the other world from the revelation, and confined their desires to *fanâ*, "annihilation, and *bakâ*, "eternal life." The author of this book heard from Sabjana that the exterior revelation concerning temporal actions is called "monastic institution," because

---

1 *is also interpreted: "prodigy of chastisement," that is, extraordinary things may be operated by a man who renounced obedience to God, in order that such a man may be led to perdition. This appears founded upon a passage of the Koran (chap. XVIII. vv. 43, 44): "Let me alone with him who accuseth this new revelation of imposture. We will lead them gradually to destruction by ways which they know not; and I will bear with them for a long time, for my stratagem is effectual."*

2 *See vol. III. p. 18, note 2. Monachism was not only disapproved but positively prohibited by the Muhammadan religion, the first founders of which, chiefs of warlike tribes, were by necessity, profession, and habit, continually engaged in military expeditions. But to the Asiatic, in general,*
monks belong to the exterior people; and its worship is, according to rules, relative to every thing exterior; and its purpose, on account of service, directed to the retribution of deeds, reward of heaven, adherence to a particular prophet, and the like. Further obedience is an indication which bears towards temporal actions; on that account its revelation is connected with temporal concerns. The devout Muselman follows also the rule of monastic life, and the Christian is not without participation in absorption and eternal life.

It is to be known that in the service of a king there are two confidential Amirs, who are not friends, but entertain enmity against each other. They may bring their own friends before the king. So are the prophets appointed at the court of God; if not so, how would the absolute Being have divided the extent of his empire by religion, if this were to be confined to one person? Another opinion is that of a pious philosopher, who contemplates the light of God in all objects of this and the other world, and turns not his regard from the least atom; he so natural is ascetism, seclusion, and contemplation, that Muhammed, in order to restrain a propensity which he felt and now and then showed himself, declared that, for monachism, the pilgrimage to Mecca was substituted by divine order. Even during the prophet's life, the love of monastic and anachoretic professions gained ascendency among Muselmans, and easily united with Sufism.
raised this belief to a high estimation; and to him remained no rancor of creed or religion; whoever, in the service of faith and morality is not freed from duality, and whoever says, the state of Muselmans is in dignity higher than that of Christians, knows nothing of the real Being. Whoever said of himself: "I attained a height of knowledge equal to that of Māruf Kerkhi,¹ said nothing else than this: the variety and multitude of the rules of prophets proceed only from the abundance of names, and, as in names there is no mutual opposition or contradiction, the superiority in rank among them is only the predominance of a name."

The Sūfis say: The spirits of the perfect men²

² ح润滑油 كُلِيم شُيَّانٍ nafus Kamilah insa′nī. Insan kamil, "the perfect man," according to the doctrine of the Sūfis, is, "the reunion of all the worlds, divine and natural, universal and partial; he is the book in which all books, divine and natural, are reunited. On account of his spirit and intellect, it is a reasonable book, called 'the Mother of Books'; on account of his heart, it is the book of the well-guarded table (al touh); on account of his soul, it is the book of things obliterat ed and of things written; it is he who is then the venerable sublime and pure pages, which are not to be touched, and the mysteries which cannot be comprehended but by those who are purified from the dark veils. The relation of the first intelligence to the great world, and to its realities themselves, is as the relation of the human soul to the body and its faculties; for the universal soul is the heart of the great world, as the reasonable soul is the heart of the man, and it is on that account that the world is called 'the great Man.' "—(Definitions de Jorjani. Not. et Ext. des MSS., vol. IX, pp. 86-87).
after separation from their bodies, go to the world of angels. The saints are directed by the interpretation of the Korán, and the vulgar people by the commentary upon both. Some maintain that the Saints do not subject themselves to it, but are tenacious only of this verse:

"Adore God, thy Lord, until attaining certitude (himself)."

The Shaikh Nájem eddin Kabrá said: When distinguished persons abandon the ceremonies of the worship, this means that these ceremonies which are performed by prescription, are contrary to them, because in worship no difficulty or inconvenience is to take place, but only joy and pleasure to be derived from it.

The lord Saíd Muhammed Nurhakhsh says, in the account of apparitions: The difference between baroz, "apparition," and tanásokh, "transmigration," is this: that the latter is the arrival of the soul, when it has separated from one body to take possession of another, in the embryo which is fit

the passage just quoted, Silvestre de Sacy thinks the perfect man is equal to the first intelligence.—The book of things obliterated and of things written, the world of transitory things, in which life and death succeed each other."—The universal soul is an emanation of the divinity, subordinate to the first and universal intelligence.

1 Najem-eddin Abu 'l-Jenab Ahmed, son of Omar, was a celebrated Sūfī, who formed a great number of disciples. He was surnamed Kobra, "great," on account of his superior knowledge. He died in the year of the Hejira 618 (A. D. 1221).
for receiving a soul in the fourth month, to be reckoned from the moment when the sperma fell and settled in the womb; and this separation from one body and junction with another is called *madd*, "resurrection." An "apparition" is when a soul accumulates excellence upon excellence and an overflow takes place; so that by beatific vision it becomes visible; that is, it may happen, that a perfect soul, after its separation from the body, resides years in the upper world, and afterwards, for the sake of perfecting mankind, joins with a body, and the time of this junction is also the fourth month to be reckoned from the moment of the formation of the body, as was said upon transmigration.

It is stated, in the abridged commentary upon Gulshen-raz, that the soul cannot be without a body. When it is separated from the elemental body, it becomes a shadowy figure in the *barzakh*, that is, in the interval of time between the death and the resurrection of a man; this is called "the acquired body." The barzakh, to which the soul is transported after its separation from this world, is another place than that which is between the spirits and the bodies. The first is called *ghaib inkan*, "the possible disappearance," and the second *ghaib mahali*, "the illusive disappearance." All those who experience the possible disappearance, become informed.

---

1 See page 245, note 2.
of future events. There are many contradictory opinions about the illusive disappearance, which is the annunciation of the tidings of an extraordinary death. The lord Shaikh Muhammed Lāheji stated, in his commentary upon Gulshen-raz, that in the histories and accounts before-said is to be found, that Jābilkā is a town of immense magnitude in the East, and Jābilṣā a town of the utmost extent in the West, opposite to the former. Commentators have said a great deal upon both. According to the impressions which I, an humble person, have received upon my mind relative to this subject, without copying others, and conformably with the indications, there are two places; the one, Jābilkā is ḍalemi-misāl, "the "world of images,"" because on the east side the spirits emerge into existence. Barzakh (another name for it) is between the invisible and the visible, and contains every image of the world; certainly there may be a town of immense greatness, and Jābilṣā is ""the world of similitude."" Barzakh is there the world in which the souls reside after their separation from the worldly station, all suitably to their deeds, manners, and words, good or bad, which

---

1 Jabilkā and Jabilsā signify the double celestial Jerusalem of the Sūfis: the first is the world of ideals, which is the wall of separation between the real and the mystic world; the second is the world of spirits after the completion of their career upon earth.—(See Von Hammer’s Gulshen-raz, p. 28.)
they had made their own in the worldly station, as is to be found in the sacred verses and traditions. This Barzakh is on the west side of the material world, and is certainly a town of immense greatness, and opposite to it is Jábilká. The inhabitants of this town are gentle and just, whilst the people of Jábilsá, on account of the wicked deeds and manners which they had made their own in the worldly station, well deserve to be distinguished by the title of oppressors. Many entertain the opinion that both Barzakhs are but one; it should however be stated, that Barzakh in which the souls will abide after their separation from the worldly station is to the right of that Barzakh which is placed between the pure spirits and the bodies: because the gradations of the descent and ascent of beings form a circle, in which the junction of the last with the first point cannot be imagined but in the movement of the circle, and that Barzakh which is prior to the worldly station, with regard to the graduated descent, has a connection with the anterior worldly station; and that Barzakh, which is posterior to the worldly station, with regard to the graduated ascent, has a connection with the posterior worldly station. Further, whatever be the form of manners of the souls in the posterior Barzakh, this will also be the form of deeds, consequences of manners, actions, and qualities which had been owned in the worldly
station, in opposition to the former Barzakh. Then the one is a stranger to the other; however, as both worlds, inasmuch as spiritual essences of light, being different from matter, are comprised in the visionary forms of the universe, they may be taken for synonymous. The Shaikh Dáûd Káisérí relates that Shaikh Mahi-eddin of Arabia (may his tomb be purified!) has stated in the Fátúhâl, "revelations," that Barzakh is different from the first; and the reason that the first is distinguished by the name of "possible absence," and the latter by "illusive absence," is, that every form in the first Barzakh is contingent, and depends upon exterior evidence, and every form in the last Barzakh, is inaccessible to the senses, and admits of no evidence but on the last day of the world. There are many expounders to whom the form of the first Barzakh appears evident, and who know what takes place in the world of accidents; however, few of these expounders are informed of the news of death.

The author of this book heard from Sabjáni, the learned in the knowledge of God; that the belief of the pure Súfís is the same as that of the Ashrâkian, "the Platonists;" but the Súfís have now mixed their creed with so many glosses, that nobody finds therein the door to the rules of the prophet, and the ancient Saints. Sabjá niggave the information that the essence of God Almighty is absolute light, abso-
lute brightness, and mysterious life; that he is pure, and free from all colors, figures, shapes, and without a prototype; that the interpretation of the eloquent and the indications of the learned are deficient in the account of that light which is without color and mark; that the understanding of the learned and the wisdom of the sage is too weak for entirely comprehending the pure essence of that light, and as, conformably to these words:

"I was a hidden treasure; but I wished to be known, and I created the world for being known."

The essence of God the most High and Almighty showed his existence, so that, except him, there is no real being. In this employment of manifestation, he entered into contemplation, whence the sage calls him the first intelligence; because this lord of expansive creation considered every being according to the scope of propriety; and when the Almighty Being of expansive creation had examined every form inasmuch as by his power it was possible that such a form might appear, he fixed his contemplation in this employment of manifestation, so that what is called "the perfect spirit" is nothing else but himself. From Sabjana the information has been received and found in books that Abul Hassen Suri said: God Almighty rendered his spirit beautiful, then called it "truth," and made revelations, and brought forth names to the creatures;
the absolute being has two heads: the first is *itlāk sarf*,¹ "absolute excellence," and *vahedet mahs*,² "unmixed unity;" the second is *mukayed va kasret va baddiyet*,³ "compass, abundance, and primitiveness." This, according to the greatest number, relates to unity. Further is *ākl-kulli*,⁴ "the universal spirit," which incloses all realities which are (as it were) concrete in him, and this is called *ārsh-i-majid*,⁵ "the throne of glory" (the ninth or empyrean heaven); he is the truth of mankind, and between him and the majesty of divinity there is no mediator according to the wise, although some admit a difference. Sabjáni said, this indicates that they wish no separation from the Lord of grace may ever take place. Moreover, the universal spirit, which embraces all realities in the way of expansion, they call *ārsh-i-Kerim*,⁶ "the throne of mercy," and *laueh-i-mahfūz*,⁷ "the tables of destiny." Besides, there is the universal

---

¹ *اطلاق صرف*
² *وحدة معص*
³ *مقد و كثور و بدایت*
⁴ *عقل كلي*
⁵ *عرش مجيد*
⁶ *عَرْش كرم*
⁷ *روح سُقُوط*
nature, penetrating all material and spiritual beings, and this is called *dikáh*, "vicissitude." With the philosophers nature is the noble part of bodies, and Sajani stated, the penetrating nature in spirits indicates and signifies that there is one divine Being, and the rest nothing else but shadows. Finally, there is an essence of life, which the philosophers call *hayúli*, "the first principle of every thing material," and the Sufis call it *enka*.

SECTION III. — OF SOME OF THE SAINTS AMONG THE MODERNS, AND OF THE SUFIS, WHOM THE AUTHOR OF THIS WORK HAS KNOWN.

The God-devoted lord Mawláná shah Badakhshí, when he had come from his accustomed abode to India, by the assistance of God was received among the disciples of Shah Mir of the Kádari lineage, who had chosen his residence in the royal capital of Lahore, and acquired great knowledge by his studies.
From the original compositions of this sect of holiness, we have the following quatrains:

"The being who descended from his high sphere of sanctity,
"From the absolute world, inclined towards the nether bondage,
"He will, as long as the Lord forms mankind.
" Remain fitted to the four elements."

Besides, the lord Mahi eddin Muhammed, the master of rank and dignity, the lord of the universe √Dáráshukó, 1 having, according to his desire, has-

1 Darashiko was the eldest son and heir presumptive of Shah-Jehan, of Delhi, during whose life he defended him against the rebellion of his younger brother, Aureng-zeb, who, leagued with two other brothers, attempted to dethrone his father. Dara, having been defeated in a battle on the river Jambul, retired towards Lahore, whilst the victorious Aureng-zeb proceeded to Agra, and by stratagem rendered himself master of his father's person, and imprisoned his brother Murad bakhsh, whom he had, till then, treated as emperor, in the castle of Agra, where the captive prince died. Proclaimed emperor under the title of Aalemgir, the new sovereign now turned his arms against Dara, who was in possession of the Panj-ab, Multan, and Kabul, and defended the line of the Sutlej. Here beaten, Dara retired beyond the Indus, and took refuge in the mountains of Bikker. Aalumgir was called to Allahabad, to encounter his brother Suja, who had moved from Bengal to assert his right to the throne. Aalemgir had scarce repulsed him, when he was obliged to haste towards Guzerat: there was Dara, who had recrossed the Indus and taken an advantageous position in that maritime province. He might have been victorious in a battle, but he succumbed to the artfulness of Aalemgir. Deserted by his army, abandoned by his allies, he was delivered up by traitors to his cruel brother, subjected to an ignominious exposition in the streets of Delhi, and executed. Suja, Aalemgir's last brother was obliged to fly to Arrakan, where he died, seven years before his father, Shah Jehan, who died his son's prisoner, in 1665. I have related the principal events of one single year, 1658 of our era. This is a date in the life of the author of the Dabistán, then in his fortieth
tened to wait on his person, obtained the object of his wish, so that, whatever was established as certainty among the theological propositions which he found for the benefit of the travellers in the vast desert, he sent it to Kachmír, where the lord Muláná sháh keeps his residence.

"Upon the whole, God spoke by the tongue of Omar."

Any questions of every one who interrogates are asked from him, although they may fall from the tongue of the asker, and the hearing of every thing solicited comes from the asker, although he himself may not know it.

"All beings are one."

Some of this sect of Alides (may God sanctify their tombs!) also believe that the progress of perfection has no limits, because revelation is without limit, as it takes place every moment; hence it follows that the increase cannot be limited. So they say, if the Súfi live one thousand years, he still is in progress. Some of the ancient Shaikhs proffer, as a confirm-

year or thereabout. He was before this time in the Panjab, and might have personally known Darashuko, who was renowned for his great learning and most religious turn of mind. Besides what is said above in our text, we know (see Mémoires sur les particularités de la Religion musul-
mane, par M. Garcin de Tassy, p. 107), that Dara frequented Babo Lal, a Hindu Durvish, who inhabited Dhanpur in the province of Lahore, and conversed with him upon religious matters. The Munshi Shanderban Shah Jehani wrote a Persian work, which contains the pious conversations of these personages.
tion of this statement, that the Shaikh al islam, "the shaykh of the right faith," said: There exists no more evident sign of bad fortune than the day of a fixed fortune; whoever does not proceed, retrogrades. It is reported as the saying of the prophet (may the benediction of the most High be upon him):

"He whose two days are alike is deceived."

It was also said: "A traveller, who during two days goes on in the same manner, is in the way of detriment; he must be intent upon acquiring and preserving."

The greatest part of this sect maintain the same doctrine, but, by the benediction of my Shaikh, the crier for help in the quarters of heaven, the teacher of the people of God, the godly, the lord Mulána Shah (the peace and mercy of God be his!), upon me, an humble person, fell, as if it were the splendor of the sun, and made it clear to me that the Súfi has degrees and a limit of perfection, that, after having attained it, he remains at that height; because with me, an humble broken

---

1 These are evidently sentiments conducive to progressive civilization and perfection of mankind, and prove that, in Asia, even under the domination of the Muhammedan religion, men felt that they are not doomed to be stationary; thus the absurd dogma of fatality was, by a fortunate inconsistency, counterbalanced by the dictates of sound reason. Unfortunately, our author, generally so liberal-minded, appears upon that point not to range himself upon the most rational side.
individual, to remain at a height attained, is proficiency, inasmuch as every state has its perfection, and the perfection of a progressing state annihilates the progress. This is also the meaning of the before-quoted saying of the prophet; because there is lute freedom with those only who are united with bondage with those who tend towards God, and absolve him, and the words "two days" refer to time. In the same manner my master (the mercy of God be upon him!) interpreted those words. The truth is, that they have not understood the saying, and have not penetrated into the interior sense of the figurative expression: because the latter refers in truth to the insufficiency of a contemplative man. And this sense agrees with that of the following authentic tradition of the prophet (the peace and blessing of the Highest be upon him):

"There are moments in which I am with God in such a manner that neither angel nor arch-angel, nor prophet, nor apostle, can attain to it."

These words confirm his having once been in a lower station. It is said that the prophet (the peace and blessing of the most High be upon him!) was not always of the same disposition, the same state, and the same sort of constitution; but this is not so, but from the same approved tradition it is evident that the prophet (peace and blessing upon him!) was always in the same state, and no ascent nor descent
was possible therein; because he says: "You place
was at once so contiguous to me, that no che-
rub or no divine missioned prophet ever found
himself in such a situation." The time of a
prophet is a universal one, and is free from tem-
porariness: this time has neither priority nor
posteriority—

"With thy Lord there is neither morning nor evening."

Except this, the noble tradition has no meaning,
which is also evident from the obvious interpreta-
tion, and moreover included in the state of perfec-
tion and constitution of Muhammed (peace and bless-
ing upon him!). But, in the sense which they
attribute to the words, a deficiency is necessarily
implied. The state of the lord of the world (Mu-
hammed) is always in the perfection of unity; this
is the best to adopt, at times in a particular, and at
times in a general qualification. There is also an-
other interpretation which the Shaikhs (the mercy
of the most High be upon them) gave to these words:
inasmuch as the gradations of these Saints are in-
finte. Thus in the work nefhât ul ins, "the fragrant
"gales of mankind,"" the opinion of the Shaikhs is
stated to be, that some of the saints are without a
mark and without an attribute, and the perfection
of a state, and the utmost degree to which Saints

1 See page 96, note 1.
may attain, is to be without an attribute and without a mark. It was said:

"He who has no mark, his mark are we."

Besides, those who acknowledge an ascent without a limit, if in the pure being and true essence of the glorious and most high God, who is exempt and free from ascent and descent, color, odor, outwardness and inwardness, increase and decrease, they admit a progression, it must also be admissible in the existence of a Súfi professing the unity of God. And if they do not admit a gradation of progress in God, then they ought not to admit it in the professor of the divine unity, who in the exalted state of purity and holiness became united with him. When a devotee among men, having left the connexion with works of supererogation, arrives at that of divine precepts, he realises the words:

"When thou didst cast thy arrows against them, thou didst not cast them, but God slew them." ¹

It may be said: Certainly, he who became one with God, and of whose being not an atom remained,

¹ Koran, chap. VIII. v. 17. We have mentioned (p. 100, note 2) Muhammed's victory gained at Bedr over a superior force of the Koreish. The prophet, by the direction of the angel Gabriel, took a handful of gravel, and threw it towards the enemy, saying: "May their faces be confounded:" whereupon they immediately turned their backs and fled. Hence the above passage is also rendered: "Neither didst thou, O Muhammed! cast the gravel into their eyes, when thou didst seem to cast it, but God cast it."
he, from whose sight both worlds vanished, who in the steps of right faith arrived at the rank of perfect purity, and from truth to truth became God, what then higher than God can there ever be, to which the pious professor of unity may further tend to ascend? It is known:

"Beyond blackness, no color can go." 1

Every one, as long as he is in the state of progress, cannot have arrived at the condition

"Where there is no fear and no care."

1 The assumption of being God was not uncommon among the Súfis. One of the most distinguished was Hassain Mansur Hallaj, a disciple of Joneid. After having taught the most exalted mysticism, in several countries, Hallaj was condemned to death in Baghdad, according to Ben Shohnah on account of a point of his doctrine concerning the pilgrimage to Mecca, for which he thought some other good works might be justly substituted, according to Sheheristâni and others, on account of having proclaimed himself to be God. During the infliction of one thousand stripes, followed by a gradual dismemberment of his whole body, he never ceased by words and acts, to give demonstrations of the most exstatic joy. The manner of his death is variously related.—(See Herbelot, and Tuskirat al aulta, by Farîd-eden in Tholuck's Blüthen sammlung aus morgenlän- discher Mystik, S. 314-327). Abu Yezid Bastami (before mentioned, p. 229, note) also used to salute himself as God. "Agriculturists," says Ghazali, "left their fields and assumed such a character; nature is delighted with speeches which permit works to be neglected, under the "illusion of purifying the heart by the attainment of certain degrees "and qualities." This opinion produced great evils, "so that," adds the said author in his indignation, "to put to death the lowest of those "who set forth such futile pretensions, is more consistent with God's "religion than to preserve the life of ten persons."—(See Pocock, first edit., pp. 268-269.)
Because care and fear derive from ascent and descent. Fear at ascending is in the expectation whether the ascent will succeed or not, but whoever disregards ascent and descent, and elevates himself above care and fear, he obtains tranquillity in tranquillity, and rectitude in rectitude. And the verse of the merciful is:

"Keep thyself upright as thou wast directed."

Hence is also understood, that the Sufi remains steadfast in the dignity of perfection, for rectitude is perseverance. O Muhammed! it is necessary; remain fixed in the dignity of professing the unity of God, which is free from the misfortune of inconstancy. And the verse of the merciful is:

"The day on which I perfected religion for your sake, and rendered complete my favor towards you."

This indicates clearly the meaning that, by this perfection also, the prophet (upon whom be the peace and the blessing of the most High!) is manifested. And those who, on account of the infinity of revelation, hold progress to be perpetual, are not right: because, as long as the sight is illuminated by the light of the revelation, the revelationists and the illuminated are still separate, and not yet become one: 'in this state there is duality and infidelity

---

1 As long as the Sufi is conscious of the least distinction between God and himself, he is not thoroughly penetrated by the unity of God. Here
in the individual who has not yet been liberated from the idea of something double in himself, and he to whom an atom of something else but that one remains attached is reckoned, by all professors of unity and by all perfect saints, to be one who gives partners to God or an infidel, and in a state of deficiency.

"It behoves thee to keep neither soul nor body,
And if they both remain, I do not remain;
As long as a hair of thee remains upon its place,
Know, by this one hair, thy foot remains fettered.
As long as thou playest not at once thy life,
I shall consider thee as polluted and impious."

* Why dost thou not thyself produce revelation, so that thou mayest always be illuminated? *

follows the translation of a passage taken from the Masnavi of the celebrated Jalal eddin Rumi, which passage, we may agree with Silvestre de Sacy, admirably expresses this mystic doctrine in the form of an apologue: "A man knocked at the door of his friend. The latter asked:
'Who art thou, my dear?'—'It is I.'—'In this case, be off; I cannot at present receive thee; there is no place at my board for one who is still raw; such a man cannot be sufficiently dressed (that is matured) and cured of hypocrisy, but by the fire of separation and refusal.' The unfortunate man departed. He employed a whole year in travelling, consuming himself in the flames of desire and affliction, caused by the absence of his friend. Matured and perfected by his long trial, he again approached the door of his friend and knocked modestly, fearful that an uncivil word might again fall from his own lips. —'Who is there?' was asked from the interior of the house.—
'Dear friend, it is thyself who art at the door.'—'Because it is myself, enter to-day; this house can contain no other than I.'"—(See Notices et Extraits des MSS., vol. XII. pp. 430-431, note 4).

* The words between asterisks are not joined in the text to the verses;
As this question, solved in this manner by me, humble individual, was very abstruse, I sent it to my friends, that, if there were occasion for further discussion, they might write to me, and thus the matter be better elucidated. God alone is all-sufficient; the rest is inordinate desire. What has been hitherto said is taken from the prince of the world (Dara shoko).

It should be known that, in the work Merās ed al ānāyet, "Observations upon the blessed favor," is stated, that the sect, which in their (exalted) feeling conquer the state of jazbet, jamā va vahedet, "attraction, union, and unity," have acquired, by means of the superiority of the manifest name (the quality of) exterior deity, and interior and hidden creation. This sect is called, in the language of the Sūfis, saheban-i-kereb-i-ferāis, "the masters of the they seem nevertheless to belong to them, although not in the metre of the other lines.

1 "tasting." from ذوق, "taste, delight," is above employed in a wide acception, and means in the technical language of the Sūfis an uncommon exaltation of the mind.

2 "attraction," is a mystical state, in which God attracts the saint, in order that he, an obedient servant, may direct his mind towards the side to which he is attracted, and may be inflamed in such a manner as to rise up towards heaven. The mojezub, "attracted," form a particular class of the Sūfis.—(See p. 250-251, note 1.)

3 "proximity," a technical term of the Sūfis, is referred to the words addressed by God to Muhammed: "adore and approach."—
proximity to divine "precepts," and this proximity is acknowledged to be that of divine precepts. This sect, which, on account of the proper meaning of the name of al bāten, "interior," may be brought into relation with expansive creation and hidden reality, this sect after jamā, "union," obtains fer kh, "division," and this is called kereb-i-navāšl, "proximity of supererogation." The lord Shaikh Muhammed Lāheji states that jamā, "union," is contrary to fer kh, "division;" and division is the veil of God before the creatures. Every one sees the creation, but acknowledges God to be without it; every one has the sight of God by means of the creation, that is, every one sees God, but the creation by itself affords no access to the sight of him.

(See p. 197). A man approaches God by all acts which may procure him happiness, and it is not God who approaches man, because God is always near all men, whether they be predestined to heaven or hell; but it is man who approaches God.

 Jame and  وریق are terms used in a particular sense by the Sufis. In the state of jamā, "union," the mystic sees but God and his unity; in the state of fer kh, "division," man enters again into the natural state, and occupies himself with good works and the fulfilment of precepts. He does even what is not prescribed conformably with this passage of the Koran (chap. XVII. v. 81): "Watch some part of the night in the same exercise (praying), as a work of supererogation for thee; peradventure thy Lord will raise thee to an honorable station." These two states (union and division) are necessary to the mystic. The following passage of the Koran is quoted as an authority for this doctrine: God testifies that there is no God but him; this is "union;" and the angels testify the same, as well as the men who possess the science; this is "division."
Besides, the Mariyam of the world, the Fátima of the time and ages, the purity of human kind, the protecting intelligence, Jehán ára "the ornament of the world," the begum, the lady, "the daughter of Abu 'l Muzafar Shiháb-u'd din Muhammed sáhib-Kirán sání Amir ul muslemin sháh Jehán písháh gházi, "the victorious lord, the bright star of religion, "Muhammed, a second Sáhib Kirán, the Amir of the believers, Shah Jehan, the conquering emperor, having secretly followed, by the desire of her heart, the injunctions of the blessed Mullá shah, turned her face to the right rule, and attained her wish, the full knowledge of God. One of the wonderful speeches of this blessed and exalted personage, whom the author of this book knew, is the following: In the year of the Hejira 1057 (A. D. 1647) Mullá shah came to the house of a friend in Hyderábád. One of the persons present, by way of reproving allusion, began to ask questions about the hurt which the bégum of the lord received by fire. The teacher of morality said to him: "A slight garment imbibed with oil, when it takes fire, is easily burnt;" in such a manner came the misfortune upon the most pure form of her majesty. This person laughed and continued to revile. By accident, somebody came from the house of this person and said: "What, art thou sitting here, whilst thy sister is burnt, because fire fell upon her gar-
ment." The master observed: "In such a man-
er, I said, befell misfortune on the illustrious princess; God has shown it to thee."

"The lamp which God has lighted,
"Whoever blows it out burns his beard."

The Sufi Mulla Ismâîl Isfahání, seeking enjoyment, came from Iran to the great towns of India, and in Lahore visited the lord Mián Mîr; he chose the condition of a Dervish, and from Lahore soon betook himself to Kashmir, where he abandoned the worldly affairs, and practised pious austerity. The author of this book saw him in Kashmir, in the year of the Hejira 1049 (A. D. 1639). The following verse is by him:

"I knocked down every idol which was in my way,
"No other idol remains to my veneration but God himself."

From Mîrzâ Muhammad Makîm, the jeweller, the information was received that Mîr Fakher eddin Muhammed Tafresî was occupied in Kashmir with reviling and reproving Mulla Ismâîl and Fakher, and said: "These belong to the infidels, and are des-
tined to hell." Mulla Ismâîl answered: "In this state I withheld my hand from worldly affairs, 
and in this world never was associated to thee; 
in like manner in the future world, as, according 
to thy opinion, we are infidels, and go to hell, and 
not to heaven with thee; therefore it behoves thee 
to be satisfied and content with us, as we have left
"to thee the present and the future world. The Mobed says:

"The pious and the idolaters are satisfied with us, as we
"Are not ourselves their partners, neither in this nor in the other world;
"Enmity arises from partnership; we, with the intention of friendship,
"Gave up the future, and follow the present world."

Mírzá Muhammed Mokim, the jeweller, further said: A person gave bad names to Fakheraye Fál; the latter, looking towards him, gave him no answer. When we asked him the reason of his silence, he replied: "A man moved his lips, and "agitated the air; what does that concern me?"

Fakher, the ornament of mankind, was not much addicted to religious austerity, but gave himself up to counselling, reforming, and correcting others. He assumed the surname of Tarsa, "timid, or un-"believer;" he called the Journal of his travels, Dair-namah, "Journal of a tavern (also monastery)."

In this Journal are the following lines:

"I met upon my road with a bitch,
"Like a dog guided by scent in the circle of a chase.
"Her paw was colored with blood,
"In the middle of the road she lay like a tiger;
"Impelled either by wild instinct or necessity,
"She had made her own whelp the aliment of life.
"At the sight of so strange a scene,
"I restrained my hand from striking, and opening my lips,
"I said: 'O dog, what desirest thou to do?
"Upon thy own heart why inflicting all this pain?',
"Searce had the tip of my tongue perforated the pearl of the secret,
"When her tail was agitated, and she said:
"O thou who art not informed of thy own state,
How shall I give thee an account of my condition?"
"When the words of the dog came upon my ear,
A resplendent sun fell into my mind.
In the sense of (these words indicative of the dog’s) insanity,
My own sense found the authority of a precept."
"The desire of wandering in the garden left my heart,
Which assumed the quality of a tulip and a deep mark;
It saw nothing upon the path of profligacy
But the privation of remedies.
I said again to her: ‘O lion-like dog,
The morning-breeze learns from thee rapidity:
Manifest to me the state of thy heart,
Exhibit to me the form of its history.’
She gave a howl, and, emitting lamentations:
Rendered testimony of her own secret condition:
I devoured the blood of the offspring of my own womb
That nobody might place a weight upon my head."

In the year of the Hejira 1056 (A. D. 1647),
according to information received, Fakhera Tarsa
left his old habitation in Ahmed ábad of Guzerat.
The father of the Durvish, the pious Sabjáni, was
an inhabitant of Hirát, but he was born in India.
This illustrious person made a great proficiency
in the sciences of philosophy and history, and ac-
quired also a fortune; but he at last turned his
face from it, and chose retirement and solitude; for

يافذ دران مرغ زيرانكسي
مرغ دلم منصب پوئرانكسي

Literally: "In this bird from insanity the bird of my heart found the
station of a command." It is known that murgh, "birds," among
other significations, has that of "the heart, the understanding."
many years he followed the footsteps of a perfect spiritual guide; he travelled to see monasteries and hermitages, until he became the disciple of Shaikh Mujed eddín Muhammed Balkhí Kâderí, who was free, virtuous, and remote from the world. The said Shaikh read the whole work of Shaikh Mohíeddín Arabí before his master, and his master perused it likewise with Shaikh Sader eddin Kautíví, who had heard the whole of it from Shaidh Mohíeddín. This pious Sabjáni frequently expounded the words of the lord Rais ul Mohedín, "the chief of the believers of divine unity," Shaikh Mohíeddín Arabí, and those of the best Súfís, and as he was carried to the very limit of evidence, he found them conformable with the doctrine of the Platonists. The godly Sabjána studied the whole work of the celebrated Shaikh in the service of his perfect master. After this attendance, having resigned every thing into the hands of the fortunate Shaikh, he turned his face entirely to sanctity, and lived a considerable time retired in solitude, until his master declared to him: Now, thou hast attained perfection. The pious Sabjáni keeps nothing with him but the cover of his privities; he abstains from eating the flesh of any animal; he asks for nothing; if any sustenance be left near him, provided it be not animal food, he takes a little of it; he venerates the mosques and the
temples of idols; and he performs in butgadah, "house of idols," according to the usage of the Hindus, the puja and dandavet, "worship and prostration," that is, the religious rites, but in the mosques he conforms in praying after the manner of the Muselmans; he never abuses the faith and rites of others; nor gives he one creed preference over another; he always practises abstinence, but at times he breaks the fast with some fruits from the mountains, such as pine-kernels, and the like; he takes no pleasure in demonstrations of honor and magnificence to him, nor is he afflicted by disdain and contempt, and in order to remain unknown to men, he dwells in the Kohistan, "mountainous country" of the Afgháns and Kafris, and the like. The Kafris are a tribe from Kabulistan, and are called Kafer Katóris, who before lived upon mountains, in deserts and forests, remote and concealed from others.

The author of this book saw Sabjání in the year of the Hejira 1046 (A. D. 1636) in upper Bangash. This personage never sleeps at night, but sits awake in deep meditation; every one who sees him would take him for a divine being. Shaikh Sâdi says:

1 But-gadah appears to me to have been corrupted into pagoda, the modern name of a Hindu temple in popular language. This name has also been derived from bhagavata, but, if I am not mistaken, with less probability.
Sabjání appears a (divine) revelation in his actions, steps, attributes, and nature, and to have attained the summit of perfection. He said that, with respect to the other world, there are several classes of men. The one denies the absolute being; another interprets it in an abstract manner of reasoning, inasmuch as they have sufficient intelligence to be modest and conciliating. The distinguished Súfis, without interpreting the different systems of nations, which, in their separate creeds of various kinds and religions, differ about the before-said object, view in the bodies the agreeableness of imagery. Khízír, Elías, Brahma, Ganésa, and all the gods of India, these and the like representations, which in this world have no reality, all are distinct objects of imagination. Essential is what was said by Abu Nazer Farábi (may God illumine his grave!) that the common people view their creeds under the form of their imagination. The author of this book heard also from the lord, the pious Sabjání: The contemplative man sees every one whom he loves and esteem, frequently in dreams in a beautiful shape, and in an exalted state, although to other people he may appear iniquitous; and the person whom he

1 See page 292-293, note 1.
knows to be depraved, will often be viewed by him in a repulsive condition, although to the crowd he may appear glorious and powerful. Hence follows, that the learned among the contemplative persons make use of a negative argument in their creed, in order that it may become evident what the truth really is. When any one sees a person of high rank, such as a prophet, an Imam, or any dignified individual, in a state of some deficiency, he views his own defects in his understanding, spirit, heart, or nature; and as these things are but seeming defects in the great personage, he must endeavor to remove them from himself. In like manner, if one sees a person in good health (appearing to him) in a state of illness, there is illness in his own state, and if he thinks him bad with regard to his own faith, he ought to be somewhat disposed to think that person good.

A disciple demanded some employment from Sajjâni. The master asked him: "Hast thou devoted thyself to piety?" The answer was: "I have." Then Sajjâni said: "If thou art a Muselman, go to the Franks, and stay with that people; if thou art a Nazarean, join the Jews; if a Sonni, betake thyself to Irak, and hear the speeches and reproaches of those men; if thou professest to be a Shiâh, mix with the schismatics, and lend thy ear to their words; in this manner, what-
ever be thy religion, associate with men of an opposite persuasion; if, in hearing their dis-courses thou feelest but little disturbed, thy mind keeps the tenor of piety; but if thou art not in the least moved and mixest with them like milk and sugar, then certainly thou hast attained the highest degree of perfect peace, and art a master of the divine creation."

Yusef was a man belonging to the tribe of Durds, and in his youth a hermit; at last, by his efforts, he found access to the intellectual world, and by the grace of God he carried it so far, that he was ranged among the disciples called Sanyásis, on account of their piety and knowledge, and among the learned followers of the celebrated master, who dwelt in Bárahmúlah, a village in Kachmir. It so happened that, when he devoted himself to his service, he found what he was in search of. Shaikh At'ar says:

"An unbeliever becomes a relation by love;
"A lover acquires the high sense of a dervish."

Having known many countries and persons, he became impressed with the marks of revelations. So it happened that the author of this book heard from him what follows: "One night I saw in a

1 The Durds are the inhabitants of the mountainous country to the west of Kachmir.
I dream that the world was deluged by water; there remained no trace of a living being, and I was myself immersed in the water. In the midst of this state I saw a kingly rider come, sitting upon his horse upon the surface of the water. When he came near me, he said to me: ‘Come with me that I may save thee.’ I replied: ‘Who art thou?’ He answered: ‘I am the self-existing being, and creator of all things.’ Then I began to follow him rapidly, and run along the surface of the water, until I arrived in a garden. There I put my foot on the ground, and, directing my sight to the right, I beheld a delightful spot, full of all sorts of odoriferous herbs and elevated palaces, huris (beautiful virgins), kas urs (bridal chambers), and youths and boys, and all the gifts of heaven, as well as the blessed, occupied with enjoyments. Besides, at the left, I saw pits, black, narrow, and tenebrious; and therein, like bats, suspended a crowd of miserable beings whose hands and feet were tied to the neck. The horseman, after having invited me to a pleasure-walk in the garden, wanted to conduct me out of the delightful place, but I had resolved in myself that, like Idris, I would not go out of it. Then I stuck close to the door, and took fast hold of the post. When I awoke from sleep, I found my lips held fast by both my hands; and thus it was
revealed to me that, whatever is, exists within mankind itself.

“Demand from thyself whatever thou wishest: for thou art every thing.”

It is related: That there was a man called Baháder among the Hindus, and he happened to have no male offspring in his house; therefore he came to Baba Yúsef, and demanded his benediction. Baba Yúsef gave him a bit of white earth, and said to him: “Let thy wife eat it.” When the man had done as was enjoined him, a boy was born in his house, and received the name of Rahu. This individual, by the favor of the friends of God, became a learned man, and acquired the surname of “independent,” as was said in the chapter of the Jnanian.

The Mulla, called Umer, prohibited Baba Yúsef to listen to music, and whatever gentle entreaties Baba Yúsef employed, he paid no attention to them; at last the Babá, in the perturbation of his mind, threw a small fragment of stone upon him; in such a manner that Mulla Umer lost his senses for some time; when he recovered, he prostrated himself before the Baba, went out, and was no more seen.

Yúsef, the inspired, was a durvish, devoted to the practice of restraining his breath, which he carried so far that he kept his breath during four watches.

1 We find nothing upon this Rahu in the preceding pages.
(twelve hours). One of his friends said to the author of this book in Kachmir, that Yusef during a length of time ate nothing at all. The friend related: 'I went one night to watch with him; he said to me: 'Go and eat something.' I replied: 'I will; but it would be well that thou also shouldst take something to eat and to drink.' His answer was: 'Thou art not able to satisfy my want of food.' I assured him: 'I am able.' He then ordered: 'Go, bring what thou hast.' I went home and brought him a great dish full of rice, a large cup of coagulated milk, with bread and other eatables, as much as might have been sufficient for ten gluttons; he eat up every thing, and said: 'Bring something more.' I went home, prepared a meal for twenty persons, and with the aid of the people of the house, brought it to him. He eat it up, and desired more. I returned home, and carried to him meats half cooked and other things. He eat up all, and said: 'Bring more.' I fell at his feet; he called out: 'Have I not said to thee that thou wouldst not be able to satisfy my want of food.'

One of his disciples related: Yusef said, that he

---

1 The practice of holding the breath, often mentioned in this work, is founded upon the belief, that to each man a certain number of respirations is allotted: the less he breathes the longer he lives. — (Shakespeare's Dictionary, p. 365.)
has seen God the Almighty in the shape of a man, sitting in his house. The author of this book frequented the society of many contemplative pious Sufis, and learned men of this sect, elevated in rank; if he should relate all he knows of them, he would have to write a copious work.

To sum up precisely the creed of all these sects, it may be said, that some do not agree upon beings perceived and beings probable, but all acknowledge the existence of appearances. These are called Sufistāyah, and in Persian Samrādī. All those who believe all ought to be comprehended in what is perceived, and deny any reality to things probable (or to the subjects of reason), are named Tāblāyah, "physiologists," in Persian, Mansī. The belief of the latter is, that the world is composed of things perceived, and of individuals, children of Adam, and that animals are like plants: the one dries, the other shoots up afresh, and this occurrence will be repeated without end. Enjoyment is comprehended in eating, drinking, women, vehicles, and the like, and besides this world there is no other existence. Some agree upon the existence of things perceived and things probable, but differ upon the limits and laws. These are entitled Filasafī-ī-dahriah, "secular philosophers," in Persian Jayakari, "attached to temporariness." This sect establishes a world of probabilities (composed) of nothing but things
perceived, but they believe also the perfection proper to mankind is that, after a certain knowledge of an Almighty Creator, they attain the future spiritual existence in an exalted station of the rational world, and become blessed with an abundance of every beatitude; they acknowledge a powerful intrinsic virtue of the intellect in the acquisition of this everlasting beatitude, which, with the essence of wisdom, has no want of another gift of any sort whatever. Disgrace means the opposition to the mode of laudable reason, and law is the mode in which the wise have settled the common affairs of the individuals of mankind conformably with rectitude.

There is another sect which, assuming the conviction of a material and immaterial world, and the power of reason, believe in a prophet, and say, that these distinguished persons have established the law for the good of God's creatures and the order of cities; and to that effect they possess a knowledge of the highest and most perfect kind; they are supported by the self-existing Being for the establishment of regulations and the decision of what is legal and forbidden, and what they announce concerning the world of spirits, angels, the ninth heaven, the throne of God, the tables of destiny, the written characters, and the like, are all ingenious inventions, rendered sensible to the understanding of the vulgar under forms which strike the imagina-
tion and offer tangible bodies; in this manner, in the account of the other world, they represent figuratively paradise, and hûris, kasîurs, rivers, birds, and fruits, merely with the intention of subduing the hearts of the vulgar, as allurement often renders their minds inclined to the proposed ends. And what they relate of chains, bolts, and hell, is calculated for alarming and terrifying the people. This class of men, that is the philosophers, direct also their hints and interpretation to this object, and their disciples say, that their wish is to follow the indicated footsteps of the prophet; these are the pious sages to whom they give the title of "philosophers of God," and in Persian Jánsâyi, "the polishers of souls."

The sect which adopts the material and immaterial world, adopts also the precepts of reason, but not the laws of the prophet. These are named Sâbîah.\footnote{Sheheristâni derives the name Sâbi'a from the Syriac verb sabâ, "to love, to desire." It has also been deduced from saba, "a host," (meaning the stars); commonly it means "an apostate from another religion;" so was called Mohammed for having abandoned this very Sâbían religion, before him dominant in Arabia, to which religion, however, he granted protection in his Koran, associating it there with Judaism and Christianism. According to Maimonides (who died A.D. 1208), this religion was very ancient, and once pervaded nearly the whole world. It is said to have been founded by Seth, Adam's son (who is also called the Egyptian Agathodémon, master of Hermes), whose son was Sa'bi.' It} Another sect agrees to the material and im-
material world, and to the precepts of religious reason, but they say that the law of the prophet is

was propagated by Enoch (also Hermes). The most ancient books of this creed are reported to be written in the language which Adam and his sons spoke: the Arabians still show a book of Seth. The original religion of the Sabaians consisted in the veneration of the stars and of angels, and coincided in its principal notions with the ancient system of the Persians, as described in vol. I. Pursuant to Sheheristâni, the Sabaïans were worshippers of chapels and of images. The bodies of the seven planets they called chapels; these they held to be inhabited by intelligences, by which they were animated in the same manner as our bodies are by souls. They observed the rising, setting, and motion of the stars, for the division of time, and, mixing superstitious notions and rites with their observations, made seals and talismans, and used incantations and particular prayers; they not only built chapels of different figures, but also formed images of different metals appropriated to each of the planets: by the mediation of the images they had access to the chapels; by means of the chapels to the intelligences or lords; and by aid of these to the supreme God, the Lord of lords. In this manner they held the planets to be inferior deities, mediators between man and the supreme God. According to the before-mentioned Maimonides, they acknowledged no deities except the stars, among which the sun was the greatest. Abul faraj says that they firmly believed the unity of God.

Among the sects of this religion is that of the Harbanists, or Harbanites: these believe one God manifesting himself in different bodies, heavenly and terrestrial, his creatures; he committed the government of the inferior world to the first: these are the fathers, the elements the mothers, and the compound beings the children of both. After the period of 36,425 years, the universe perishes; nature is then renewed by a couple of each species of beings; thus centuries succeed each other, and there is not any other resurrection.

Sabaiism must be distinguished as ancient and modern. The first, especially if so remote as it is said to be, can but have imparted, and the other owe, more than one notion, dogma, and rite to Judaism, Christianism, and Muhammedism, all which may be considered as divisions of one and the same Asiatic religion. Thus, in all the four reli-
to be conformable with reason, and every prophet who appears is not to be opposed to his predecessor, and not self-complacently to exalt his law: these are the Yezdaniān. Some adopt the law of tradition, which others, with respect to literal meaning, reject as contrary to reason.

It is known that there are five great religions, viz.: that of the Hindus, Jews, Magians, Nazareans, and Muselmans. Each of these five profers claims that their law is the true one, and set forth demonstrations for the confirmation of its truth.

Finally, at the conclusion of this book let it be said that, according to the statement of some excellent personages, every thing relating to religion and law has been exhibited in the work *Tabs eret ul dvam,* "Rendering the Vulgar quick-sighted;" but at

gions, the same patriarchs and the same books, such as the Psalter, are venerated; the Sabians have a sort of baptism, as the Christians; they believe that angels and intelligences, these movers of the universe, perform the same office which the Muhammadans ascribe to the patriarchs and prophets, they venerate with the latter the temple of Mecca; they perform, however, their principal pilgrimage to a place near Harran (the ancient Carru) in Mesopotamia; they honor also the pyramids of Egypt, and say, that Sa’bi, son of Seth or Enoch, is buried in the third. They turn their face in praying towards the arctic pole.

Several Oriental authors have treated of this religion. To those mentioned in this note, I shall only add Abulfeda and Mohib eddin Abu ’l Valid Muhammad, ben Kamal eddin, at Hanefi, mostly known under the surname of Ben Shanah, who collected most particular information about this religion. — (See Pococke, *Spec. Hist. Arab.*, p. 438 et seq., 1st edit., and Herbelot).
present this is not before the eyes of the author; on that account its contents remain unknown to him. The author begs further to say that, after having greatly frequented the meetings of the followers of the five before-said religions, he wished and undertook to write this book, and whatever in this work treating of the religions of countries has been stated, concerning the creed of different sects, had been received from the tongue of the chiefs of those sects or from their books, and, as to the account of the persons belonging to any particular sect, the author wrote down the information which had been imparted to him by their adherents and sincere friends, in such a manner that no trace of partiality nor aversion might be perceived; in short, the writer of these pages performed nothing more than the office of a translator.

"The purport of a picture is, that it may remain after me,
"As I do not see my existence lasting."

Thus, by the aid of the generous King, was brought to a conclusion the printing of this work, entitled Dabistán al Mazāheb, "the school of sects," in the month of October of the year 1809, since the Messiah's being carried to heaven,¹ the prophet, upon

¹ The Muhammedans do not believe that the crucifixion of Jesus Christ did really take place, but that God transported his soul and body to heaven, whilst an unfortunate man exactly like the Messiah in appearance was, instead of him, crucified by the Jews.
whom be the blessing (of heaven), which corresponds to the sacred month of Zi 'l Kādah, "the "penultimate month of the Muhammedans," of the year 1224 of the Hejira of Muhammed, upon whom be the most excellent blessings and veneration, as well as upon his family and companions. Glory to God for his benefits! at the final conclusion.

END OF THE DABISTAN.
EPILOGUE

OF

MOULAVI NAZER USHRUF,

Editor of the Persian text of the Dabistán, printed in Calcutta.¹

In the name of the bountiful and merciful God.

After the praise of God, who is acquainted with things future and invisible, who painted the tables of existence of mankind, and in the Dabistán exhibited the truths of things by the information of names and by the representations of intellect, and put his mark thereupon; who bestowed on man, susceptible of guidance, the pittance of the verse:

"Whom we had taught wisdom from before us."²

He, the unity in whose being all the imaginable unities are lost, and the multitudes of contrary sects and religions are the exhibitions of his attributes.

QUATRAIN.

"Neighbor, companion, and fellow-traveller, all is he;
"In the habit of a beggar, and in the satin of a King, all is he;"

¹ See Preliminary Discourse, vol. I. part iii. § 2.
² Koran, chap. XVIII. v. 64.
"He is in the concourse of divisions and concealed in the mansion of reunion;
"By God all is he; certainly, by God, all is he."

Prayers of the pious, salutations of the saints, sacrifice for the holy spirits of the prophets and apostles, \textit{blessing and peace be upon our prophet and upon them!} who are the guides of the roads, those who walk before us on the ways, parts of the whole.

The meanest of the weak servants in the post of ignorance, taking upon himself to offer a noble present to the lordship of the country of God’s creatures in the empire of positive truths, and of the throne-ornaments belonging to the district of subtilties, represents, that the power of the omniscient and bountiful God (be his majesty displayed and his mercy diffused upon all!), has gratified the species of mankind, according to the exigency of natural genius, and the propensity of mind; and according to the choice of a special rule and the assumption of a particular religious opinion of each, in such a manner that a troop, having been invested with the garment of lawful religion, and another people with the golden texture of a convenient doctrine, they may become the manifestations of the lights of his perfect power and glorious miracle, and he knew by immediate knowledge, that such various kinds and cameleon-like forms, by which the inscrutable essence of his majesty can be viewed by glimpses,
are means of possessing eternal beatitude, and obtaining the blessings of another world, inasmuch as the meanest of those who acquire the beauties of knowledge having arrived from the defile of ignorance and listlessness to the large expanse of the city of science and knowledge, may enjoy the advantages of concord, friendship, and society with each other.

In this manner, one day, when the discourse fell upon this subject in the service of the master of favour, the head of the sages of the age, the unequalled jewel of the multitude of the possessors of beneficence, the ornament of the council of experience and of success, the splendor of the assembly of the distinction of merit and of happiness, the man of exalted designs, knowing the enigmas of science and wisdom, and endowed with eminent virtues, William Bayley Saheb,¹ (may his prosperity be everlasting in the ways of celebrity), I expressed my sentiments as follows: That which embraces the different tenets and sects, demonstrating in what respects they are either agreeing or conflicting with each other, is an object not destitute of difficulty nor of pretension; but the book called Dabistân, is incomparable for the assemblage of various tenets, and of general and particular creeds. Direction was therefore given that, as to execute the trans-

¹ William Butterworth Bayley, Esq., now a director of the Hon. East India Company.—(See Preliminary Discourse, vol. 1. part III. § 2.)
cription of such a book is, on account of the errors which may be committed, an object of hesitation and reflection, it should therefore be drawn in the form of print. As obedience to the order of a lord is praiseworthy, necessary, important, and not devoid of various manifest advantages, therefore was printed the before-said copy, which is replete with the fundamentals of each religion and sect, and a collection of the dogmas of all creeds and sects explicitly and distinctively, in order to diffuse the useful notes and disseminate the precious gems in such a manner, that the colleagues in study may derive from the reading of this work an abundant advantage, and a sufficient satisfaction. Thus, a multitude of copies in this country, which came under the view of the editor, contained numerous errors, alterations, and contradictions of vicious expressions; afterwards, with extreme care and pains to obtain the authentic copy which had come into my possession from the town of the King of the World (Delhi), the doubts and faults have been, as much as possible, discarded, and the editor carried it to a manifest correction. Besides, on account of different idioms and technical phrases of each sect, the understanding and interpretation of frequent expressions of this book were difficult without having recourse to dictionaries; on that account, and for the convenience of those who consider and the utility of those who investigate,
the editor, having inquired and examined as much as was possible, by means of the most esteemed books, such as dictionaries, interpretations, and commentaries of the learned of each sect, fixed the meaning of difficult words at the end of this book in some separate leaves, in such a manner that, without trouble and useless prolixity, the brides of those ideas may become manifest upon the exalted bridal seats of intelligence. Moreover, for ranging the vocables, the editor adopted the mode that under the first letter should be placed the chapter, and under the second letter the section, and he appended this vocabulary to the end of the book. He made also a list of errata, and concluded with an epilogue, in order that all those who reason and discuss upon these typical matters, may have the facility of understanding them. Thus, from God we expect grace and certain direction to righteousness and to favour.

1 This is an allusion to the custom according to which, when the nuptials of distinguished persons are celebrated, the bride, in her most magnificent attire is exposed to the multitude upon an elevated seat, or in a palanquin carried through the streets.
INDEX

Of proper names and technical terms contained in the three volumes of the English translation of the Dabistan.

The Roman numerals refer to the volume; the Arabic figures to the pages; n. to notes with their number.

AADL (Mella) of Kashghar, vol. II. pp. 334, 349, 353.
Ahmed, the favorite wife of Muhammad, III. 57 — accompanies the prophet on an expedition — remains behind on a night-march — is suspected; censured by Ali, against whom she conceives great hatred, 100 — called Sidiakah — married when nine years old — after Muhammad's death the head of a party — wages war upon Ali — taken in battle — generously treated — dies forty-five years after the prophet — her traditions of Muhammad, 213.
Aalemegir (see Aureng-zeb).
Aalem al Jabrut, “the world of “spirits,” III. 239 n. 2 — the highest empyreal heaven, 248 — the world of power, 267, 269.
Aalem al Malk, “the world of “God’s throne,” III. 239 n. 2, 268.
Aalem al Malkut, “the world of “images,” III. 239 n. 2.
Abrafl, its various signification, III. 149 n. 1.
Abab, title of the king of Kohistan, II. 452.

Abad, king, I. 20, 21.
Abad Azad, king of the second dy- nasty, succeeding the Mahab- dian — retires from the world — his time described, I. 22, 23, 28.
Abadian, a sect of the Persian reli- gion, I. p. 6.
Aban, name of an angel and a month, I. p. 61, 62 n. — the Angel of Water, 270 n. 296 n.
Abas, son of Muhammad Mirza, king of Persia, II. 146 n. 1.
Abas (Shah), son of Khodabendah Safavi, II. 146 — persecutes the Yahadiah, III. 23 — attached to the religion of Ali, 24 n. 1 — reduced the Kurja to order, 438.
Abbasides (Khalifs), the duration and end of their dominion, II. 450 n.
Abenamia, a Saracen, translator of Aristotle, III. 307 n. 1.
Abdallah, son of Aamar, governor of Basra, III. 55.
Abdallah, son of Serj, III. 55.
Abdallah, son of Sad (or Said), son of Abu Serh (or Jerh), III. 55 n. 2.
Abdallah, son of Wahab, son of Saba, II. 336 n. 2.
INDEX.

Abd-alah Kalahi, a Muhammedan theologian, II. 329.
Abdallah Kuteb Shah, sovereign in a part of India, II. 70.
Abd-’ul Khader, son of Ahmad, succeeds to his father—attacks and puts to flight Zafr Khan, II. 43, 46—submits to Shah Jehan, 47—date of his death, ibid.
Abdal mothleb, an ancestor of Muhammed, clears the well of Zemzem, near Mecca, III. 15 n.
Abd-’ul Kader Bédavani, an interlocutor with Abu ’l Fazil, III. 96.
Abd-ul Malik Atâs, an Ismâilî, protector of Hassan Sabah, II. 429.
Abdul Nabi, a distinguished lawyer of the Sonnites, under the reign of Akbar, declares the taking of nine wives to be legal, III. 87.
Abd-ul rahmen ben Ahmed Jami (Mawlana), II. 334—a short account of him, ibid., n. 1, 344.
Abd-ur-rahmen, a Mâvi, the founder of the dynasty of Ommiades, in Spain, II. 364 n. 4.
Abdur-Rahman, son of Maljam, the assassin of Ali, II. 357 n. 2.
Abhi Chand, translator of a part of the Mosaic book, II. 299, 360.
Abhimana, selfish conviction, II. 10 n. 3.
Abhya, constant repetition, II. 124 n. 3.
Abhyasa, contemplation, II. 124 n. 4.
Abhyásayoga, contemplation, II. 124 n. 4.
Abi al Abas Kalânas, a Muhammedan theologian, II. 329.
Abîn, of the lineage of Jemshid, I. 88.
Abitu, receives instructions from Jemshid, I. 194.
Abu Abd allah Jahâr, ben Abd allah al Ansari, III. 233 n. 3.
Abu Ali, physician and author (see Avisenna), quoted, I. 43.
Abu Ali, an adherent to Hassan Sabah, sends a body of men to the relief of the fort Alamut, II. 437.
Abu Ali, Vizir appointed by Hassan Sabah, in Alamut, II. 441.
Abu Ali Hussain, son of Abdullah Sina—his history, II. 168—his birth, 169 n. 1—cures Amir Nuh—goes to Khurasan, ibid.—obliged to fly to Abyverd—Georgia—cures a love-sick prince, 170, 171—repairs to Rai—to Kazvin—to Hamadan—becomes a Vizir, 172—obliged to abscond—raised again to the Vizirat—composes a great work upon medicine, 173—is brought to Isfahan—dies in Hamadan, 174 n. 2—was never in Kachmir, 175.
Abu bekker (Khalîf), I. 98—an account of his deeds, reign, and death, 98, 99 n. 4; II. 332, 341.
Abu Hashem, the first Muhammedan Suli, III. 221 n.
Abu Jâfr, Vakîl of the invisible Imam, II. 394.
Abu Jâfr Almansor, the second Khalîf of the Abbasides, II. 398 n. 399.
Abu Jâfre Tusi—his account of the Muhammedan sects, II. 363, 379.
Abu ’l Bashr, name of Gilshah, I. 29.
Abu ’l Fâzil (Shaikh), the minister of Akbar, ordered to interpret several foreign works, III 92, 93—author of the Ayn Akbari—murdered by order of the prince Jehangir, ibid. n. 1—he received the sacred fire from Akbar, 95—placed confidence in Azar Kaivan, 96—his opinion about authors of books, ibid.—composes a sermon, 101—writes imperial ordinances, 121, 127—a book of advice to king Abbas Safavi, 136.
INDEX.

Afrād, "rudimental units," III. 47.
Afrasiab, king of Turan, extraordinary, power of retaining his breath, II. 130 — concealed in a cavern—taken by Hum—dived into water—drawn out and killed by Khusro, ibid. n. 1.
Agama, a work on sacred science, II. n. 2.
Agastya, a star, and a saint—swallows the sea—makes the waters subsist, II. 34 — his birth, ibid. n. 1 — lowers the Vindhya range of mountains, ibid.
Agathius, quoted, I. 299 n.
Agatho demon, III. 105 n. 1 — an Egyptian king, Knef—the good principle—the inoffensive serpent—Chetnuph, 106 n.
Aghlan herbi, a chief of the Moghuls—how he punishes the negligence of two Moghul soldiers, III. 115.
Aghush, the first king of the Arsacides, I. 225 n.
Agni, or Yahi, regent between south and east, II. 219.
Agni chakra, the circle of fire, one of the six regions of the human body, II. 151.
Agni Pramāna, "the professors of fire," II. 243.
Agnish toma, sacrifice of a goat to Agni, II. 82 — a sacrifice of five days, ibid. n. 1.
Ahādis, "traditions," II. 380 n. 1.
Ahalāya, daughter of Gautama, II. 68.
Ahankara, a sphere, II. 10 — three modes of it, 13.
Ahīdād, son of Jelāl-eddin, son of Bayezid, receives the title of Rashid Khan, and is appointed to a command—the date of his death, III. 47.
Ahinsa, harmlessness, II. 123 n. 9.
Ahmadai of Tiran, a follower of Mardak's creed, I. 378.
Ahmed, one of the names of Muhammad, II. 456 n. 2.
Ahmed, son of Nizam ul mulk, sent against the Ismā'īlīs, II. 439.
Ahmed, surnamed Almīstālī, son of Montaser, II. 430 — his whole title Abūl Kasem Ahmed al-mīstālī billah, ibid. n. 3.
Ahmed Tavī (Mulla), author of the work Khālasa al hayāt, quoted, II. 160.
Ahmud-jah, the first additional day of the Persian year, I. p. 62 n.
Ahnu Khushi, mechanics, I. 30 n.
Ahrā, name of a nosh of the Zand-avesta, I. 275.
Ahrīman, evil demon, I. 9 — embellished in a hawk, 73 — different statements concerning him, 233, 236 n.
Ahrīman, evil principle, produced by Time—antecedent to Ormuzd, I. 236 n. 334 and n. 2 — proceeds from apprehension, suspicion, or envy, 337 — to last only for a certain period, 337, 338 and n. — an associate of darkness, 359.
Ah san Ulla, surnamed Zafer Khan, son of Khājah Abu 'l Hassan Tābrizī, a Moghul general, acts against Miyān Āhdād, III. 44.
Ahvâyī ālum al din, "the revival of the sciences of faith," a work of Ghazālī, recommended for perusal in Akbar's ordinances, III. 123.
Ajapa, a particular mantra, II. 133 n. 2.
Aid, "feast," III. 262.
Aid ʿītr, "the feast of breaking fast," III. 261 n. 1.
Aid Kurban, "the feast of sacrifice," III. 264 n. 1.
Ajem explained, I. 146 n. 1.
Aikāb, "vicissitude," III. 284.
Ain ul Kazat, quoted, III. 262, 263.
Ajnāyākhyām, the union of the coronal and sagittal sutures, II. 131.
Aisha Girda, a Sanyāsi, adept in restraining the breath, II. 447 — skilled in magic and sleight of hand, 148.
Aisuyah (Christians), II. 308—their

Ak, asclepias gigantea, II. 80.

Akalis, "the immortals," a distinguished class of the Sikhs, II. 288 n. 1.

Akannath, a yogi and saint — believed to have lived two thousand years — his speeches before Jehangir, II. 116, 147 — went to Mecca — returns to Hindostan, 118.

Akas, ether, II. 39 — space, 40, n. 1.

Akba Abdullah, son of Sod, son of Abi Serj, III. 56.

Akbar (emperor), his code quoted, II. 163.

Akbar, Jelal-eddin, son of Hamayun and of Banu Begam — date of his birth, III. 49 — permits and provokes religious disputes before him, 50, 97 — his own creed exhibited, 73 — the practices enjoined by him, 83, 86 — establishes the worship of the stars, ibid. — excludes a number of children from society, to their fourteenth year, when they are found to be dumb, 91 — approves the worship of the ancient kings of Persia, 91 — says prayers to the sun, 94 — forbids the killing of cows, 95 — invites fire-worshippers to his court, and establishes the preservation of perpetual fire, ibid. — orders the fixation of a new sentence of profession, 97 — proclaims a new faith, 98 — a new era, 99 — further regulations of Akbar, 102, 103, 104, 121 to 136 — writes a book of advice to king Abas Safavi, 136 — remarkable speech of Akbar, 137 — employs men of all nations in his service, 138.

Akkarah, a Dakhani word for a sort of sacrificial wood, II. 80.


Akhbar Nabi, "History of the Prophets," quoted, II. 367.

Akhlak Nas'eri, "a Treatise upon "Morals," composed by Nasir-eddin, II. 447, n. 2 — recommended for perusal in Akbar's ordinances, III. 123.

Akhori, a sect, II. 129.

Akkhahater-jah, the fourth additional day of the Persian year, I. 62 n.

Akhshi (Moped), a Persian, founder of a sect — his epoch — opinion, I. 208, 209.

Akhshiyan, a sect, I. 208.

Akhxtaristan, a work containing the Sipasian tenets, I. 35 — a description of the worship and class of worshippers of each planet, ibid. 35 to 41, 42.

Akhun (Mulla) Derwezech, author of the Makkan Ajfsan, a compilation on the ritual and moral practice of Islam, III. 47 n. 1, 48 n.

Akhyar, "the best," III. 265 n.

Aki, "wisdom," its various acceptations, III. 141 n. 2.

Aki Fall, "superior wisdom," III. 181, 202, 203.

Aki Kulli, "the universal spirit," III. 283.

Akman, sect who kill and eat men, II. 129.

Akni, the south-east region, II. 35.

Aksa, name of a mosque, II. 339.

Alabez Toshacim sherger, or Alabez Nushtekin Sherger, a Persian chief sent against the Isma'ilihs, II. 439.


Als eddin Muhammad, son of Jelal-eddin Ilussan, the seventh ruler of the Alamu'tins, II. 447 — date of his death, 448.
INDEX.

Aladiliats, "the party of the Just," I. 101 n.
Alamah halli, "the most learned ornament," title of a distinguished theologian. II. 379, 380.
Alamut, a town and fort near Karvin, II. 433—besieged by the Ummah of Malik Shah, and defended by Hassan Sabah, 436—its name changed into Buldet ul ikhal, 437—besieged repeatedly by the Persians, 439—taken and destroyed by the Tartars, 450.
Alar, founder of a sect—an Iranian his epoch and belief. I. 206.
Alar'ud, name of a Nook. I. 273.
Alayi, the name of a wind, II. 433.
Alburz, mountain—its situation, I. 22 n. 232 n.—retreat of Zarudust for consulting Hormuzd, also the abode of Mithra, ibid. and 243 n.
Alep, or Haleb, a town in Syria, II. 452.
Alexander (Sekandr), supposed son of Darab, receives a book of Zarudust, forming a part of the Dastir, I. 278 n.—orders Persian books to be translated into Greek, ibid.—burnt the Nooks, for which he burns in hell, 279 n.
Alhuliyat, a school of Sufis, III. 242 n. 1.
Ali, son of Abu Taleb, I. 47, 98—account of his deeds, reign, and death, 100 n.; II. 332, 341—acknowledged as Imam and Khalif by the Shi'a, 362—a chapter of the Koran, supposed to have been suppressed, concerning Ali, 368 to 371—wages war upon Maviah—kills with his own hands four hundred enemies. III. 39 n. 2—cuts off the head of a seller of onions and garlic, 60—was libidinous, 63—Muhammed's eulogy of Ali, 456 n. 1—his poems and sayings, ibid.—a verse of his quoted, 232.
Ali, the son of Mâmûn Massar, king of Khurasan, I. 169.
Ali Ebn Abbas, Rumi, an illustrious poet—the date of his death, III. 123 n. 4.
Ali Ilahian, a sect residing in Kohistan, II. 431—numerous in India, ibid. n. 1—their creed, 452, 460.
Alika, "heaven," II. 127.
Ali Osman ben Ebil Ali el Ghaznavi (Shaikh), III. 263 n.
Ali Zikrihi-al salam, surname of Hassan, son of Muhammed, the fourth ruler of the Alamutians, II. 442—various versions upon his origin. 443, 444—he is also called "the resurrection"—institutes a new era by the festival of resurrection. 445—is stabbcd, 446.
Alkus, or Malkus, an enchanter, I. 314 and n. 1.
Al Melal ul amhalal, "the means of curing wearisomeness and melancholy," a work of Sheherishtani, II. 323 n.
Almutiah, a class of the Eastern Ismâilâhs, II. 420.
Alp Arselan, the second Sultan of the dynasty of Seljuces, II. 425 n. 2.
Al rais, surname of Avisenâ, II. 468, 169 n.
Alraung, the angelic world according to the Sipasians, I. p. 86.
Alrashid hillah, the thirtieth Khalif of the Abbassides, killed by the hand of a Fedayi, II. 442.
Amara-das, second successor of Nânak, II. 233, 254 n. 2.
Amara nath, a sect, I. 128.
Ambaret Kant, author of a mystical work, translated by himself into Persian, II. 137.
Amedat ul matekad, "the Pillar of Believers," a learned work, II. 331.
Amidsh-i-Farhang, "intercourse of science," how the Abadian Dervishes behaved to society, and to strangers introduced to them, I. 144, 142, 145.
Ami, "the illiterate," title assumed by Muhammad, II. 454 n. 1.

Amighistan, work quoted, I. 15, 26.

Amir shir Khan, procures liberty to Jengis Khan, when the latter was a prisoner, III. 414.

Amir ul Numinin Karan sani, title of the emperor Jehangir, II. 277.

Ammanius Marcellinus, I. 171.

Amr Khaiam, his verses quoted, I. 196.

Amral Kais, son of Hajr, king of the Arabs, a great poet, III. 63 n. 1.

Amrita Sara, a reservoir of water at Rampur or Ramasdur, in the Panj-ab, II. 254 n. 3.

Amshafand (six), first celestial spirits after Ormuzd, I. 235 and n. 237.

Amur Nuh, son of Manzur Samani, cured by Avicenna, II. 469.

Anamzian, the learned, I. 20 n.

Ana Gura Roshni, one of the seven heavens of the Persians, I. 293 n. 1.

Ana hatam, the root of the nose, II. 131 n. 1.

Anahid, a genius, guardian of the germs of Zoroaster's posterity, I. 281 n.

Anahid, "free voice," I. 81.

Ananta, a Vairagi, II. 196.

Ananta Veda, the eternal Veda, II. 18.

Andariman, follower of the Alarion sect, I. 206.

Andhama, great darkness, II. 179 n.

Anga, part—six angas of Hindu learning, II. 63 n. 1 enumerated, ibid.

Angad (Guru), immediate successor to Nanak, II. 253, 254 n. 1.

Anjir dasti, a Persian word for the Indian fig-tree, II. 80.

Aniran, an Angel presiding over the 30th day of the month, I. 62 n.

Anif-ed-din Telmesani, III. 232 n. I.

Ankahish, name of a Nosh of the Zend-Avesta, I. 275.

Anna-prasanna, a rite of the Hindus, II. 56 n. 2.

Anquetil du Perron, quoted, I. 7 n. 18 n. 60, 61, and elsewhere—brought from India several Zand, Pehlevi, and Persian works—published a part of them in French, 223 n. 226 n.—his account of Zoroaster's life in chronological order, 280, 281 n.—as translator of the Zend-Avesta, the principal authority concerning Zoroaster's religion.

Ansar, "protector, defender," III. 27 n. 4, 52 n.

Anus, "rays," of Brahma, Vichnu, Mahadeo, II. 218.

Antun Bushuyah Wavara, a Frank and Christian, I. 137—becomes a Kalandar—goes about naked—abstemious and humble, 138.

Anvari Sohili, "the Canopian Lights," Indian work translated into Persian, I. 104 n.

Anumana, "inference," II. 293.

Anushkhan, a sect of the Persian religion, I. 6.

Apamana, "resemblance," II. 203.

Apana, "flatulence," II. 133 n. 1.

Apavarga, "beatitude," II. 203 n. 6.

Apragaha, "not to ask any thing," II. 125.

Apu (Apius), name of Esculapius, III. 141 n. 2.

Arada, numerical quantity, equal to one hundred radah (see radah), I. 28.

Arafat, a mountain near Mecca, a station of pilgrims to Mecca, III. 257 n. 1.

Aran, a class of Sanyasis, II. 149.

Arang, "the world of divinity" according to the Sipasians, I. 86.

Arani, plant to kindle sacrificial fire, II. 80 n. 1.

Arastu (Imam), arranged the logical science, II. 210.

Arastu (Aristotle), II. 374 n. 1.

Araz, numerical quantity, equal to one hundred raz (see raz), I. 25.

Ard (1st.), angel, presiding over the 25th day of the month, I. 62 n.
Ardati-Viraf, gives an account of heaven and hell, I. 283 — his epoch—follower and defender of Zoroaster's religion, *ibid.* n. — selected by the Mbehds — his soul absent from his body during seven days — on its return, narration of what had passed, 284 to 304. Ardebil (town), its ancient name — fire-temple, I. 82.

Ardashir, etymology of the word, I. 304 n. 1.

Ardashir, disciple of Kaivan, I. 104.

Ardashir, a Dastur, brought the Vendidad from Sistan to Buzerat, I. 223 n.

Ardashir, a follower of Zardusht, sailed from Persia to Akbar's residence, III. 96.

Ardashir, son of Sassan, restores the religion of Zardusht, I. 266 — goes to Kabulistan — erects a monastery, 276 n. 2.

Ardashir Babegan, king of Persia, I. 104 — account of his descent and reign, *ibid.* n. 180 — assembles forty thousand Mbehds around him — selection made among them, 283.

Ardhhanari, a sect, II. 128.

Arjas, sovereign of Tur, invades Persia — is repulsed by Isfandiar, I. 191 n. 1 — invades Persia for the second time, *ibid.* and 374 — carries off two daughters of Gushasp — is killed by Isfandiar, 191 n. 1.


Arifah, "the ninth day of the "moon," II. 257, 288.

Aristotle, quoted, I. 212 n. — shows a knowledge of Zoroaster's works 224.

Arjumal, the fourth successor to Nanak, II. 233, 254 n. 4 — collects tribute, 271 — imprisoned by Jee-
INDEX.

Ahsund-jah, the 2nd additional day of the Persian year. I. p. 62 n.
Ashrākīn, Ashrakian (Hukma), Platonick philosophers, II. 374—the ancients, who did not follow the prophet. 389.
Ashrām, a class of Sanyāsī, II. 139.
Ashtād, angel presiding over the 26th day of the month, I. 62 n.
Ashu (Surush), angel of Paradise, I. 285.
Ashwan, pure spirits, I. 288.
\textit{Asnudād}, "heaven-bestowed," I. 335.
Ashur Beg Karamanlu, disciple of Farzanah Bahram, I. 133—his precepts, 134—manner of life, 135.
Asia, wife of Pharaoh, III. 51.
Asir eddin Mifarzel, son of Omar al Abberi, III. 218.
Askar, also called Sermenrai, city in Syria, II. 383 n. 1.
Askaram, the 19th Nosh of the Zand-Avesta—its contents, I. 274 n.
Asmānii, celestial, I. p. 21.
Aspār, a numerical quantity, equal to one hundred shamar (see Shamar) I. 24.
Asparam, the 17th Nosh of the Zand-Avesta—its contents, I. 274 n.
Assad Allah al Ghaleb, "the lion of God," the victorious, 98, 100 n.
Astara, name of a Nosh of the Zand-Avesta, I. 273.
Asra va Zand, Asra wasita, instead of Zand-Avesta, I. 231.
Asterabad, capital of Georgia, II. 372.
Așşēyam, not stealing, II. 123.
As vamedha, sacrifice of a horse, II. 37—what understood by it, 38.
Asul Fikab, "the science of the fundamentals of religion and law," II. 375 n. 1.
Ašulūjia, supposed one of Aristotile's works (translated into Arabic); III. 207 n. 1.
Asuras, "demons," churn the ocean, II. 42 n. 1.
Asurvivāha, a form of marriage among Hindus, II. 72.
Atala-loka, one of the fourteen spheres, II. 12—an infernal region, \textit{ibid.} n. 8.
Atgava-Veda, II. 64.
Athurman, name of the first class of the people, I. 18 n.
Atilla, a sect, II. 129.
Ativāhika, "surpassing the wind in swiftness," epithet of the subtle body, II. 178 n. 2.
Atmā, "spirit." II. 204.
Atmāchand, a Sanshkya philosopher, II. 123.
Atma-jnani, Indian philosopher, III. 221.
Atma Rāma, a Yogi, known under the name of Bahet Barvang, author of a mystical work, II. 137.
Atunī, an aged matron and recorder of occurrences to the great princess, I. 170.
Avach hata, "emaciated by abstinence," II. 241.
Avadḥūta, a class of Sanyāsīs, II. 141.
Avatāra, "descent," II. 17—explanation of it, 28, 29—explanation of Avātars by the author of the Dabistān, 30, 31, 32.
Avayava, "a regular argument or syllogism," II. 207—consisting of five members, \textit{ibid.} n. 4.
Aubudīyāt, "devotion," III. 241 n. 2.
Awen Khan, or Ung-Khan (Prester John), a Christian prince, protector of the fugitive Tamujin, later Jangis-Khan, III. 119 n. 1.
Avidiya, one of the five failings, II. 120.
Avīsena (see Abu Ali Sina), his interpretation of Muhammed's ascent to heaven, 177 to 200.
Avīvechana, one of five failings, II. 120 n. 6.
Aureng zeb, son of Shah Jehan—imprisons his father—his brother—is proclaimed emperor—defeats
INDEX.

Darashiko—orders the execution of the latter, III. 285 n. 4.
Awtad, "posts or stakes," III. 265 n.
Ayak sahri, the fourth Gahambar, I. 347.
Ayam, name of a Nosh of the Zand-Avesta, I. 275.
Ayn Shakib, grandfather of Ayn Hosh, translator of the Desnad into popular Persian, I. 378.
Ayn Hoshpyar, a follower of Mazdak's creed, I. 378.
Ayipanthis, a sect, I. 128.
Ayn Shakib, a Mobed, cuts his tongue, I. 186.
Ayn Tush, son of Fartush, kills his father for having mortally wounded a deer, I. 184.
Ayn vojud, "a real being," III. 270.
Ayut, "science of medicine," II. 63 n. 1.
Azadah, a Brahman, eats with Muselmans, II. 144, 146.
Azar, name of an angel and of a month, I. 61, 62 n.—appears in Gushtasp's palace, 257.
Azar Ayin, ancestor of Azar Kaivan, I. 87.
Azarbad, son of Marasfand, I. 238, 304, 305—his epoch referred to that of Zoroaster, 304 n. 2—confirms Ardash Viraf's account by a miracle, 303 n.
Azar Bahram, ancestor of Azar Kaivan, I. 87.
Azar Bahram, the name of the angel of victory, I. 345, 346, and ibid. n. 1.
Azar Barzin, grandfather of Azar Kaivan, I. 87.
Azar bijan, the native country of Zardusht, I. 263.
Azar Hoshangian, a sect of the Persian religion, I. 6, 87.

Azar Hushang, "fire of wisdom," I. 147.
Azari, a sect of the Persian religion, I. 6.
Azari-Kaus, a fire-temple, I. 32.
Azar Kaivan, author of poems, I. 76, 84, 119—his lineage, 87, 88—account of his life and sayings, 89 to 104—his death, 105—his twelve illustrious disciples, 119—called by the emperor Akbar; does not attend him, but sends him a wonderful book, III. 96.
Azar Khirad, a Mobed, author of a book in which the Noshes of the Zand-Avesta are enumerated, I. 272.
Azar Khirad, name of a fire-temple, I. 82.
Azar Khurda, name of a fire-temple, I. 284.
Azar Khurin, ancestor of Azar Kaivan, I. 87.
Azar Mihitar, son of Azar Sasan, ancestor of Azar Kaivan, I. 87.
Azar Nosh, ancestor of Azar Kaivan, I. 87.
Azar Roshti, one of the seven heavens of the Persians, I. 293.
Azar Sasan, the fifth, a prophet, I. 30.
Azar Zertusht, father of Azar Kaivan, I. 87.
Aziri, au author, quoted, I. 82 and n. 1. 89, 96, 104, 134; III. 203.
Aziz Nasyf (Shaikh), III. 252.
Azrail, an angel—his function, II. 337.
Azrawan, guardian angel of the cypress trees—is invoked by Zardusht to protect the cypress planted by the prophet, I. 309.
INDEX.

B.

Bábá Jéy, son of Hargovind, II. 281—why he did not succeed his father, 281, 282.

Bábá Piara, founder of a sect, II. 233, 234.

Bábá Ríh Haji (also Goraknáth), supposed foster-father of Muhammed, II. 120.

Babéciah, a name of the Ismáílís, II. 42 n. 1.

Bád, angel presiding over the 22nd day of the month, I. 62 n.—the 22nd day of the month, 270.

Badakshan, country situated towards the head of the river Oxus, II. 420 n. 1.

Badakshi (Mulla Shah), in Kachmir, II. 115.

Badhata, a disciple of Hargovind, previously a thief, II. 283, 284.

Bádih eddin Madar, founder of the sect of Madarín, II. 224 n. 1.

Bagh, the 4th Nox of the Zand-Avesta, its contents, vol. I. 272 n.

Baghantast, the 15th Nox of the Zand-Avesta—its contents, I. 274 n.

Baghdád (town), tomb of Musa, I. 48—its fire-temple, 31.

Báhá’-eddin Zakarias (Shaíh), III. 29—a short account of him, ibid. n. 1.

Báhá ed-doulah, a prince of the Búyí dynasty, II. 173.

Báhá ed-doulah, son of Táj ed-doulah, king of Persia, II. 173.

Baharam (planet), Mars, I. 2—description of his form as planet—angel presiding over the 20th day of the month, 62—angel of victory, 345—his character and functions—under what animals represented, 346 n. 1.

Báhá uddin Muhammed Amáli, becomes a disciple of Azar Kaíván, I. 140.

Baháv eddin Muhammed (Shaík), III. 203.


Bahádínnáni, believers of the eternal doctrine, I. 233.

Bahin farah, “the highest dignity,” a work upon the sanctity of the stars, III. 140.

Bahin nekhistan, a particular mode of sitting, II. 104.

Bahman, the name of an angel and of a month, I. 61, 62 n.—gives instructions to Zardusht, 240—appears in Goshtasp’s palace, 257.

Bahman, disciple of Kaívan, I. 106—his fight with Farshid, ibid.

Bahman, son of Isfendiar, I. 52, 87, 183—throws Zal into chains, 192—avenges the death of his father upon Zal, 193 n. 2—allegories ascribed to him, 361, 362.

Bahman Yesht Pehlvi, an epitome of the true Bahman Zand, the Apocalypse of the Parsees, I. 264 n. 2, 267 n. 1.

Bahman Yesht Zand, contains an interpretation of the tree of seven branches, seen by Zardusht in heaven, and other predictions, I. 265 n. 1.

Bahram, governor of Khorassan, I. 186.

Bahram-azar, a fire-temple, I. 47.

Bahram Gur, king of Persia, I. 106—account of his deeds, ibid. n. 1.

107—one of the seven prophets, 112 n.—happiness of mankind during his reign, 266.

Bahzad, a celebrated painter, I. 205.

Bahzad, a Yasánián chieftain, his conduct on a march with the army, I. 164.

Báj, Váj, a rite of the Parsees, I. 296 and n. 318, 319.

Báj-i-hamastání, “voluntary contribution,” I. 158.
INDEX.

Bâti'riyat, a branch of the Zaydi-yat, II. 363 n. 1.
Bâtu 'l mâmur, "the house of de-
"lightful culture," in heaven, III. 194.
Baizah, a town in the province of
Fars, III. 218 n. 6.
Baizavi, surname of Nasîr eddin
Abû Said Abdallâh Ben Omar, III. 216 n. 6.
BAkà, "eternal life," III. 274.
Bakhtâ, a place in the east of Ko-
histan, II. 431.
Bakhschi, "paymaster," I. 156.
Bakhti, "worship," II. 176.
Baki Allî (Mirza), quoted, II. 140.
Bakkal, "merchant class," II. 78.
Bala, "strength," the killing of
animals, II. 133.
Balî, a monarch, sent to hell by
Vichnu, II. 22 and n. 1.
Balîk Nâtha, a great adept in re-
straining the breath—blesses the
author of the Dubistân, II. 127.
Balîk (town), its situation, I. 48—
itself-temple, 52.
Balîkûmâna, a Telinga word for a
sacred tree, II. 80.
Bâw, a class of Sanyâsis, II. 139.
Banî, a Vairagi, chief of the Sikhs,
II. 288.
Bang, an inebriating beverage, Mu-
hammed the prophet drank of it,
II. 222.
Banin, mother of Mîyân Bayezid,
III. 28.
Barâbrìsos, or Barbelissos, a plain
on the banks of the Euphrates,
III. 60 n.
Barâshnom, a sort of purification,
I. 323 n. 2.
Barâtha, brother of Aftunmal, II. 273.
Barbud, a prophet, I. 112 n. 3.
Bardeesan, quoted, I. 335 n. 2.
Barânîn, supreme beings, I. 18.
Barkalor, son of Malik Shah, II.
437—called also Kassem and
Rûm-eddin—his contest with his
step-mother, his half-brother, and
two uncles, 438 n. 1.
Bârâmânâk, a magnificent temple
of the Tibitanis, II. 291.

Barûsu (Ferosu), see Bahman, III.
141.
Baroz, "apparition," III. 277.
Barsam, a bundle of thirty-five
branches of trees, I. 316 n. 319.
Barzak, "the interval of time be-
"tween the death and the resur-
"rection of man," III. 278, 279,
290.
Bartrînkaros, a sage, educates Zar-
dusht, I. 224, 225.
Barzomchin, a knife with an iron
handle, I. 320.
Ba'as, name of the third class of the
people, I. 19.
Baslam, a town of Khorassan, III.
229.
Bastami, see Abu Yeizid Taisfer ben
Issa.
Bastan nameh, work quoted, II.
130.
Batardin, "enemies of the faith,”
I. 300.
Batenian (The), "interiors," a class
of Ismâilâhs, often confounded
with them, II. 400 n. 2—their
creed, 401 to 404—means they
employ to make converts to their
faith, 404 to 407—their interpreta-
tion of several religious practices,
408 to 410—they are not upon the
office of prophet and Imâm, 410
to 411.
Bâyazid, a disciple of Imâm Jafr
Sadik, II. 390.
Bayley (William, esq.), patron of
the editor and supervisor of the
Calcutta edition of the Dabistan,
his eulogy, III. 317.
Bayz-dâsh-durâvâns, "the Dur-
"vâns banquet—room," work com-
Beausobre, quoted, I. 206 n. 373.
Bedr, a place of the valley of the
same name, near the sea, between
Mecca and Medina; there Muham-
mâd's great victory, III. 100.
Bedr al Jemalî, Amir Alîyûh, com-
mânder-in-chief of the Egyptian
troops, II. 430.
INDEX.

Beh din, name of a religious sect, 1. 272.
Bellamy (John), his English translation of the Hebrew Bible, II. 301, 302, 303.
Belfour (F. C.), quoted, II. 391 n. 3.
Ben Shonah, surname of Mohib eddin Abu ’i Valid Muhammed ben Kamal eddin, al Hanefi, III. 291 n 1, 312 n.
Bentinck (William, lord), governor-general of India, abolishes the sacrifice of the widows, II. 76 n. 1.
Beresht, the 9th Nask of the Zand-Avesta—its contents, I. 273 n.
Berzasp, a disciple of Tahmuras, III. 169.
Bhadram, “right way of worship,” II. 155.
Bhaga, “female organ,” II. 152.
Bhagavat (purana), quoted, II. 15.
Bhairava, a name of Siva, II. 219—eight Bhairavas, ibid. n. 3.
Bharatis, a class of the Sanyasis, II. 146.
Bhartari, a Jnani, II. 101.
Bharthry, a class of Sanyasis, II. 139.
Bhatakpur, a place in the hilly country of Afghanistan, sepulchre of Bayerid. III. 42.
Bhavan (Shaiikh), a Brahman, became a Muselman, III. 89.
Bhrva, eyebrows, a region of the human body, II. 132.
Bhum (Mars), see Marikh, vol. II. 44.
Bhuroka, one of the fourteen spheres, II. 12—one of the three spheres, 13.
Bhuvaness, worlds, II. 10—fourteen worlds, ibid. n. 1.
Bhuvarko, one of the fourteen spheres. II. 12—one of three spheres. 13.
Biaraz, equal to one hundred araz; see araz, I. 23.
Bibi Alai, daughter of Jelal-eddin, the chief of the Roshenians, III. 46.
Bida, name of Jengiskhan’s tribe, before he raised it to pre-eminence among the Tartars, III. 143.
Binandah, “inspector,” I. 179.
Binavali, among the poets known under the name of Wali, II. 114, 115, 116.
Birang, “the empyreal world,” according to the Sipasians, I. 86.
Birher (Rajah), declares the sun to be an object all-comprehensive, III. 93.
Birman, Birmun, the same as Brahman, I. 18.
Bishutan, a brother or a confidential friend of Isfendiyar, I. 239 n. — receives ballowed milk from Zardusht, 239.
Bivar-asp, name of Zohak, I. 33 n.
Bo Ali (Abu Ali Avisekha), quoted, II. 46.
Bochari, surname of Muhammed, son of Ismail al Jisfi, author of a celebrated collection of traditions concerning Muhammed, III. 53 n. 1, 57, 58.
Bonnet, quoted, III. 240 n. 2.
Bopp (Francis), maintains the genuineness and antiquity of the Zand language, I. 223.
Borah, a sect residing in Guzerat, followers of Mullah Ali, II. 451 n. 1.
Borak, the animal upon which Muhammed ascended to heaven, II. 339 n. 2; III. 180—is an emblem of reason, 181—the vehicle of devotion, 246, 248.
Borda, title of an Arabic poem, I. 2 n.
Brahma, Creator of all things, II. 4—whence he proceeded, 14, 16—how represented, 17—nine Brahmas, 34, 218—the life of Brahma, 49—his day and night, 50 n.—four-faced, eight-armed, 217.
Brahma chari, II. 63, 125 n. 12.
Brahmanda, a region of the human body, II. 132 n. 5.

Brahmans, the first class of the Hindus, their destination, II. 48— their functions, 77, 78—their conduct, 84, 85.

Brâhmârshi, a class of Richis or sages—seven of them named. II. 27 n. 2.

Brahma Sampradayis, a class of the worshippers of Vichnu, II. 179 n. 2.

Brahma uttamâ, the most excellent Brahma, II. 91.

Briggs (John, general), translator of the Perishâta, quoted, I. 41 n.—of the Sîzar-ul Mutakherin, quoted, 289.


Buddha-avâtar, the ninth Avâtar of Vichnu, II. 24— when it took place. ibid. and n. 4.

Buddhists, called also Jatis (Yatis), II. 241 n. 4—their belief—many of them traders, ibid.

Buďfâstâl, Buftâl, "science of future events," corresponding to one of the Nosks of the Zand-Avesta, I. 273 and n. ibid.

Buldet-ul âkhal, a name of the fort Alamut, II. 437.

Bun Dehes, a work composed by a disciple of Zardush, I. 224 n.—translated from the modern Persian into French, by Anquetil, 225 n.—its contents, 226 n.—translated from the original Zand into Pehlevi—when written, ibid., n.

Burnouf (Eugène), established the genuineness and antiquity of the Zand language, I. 223—published the lithographed Zand text of the Yasna—revises, comments, and interprets the same, I. 226 n.

Butgadâh, "house of idols," III. 301 n. 1.

Buzurg-abad, for Mahâbad, I. 21 n.

Buzurg-Mehr, minister of Nushirvan, I. 104 n. 112 n. 147.

Byasa (Vyasâ) visits Iran, addresses Zardush, hears a chapter of the Zand-Avesta, and, converted, returns to India. I. 280, 283.

C.

Cahen, his French translation of the Hebrew Bible, II. 301, 302, 303.

Callisthenes, I. 279 n.

Canun fi thabi, title of a work composed by Avisenna, I. 173 n. 3.

Carpentarius (Jacobus), Claramento-tan us Belbovus, III. 208.

Cedrenus, quoted, I. 215 n. 4.

Chadah, a tribe of Khatriyas, II. 112.

Chahnal, Ch'halâna Avatar, III. 213 n. 1.

Chaitra, March-April, II. 18.

Chakra, the summary of the four ages of the Hindus, stated, II. 48.

Chakra, disk, weapon of Vichnu, II. 17—what it means, 32.

Chanda, on prosody and verse, II. 63 n. 4.

Chandra baktâ, "worshippers of the moon," II. 242.

Changragatcha-nameh, a Persian poem, I. 213 n. 224 n.

Chanyud Pul, or Chinawad Pul, "bridge of judgment," I. 285 and n. 2.

Chardin (Chevalier), traveller in the East, I. 225 n.

Charvak, a Sceptic philosopher, II. 197, 198 n. 4—his creed, 198, 202.

Châtâry Khan, son of Jangis Khan, III. 115—dashes his horse against his brother, the Khalif—obtains.
INDEX. 335

his pardon, 116 — the countries inherited from his father, enumerated. ibid. n.

Chatra, umbrella, I. 18.

Chatraman, Chatri, the same as

Kchatriyas, the second class of the people. I. 18.

Chatur Yapah, a Dandahar-Sanyasi (see these words), highly abstinence, II. 142 — an adventure concerning him, 143. 144. 145— blesses the author of the Dabistan, ibid. — his death, 146.

Chauki Navis, "register-keeper," I. 156.

Chehar Kob, "four blows," a mode of invoking God. I. 77.

Chet harten, "a chapel," a temple among the Tibetans. II. 290, 291.

Chetnumph (Agatho demon). III. 106.

Ch'halo, "mischconstruction," II. 209 — of three sorts, ibid. n. 2.

Chid, name of a Nosk of the Zands-Aresta. I. 274.

Chinon (Gabriel de), traveller in the East. I. 225 n.

Chiran jivah, "long-lived," surname of Parasu-Rama. II. 23.

Chistapa, the wife of Baharam Gul, a beauty of her times, tries the sanctity of Muslims and Hindus. II. 226.

Chivarina, a Brahman of Kachmir, burns himself. II. 103, 104.

Choharas, low class of men, II. 245, 246.

Chuda Karana, a rite of the Hindus, II. 56 n. 3.

Cicacele, town of India, in the Northern Circars. I. 46.

Cicero, quoted. I. 340 n. 4.

Clement (St.), of Alexandria, is not unacquainted with Zoroaster's works, I. 224 n. — quoted, 277 n. 1—304 n. 4.

Citarchus, author, quoted. I. 17 n.

Colebrooke (Thomas), quoted. II. 4, 10, 37, 65, 93, 119, 120, 122, 177, 198, 210, 451 n. 1; III. 1 n. 1: 43.

Ctesias, quoted. I. 33 n.

D.

Daai, missionary, particular dignity among the Isma'ilahs. II. 432 n. 2.

Dabati, the Caspian sea, in Parsi works. I. 231.

Dadistan, half of justice, I. 43.

Dadistan Aursah, or Daversah, Daversah, or Sah daver, work quoted, I. 131.

Dadram, a Persian festival. I. 63.


Dadu Panthians, a sect, II. 233.

Dadu Durvish. and founder of a sect — an account of him, II. 233.

Dai, name of an angel and a month, I. 61, 62 n.

Daibader, angel presiding over the 8th day of the month. I. 62 n.

Daibadin, angel presiding over the 23rd day of the month. I. 62 n.

Dabamihner, angel presiding over the 13th day of the month. I. 62 n.

Dair-namah, a work of Fakher, III. 298.

Daityas, "demons," churn the oceans, II. 42 n. 1.

Dalbal, name given by the Ulvias to the fourth heaven, II. 468 — signifies also Muhammad's mule and Ali's horse, ibid. n. 1.

Dalmah, "cultivator," II. 78.

Dama bhavani, name of a spring, II. 167 n. 2.
Daman-i-bad, "sound of the wind," II. 134.
Damudar Dáš Kaul, a learned Brahman of Kashmir, holds Akas to signify space, II. 40.
Dana phal, a rite of the Hindus, II. 38 n. 3.
Dandahari, a class of Sanyásis, II. 140.
Danish nameh Káteb Shahí, work quoted, II. 372.
Darab the Great, king of Persia, son of Bahman, I. 87.
Darab the Less, king, son of Darab the Great. I. p. 87.
Dara-i-Gunah, name of an angel, I. 7.
Darán Sarún, king and magician, attempts to destroy the child Zar- dusht, I. 219 — invited to a feast by Zarudush's father, 228.
Dara Shiko, son of Shah Jehan, defends his father—defeated by Auréngzeb, his brother—delivered up to the latter—executed, III. 283 n. 1, 294.
Dartha, sacrificial grass, II. 57 n. 1, 2, 80.
Darjí, "demon," I. 324.
Darúbhín, name of a Nok of the Zand-Avesta, I. 273.
Darun, an office celebrated particularly for the sake of a king. I. 288 and n. — also a little cake, *ibid*.
Darun fusesté, "offered bread," I. 315.
Darun miézd, "religious rites," I. 315, explained, *ibid* n. 1, 316.
Darun Yeshité, a Parsi office, also banquet, I. 333, and n.
Darwánds, enemies to good, I. 301 and n.
Dástan, surname of Zal, I. 194.
Dáláteri, the chief of a class of Sanyásis, II. 139—his adventure with Goraknath, 140.
Davaráh, a chief of the Sikhs — his dispute with Perta-mal, II. 412.
Davasérjed, the 18th Nok of the Zand-Avesta — its contents, I. 274 n.

**INDEX.**

Danda (David), II. 298.
Daud Isfaháni, the chief of a Muhammadan sect, II. 329 n. 332.
Daud Kásírí (Shaikh), III. 232 n. 1.
Daulat Khan Kaksal, quoted, II. 284.
Daulat Khan Lodi, II. 247—a short account of him, *ibid* n. 2.
Dawir Haryar, author of Dará-i-Sí-kander—a speech of his quoted, I. 34, 360.
Dayab, the north-west region, II. 35.
Dívú, a Vairágí—a legend of him, II. 192.
Déh Ak, a name of Zohák, I. 74.
Derick Desátir, "the little Desátir," I. 65 n. 1.
Desnád, the volume which contains the doctrine of Mazdák, I. 375, 378.
Destánír, for Desátir, I. 20 n.
De'va, a free-minded Brahman, II. 270, 280.
De'va archaka, worshipper of an idol, II. 102.
De'va Kánya, "daughters of the "gods," name given to public women, II. 134.
Dháids, one of the lowest classes of men, II. 245.
Dhanám, "meditation," II. 123, 127.
Dhanú, "military tactics," II. 65 n. 1.
Dháranám, "fortitude," II. 125 n. 6, 126.
Dharma sastra, civil and canon laws, II. 66 n.
Dhritárashtra, son of Vyásá, I. 68.
Dhíyát of kalbi, "the ape-dog," form in which the angel Gabriel appeared to Muhammed, II. 433 n.
Diodoros Siculus, quoted, I. 33 n. 1.
Diógenes Laertius, quoted, I. 209.
Dion Chrysostomus mentions Zoroaster's works, I. 224 n.
INDEX.

Disa, quarters of the world, eight, II. 219— their names, ibid.
Div, demon, I. 180.
Doazlab Hamast, the fifth Nok of the Zand-Avesta, its contents, I. 273 n.
Doghduyah, mother of Zardusht, I. 245 — her dream in the sixth month of her pregnancy, ibid. 246—interpretation of the dream, 247, 248.
Do giti, "two worlds," the great volume of God, I. 63 n. 1.
Donatus (Aelius), I. 171.
Dortous de Mairan, II. 308.
Dosha, "error," subdivided into three parts, II. 203.
Dosur, "prime-minister," to whose department the public revenue is attached, I. 155.
Dosur, "superintendent," I. 18 n.
Draupadi, daughter of Drupada, II. 68.
Drishtants, "comparison," II. 207.
Drupada, Raja of Panchala, II. 68.
Dubois (abbé), quoted, II. 37 n. 1, 73 n. 1.
Dukh, "pain," II. 205.
Duniāhs, a particular sect, III. 25.
Dup Néreng, "prayer," I. 283 n.
Durds, a sect in the mountains of Kachmir — brothers have but one wife, II. 244, 245; III. 304 n. 1.
Durgā, a name of the wife of Siva, demands the sacrifice of a man from a villager, II. 162 — from Vichnu-nath Deo, and his son, ibid.—how represented, 163 — the human sacrifice continued to the time of the author of the Dabistan, ibid. — eight Durgās, and their names, 220.
Dvēsha, hatred, II. 120, 203.
Dwarp-yug, the third age of the Hindus, its duration, II. 24, 47.
Dwaraka, town of India, account of it, I. 53 and n. 1.
Dyani, "contemplator," II. 240.

E.

Eichhorn, quoted, II. 300.
Elmacin (George), author of a History of the Saracens, quoted, III. 8 n. 1, 53 n. 1 and 2.
Enka (also called Simurgh), "the foundation of material substance," III. 237 — divinity, 249—a fabulous bird, ibid. n. 1—an allegory connected with it, ibid. n. 1.
Eristratus, grandson of Aristotle, compared to Avicenna, II. 471 n. 1.
Erpenius (Thomas), translator into Latin of Elmacin's History of the Saracens, quoted, II. 338 n. 1; III. 8 n. 1.
Erskine (William), translated the Memoirs of Zehir-eddin Muhammad Baber, quoted, II. 247 n.
Eusebius (Iskalapius), disciple of Hermes, III. 106 n. — called Apeu, 111 n. 2— confounded with the sun, 112 — with Serapis, ibid. n. 1.
Esha'ād avizmid, a form of prayer, I. 318, 319.
Eshein, the demon of envy; wrath, and violence, vanquished by Kāiomers, I. 268 n. 1.
Espintaman, the third ancestor of Zardusht, 1. 215 n.—signifies excellent, *ibid.* — name of Zardusht's father, 1. 233.

Eva, the mystical meaning of the name, III. 146.

Eudesmos, disciple of Aristotle, quoted upon the opinion of the Magi concerning space, II. 41 n.

Eudokia (the empress), attributes to Zoroaster several books, 1. 224 n.

Eudoxus, quoted, I. 212 n.

Eusebius, testifies that, in the fourth century after J. C., there existed sacred works concerning the theology and religion of the Persians, I. 224 n.

Fabricius, quoted, III. 186 n. 208 n.

Fakher eddin Muhammed Tafresi (Mir), III. 297, 298, 299.

Falek atlas, "the crystalline sphere," arrival at it, III. 248.

Falek sabitah, "the heaven of the fixed stars," arrival at it, III. 247.

Fins, "annihilation," III. 268, 274.

Farab, a town situated on the occidental confines of Turkestan, III. 170 n. 1.

Farabi, surname of a great philosopher, III. 170 n. 1. 302.

Faramand, disciple of Fariraj, his opinion, I. 196.

Faramandiyah, a subdivision of the Samradian sect, I. 196

Fard, a measure of time, I. 14.


Farhad, son of Alad, I. 180.

Farhad, a follower of Mazdak's creed, I. 378.

Farhang, "judge," I. 166.

Farhang-dar, "judge," I. 166.

Farhang Dostur, one of the compilers of the testament of Jemshid, I. 195—a travelling merchant of the Yekana binan sect, *ibid.*

Farhang Kesh, "excellent faith," the system of Hushang, 1. 145.

Farid eddin (Shaikh), quoted, I. 166.

Faridun, king and prophet, I. 30—

son of Abtin, 88—kindles the holy fire—his epoch and duration of his reign, 50 and n. — suspends by his prayer a rock in the air, 51 — enjoins the slaughter of noxious animals, 74.

Far-I-Izad, "the splendor of God," name of the angel guardian of Zardusht, I. 221.

Fariraj, son of Farshid, a sectary of the Samradian faith, his opinion, I. 196.

Farirajiyah, a subdivision of the Samradian sect, I. 196.


Farjud, "miraculous power," I. 72.

Farnah, a month of a Farsal (see Farsal), I. 27.

Farnishin, a particular position in praying, I. 78.

Farogh piri, name of a fire-temple in Najf, I. 54.

Farror, a day of a Farnah (see Farnab), I. 27.

Farsal, the revolution of a planet, I. 26, 27.

Farshid, son of Fartosh, a sectary, I. 196—his opinion, *ibid.*

Farshidyahs, a subdivision of the Samradian sect, I. 196.


Fartosh, a sectary of the Samradians, I. 195—his doctrine, *ibid.*
INDEX.

Fatoshian, a subdivision of the Samradian sect, l. 196.
Fatūsh, a merchant of the Khodayi sect, l. 201.
Faruk, "separator," surname of the Khalif Omar, I. 98, 99 n.—name of the Koran—two Faruks, Ill. 4—a passage of the second, 5.
Farūm, or Farūyd, or Ferdid, a town in the country of Tus, where Zardusht planted a cypress, l. 307 n.
Farun Faro Yakhshur, name given to the conservative angel of mankind, l. 149.
Farzanah Bahram (doctor), son of Farhad, author of the Sharistan-i danish wa gullistan-i Bimish—a precept of his quoted, l. 77—his account of Azar Kaiván, 88, 93—Farzanah’s descent, life—attainments, with the aid of his master, Kaiván — anecdote concerning both, 109—his death, 110 quoted in the life of Zardusht, 245.
Farzanah Bahram the Less, son of Farhad, author of Arzhang Máni, l. 121—his death, 122—he translated into Persian the works of Shaih Ishrak Shuhab udden Maktul, 122—his austerity, 122, 123.
Farzanah Farshid wird, a disciple of Kaiván, his lineage, l. 105—description of a fight between him and Bahman, 106—his death, *ibid*.
Farzanah Karrad, disciple of Kaiván, his origin, l. 103—an anecdote of him, 104—his death, 105.
Farzanah Khirmand, disciple of Kaiván, his descent, fight with Rustam, l. 106, 107.
Farzanah Khushi (Mobeid), author of Basm gah-i Durvehan, l. 104, 119—a quotation from this work, l. 120, 121.
Farwardin, name of an angel and a month, 60 and n. 1, 61.
Fasakh, "fracture," Ill. 130.
Fas hawdī, work of Shaikh Mohi eddin, Ill. 234.

Fatimah, daughter of Uhammed, wife of Ali, II. 398 n. 1; Ill. 51—her inheritance disputed to her—the gate of her house burnt she never spoke to the enemies of her husband, 32 n. 4, 33 n.
Fatimite (Khalifs), descendants of Ismāil, II. 398 n.—of Ali and Fatima, the daughter of the prophet, 401 n.—the termination of their dominion, 450 n.
Fatūhāt, "victories," Ill. 281.
Favaid Madanat, "Useful Notes by a Citizen of Medina," work quoted, II. 272, 381, 382.
Faymasihan, "science of future events," contained in the sixth Nosk of the Zand-Avesta, l. 273 and n.
Favardigan, "five supplementary days of the year," l. 312—their names, 62, 326, 327.
Fayz, "emanation," and other significations, Ill. 230 n. 2.
Fedak, a castle near the town of Khathar—an inheritance of Fatima, Ill. 31 n. 2—taken from and restored to the family of Ali, 32 n.
Fedayi, name of the devoted followers of Hassan Sabah, and the doctrine of the Ismāilis, II. 435 n. 2.
Ferdid, see Ferayud.
Ferehngiram, name of Venus, l. 38 n.
Ferhāt, celebrated architect, l. 142.
Ferheghi Shuuri, quoted, Ill. 267 n. 1.
Ferhoš, an ancient Persian king, chose seven poets, each of whom, on one day of the week, recited his verses to the king, Ill. 167.
Ferid eddin Attlar, a work of his quoted, Ill. 96 n. 1, 229 n. 1.
Ferishta (History of), l. 41 n. 1.
Ferk, "division," Ill. 295 n. 1.
Fersendaj, faith of Māhābad, l. 21 n.
Ferrāhad, another name of Māhābad, l. 21 n.
INDEX.

Ferz Desâhir, or "the Great Desâhir," I. 65 n. 1.
Ferz-zemiar, "great prayer," I. 79.
Fesus ul hikem, "the berels of philosophers," a work of Moth eddin Ibu Arabi, III. 91.
Fikah, "jurisprudence," II. 375 n. 1.
Firrâh Kâri, disciple of Shidosh, how he was avenged on the peasantry of Achan, who had offended him, I. 115, 126.

Foucaud, professor of Tibetan, II. 292.
Foucher (abbé), a learned French author, his opinion about the Zand books, I. 225 n. — quoted, 278 n. 373.
Fortia d'Urban (marquis), II. 303, 306.
Frank, his French translation of the Hebrew Bible quoted, II. 301, 302, 303.
Fransâi (Padri), II. 305.

G.

Gada Narâyana, master of a sect, II. 229.
Gah Ilavan, "sunrise," I. 316 n.
Gandharva, "science of music," II. 65 n. 1.
Gandharva-vivâhah, a form of marriage among Hindus, II. 72.
Ganesâ man, appointed tutor of the author of the Dabistan, II. 143.
Gângavara, place of pilgrimage, in Kachmir, II. 166.
Gangu, a boy ten years old, initiated in idealism, II. 103.
Garbha adâna karma, a rite of the Hindús, II. 54 and n. 2.
Garcin de Tassy, quoted in the notes of vol. I. pp. 1, 2, 3; II. 115, 168, 224, 342, 368; III. 29 n. 235 n. 239 n. 1, 286 n.
Gautama, husband of Ahalya, II. 68.
Gâya, Giya, town in India, a place of pilgrimage, I. 53 and n. about it.

Gayâ merota, or Gayo mard, the primitive man, I. 355 n.
Gayâri, "sacred prayer," II. 61 n. 4.
Ghâib al ghâiyub, "the mysterious hidden," III. 248, 267, 268 n. 1.
Ghâib inkâni, "the possible disappearance," III. 278.
Ghâibet kâberi, "the great absence," II. 377.
Ghâzi khan Badakshi, a great logician, III. 97.
Ghâib mahâli, "the illusive appearance," III. 278.
Ghâibet shâri, "the minor absence," II. 377.
Ghasal, "ablution," II. 39, 60, 61—how interpreted by the İsmâlis, 408: III. 239.
Ghâla'î Abu Hamîd Muhammed Ebn Muhammed Ghaza'î, surnamed Hajîet ul islam Zain eddin al Tusî, II. 349—a short account of him and his works, ibid. n. 2.
Gilshah, assumes the government in obedience to Heaven, I. 29.
Gird-koh, a fort, taken by the İsmâlis, II. 439—taken by Holâgu, 430 n.
INDEX.

Gita Govinda, poem composed by
Jayadiya, II. 180 n. 1.
Giti kharid, "a pious gift," I. 289
and n. 2.
Gladwin, quoted, I. 9 n. 14.
Glaire (Monsieur), his French transla-
tion of the Hebrew Bible, II.
301, 302, 303.
Gnostics (The), make great use of
Oriental cosmogony and psychol-
ogy, as derived from Zoroaster,
I. 224 n.
Gódána, "gift of a cow," II. 97 n. 4.
Gokhastah (Ahriman), I. 343.
Gómedha, "sacrifice of a cow," II.
83.
Gopinath (Raf), author quoted, I. 54.
Goraknath, name of the divinity—a
saint—adopted by a class of Yo-
gis, II. 128 n. 1. 129.
Goya Kasem, author of an account
of Sectaries, II. 230.
Goyastah, Gojestah, Gosakhtah, the
evil spirit, I. 337.
Gríhasthá, "married men," II. 213,
241.
Gul shen-raz, "The Mystery of the
"Rose-Bower," II. 102; III. 142,
228 n. 233.
Guna, "property," II. 14 n. 4.
Gundarw, a particular sect, II. 241
—kill strangers, 242.
Gurgin, a Persian chieftain, whose
dignity remained more than a
thousand years in his family, I.
163.
Guru Govind, son of Tegh Bahád,-
founder of the national greatness
of the Sikhs, author of the Das-
má Páthshah grantha, "The
"Book of the Tenth King," II.
288 n. 4.
Guru-mata, great council of the
Sikhs, II. 288 n. 1.
Guruva gurinah, Brahmanis of Kach-
mir, II. 163.
Gushaspian, a sect, I. 278 n.
Gushtasp, son of Lohasp, I. 88—
receives Zardusht, 243 and n. 2
hears his doctrine, 246, 247,
248—demands a proof of the
truth of the Zand-Avesta, and a
miracle, 240—doubts of it, 250
—displeased with Zardusht, 251
—throws away the Zand-Avesta,
and imprisons the prophet, 232—
finds his charger palsied, ibid.—
calls Zardusht, and accepts the
conditions for the cure of the
horse, 233—punishes the enemies
of the prophet, 234, 235—requests
the grant of four wishes, 236—
sees four angels, and falls sense-
less from his throne, 257, 258—on
the tasting of hallowed wine,
ascends to heaven, 239—esta-
blishes fire-worship in his king-
dom, 260—calls Jangraghácháh
to Iran, 276—is said to have tra-
velled in India, ibid. n. 2.—re-
lates and explains a parable of
Zardusht, 368, 369.
Gwaller, a fort in the province of
Agra, II. 274.

H.

Habib Ajumi, III. 229 n. 1.
Habs-i-dám, imprisonment of the
breath, I. 411.
Hadis husen, "an elegant tradi-
tion," II. 386.

Hadís músik, "a strong tradition," II. 386.
Hadis sahih, "an authentic tradi-
tion," II. 386.
INDEX.


Hadokt, a Nask of the Zand-Avesta, l. 274, 73.

Haliz of Shiraz, a poet, quoted, l. 81, 89, 106, 111, 113, 119, 121, 125, 127, 129, 143 ; II. 144, 216, 296; III. 23. 26.

Haft-aureng, "seven thrones," III. 267 n. 1.

Haft khan amekhi, seven places of union, II. 131.

Haft-sur, seven ramparts in Istakhbar, l. 48.

Haïj, III. 298.


Hajer ul āsvad, "the black stone" of Mecca, III. 168.

Hajet ul hak, surname of Avisenna, II. 168.

Haji khalfâ, quoted, III. 218 n. 2.

Hak al yakin, "the truth of conviction," title of a work, III. 225.

Hakem beamr allah, a Fatimite Khalif, adored as a God by the Druses, II. 421 n. 1.

Hakem ben Hasham, an imposter, and rebel against the ruling Khalif, III. 3 n. 1.

Hakikat, "truth, reality," III. 29, 36.

Hakiket al hakâyek, "reality of realities," III. 222.

Hakim dostur, a learned contemporary of Mohsan Fani, III. 293—his creed, 210, 241.

Hal, "state," its meaning in the terminology of the Sufis, III. 242 n. 2.

Halal, "the new moon," III. 261.

Hâlânâmeh, a work of Bâyérid, III. 27, 28—extracts from this work, 34, 38.

Hamballah, a Muhammedan sect, II. 333.

Hamdan, town in Persia, II. 472.

Hamestan, one of the seven heavens, explanation of them, I. 293 n.

Hamid eddin Nagori, author of a Commentary upon love, III. 241.

Hamilton, Charles, III. 88 n. 1.

Hamiyal, bad deeds, I. 328.

Hammer (baron'), quoted, I. 82 n. 34; II. 300, 322, 350 363 n. 1, 408 n. 1, 423, 442 n. 2, 456; III. 97 n. 1, 123 n. 4, 177 n. 1, 212 n. 1, 221 n. 1, 232 n. 1, 241 n. 1.

Hamshepat mibdim, the sixth Gâhambar, I. 347, ibid. n. 1.

Hamza, uncle of Muhammed, the prophet, killed in battle, III. 11 n. 1.

Hanbal Ahmed Ebn Hanbal, the head of a Muhammedan sect, II. 329, 329, 332.

Hanîfî, or Abu Hanifa al Noman Ebn Thabet, founder of a Muhammedan sect, the Hanifites—his sephulcre, I. 51; II. 329 n.; accused to have been attached to have been attached to Magism, III. 63.

Haniûfâ, name of a Muhammedan sect, II. 335.

Hansa-mantra, a particular prayer, II. 134 n.

Hansa radja, a Brahman, II. 184.

Hanuman, a deity, II. 219.

Hanuman, chief of savage tribes, called monkeys, ally of Rama, II. 23 n. 3.

Hara, a mount near Mecca, appeared interposing between the two sections of the moon, miraculously cloven by Muhammed, III. 68 n. 1.

Hara Râma puri, a Sanyâsi and Juâni, his speech, conduct, death, II. 106, 109.

Haratirîh, a holy place of Kachimir, II. 166.

Hâr azar, a fire-temple, l. 47.

Harbanists, Harranites, a sect of Sabean, III. 311 n.

Harbayânts, a sect of Vaichnavas, II. 184.

Harvwar, a place in the province Delhi, holy place of the Hindus, II. 197 n. 1.


Hargovind, son of Arjunmal, II.
INDEX.

343

248—a warlike Guru—why he wore two swords in his girdle, 273 n. 4—imprisoned by Jehangir during twelve years, 274—serves Shah Jehan—acts in the Punjab—wars with Shah Jehan's troops, 276—retires to the mountainous country of Raja Tarachand, 276—spreads far his religion, 276—his creed, 277—a parable of his, 277, 279—date of his death, 280.


Haridas (Gosain), founder of a sect, II. 232, 233.

Har Krishna, successor to the Guru Harrayi of the Sikhs, II. 288 n. 1.

Harun (Aaron), II. 288.

Harun, a Jew, convert and disciple of Farzana Bahram, I. 136, 137.

Harvali, a Dakhani word for the Sanscrit Durva grass, II. 80.

Hasan, son of Ali, the last of the legitimate khalifs, II. n. 1.

Hasho-bash, "presence and absence" at court, I. 161.

Hashaviyat Ashaibiah, a class of Muhammadans, II. 334.

Hashathanagar, "eight townships" in Afghanistan, III. 41.

Hashu, name of a Nok of the Zand-Avesta, I. 274.

Hasan al Basri, a short account of him, II. 389 and n. 1; III. 18 n. 2.

Hassen ben Hassain ben Ali ben Abbak, eminient in scholastic theology, II. 378.

Hassan, son of Saba, a deputy of the Imam, author of a book—abstract of it, II. 411, 417—his lineage, 423, 424 n. 1—comes to Nishapur, 420—his favor and disgrace at court, 427, 429—his travels, 429—goes to Egypt, 430—favor and disgrace there—goes to Syria, 430, 431—travels, spreads his doctrine, gains the fort Alamut, 432, 433—purchases it, 434—acquires Rudbar and Khorasan, 435—he conducts and dominates, ibid. n. 2.—orders the death of two of his sons, appoints his successor, 441—date of his death, 436, 442.

Hassan Fakrani, a minister of Kia Buzurg Umid, II. 441.

Hassan Mazind-rani, killed Al-ad din, ruler of the Almutians, II. 447.

HAVAIET, "giving in charge," a term of the Ismailahs, II. 406.

Havayi manavi, "the true soul," III. 142.

Hazaj, Arabian metre, I. 1, 2.

Hazarah, a tribe distinct from the Afghans and Moghuls, III. 43—a short account of them, ibid. n. 1.

Hazarat ghaiy mus af, "the presence of the relative mystery," III. 238.

Hazarat jamâh, "the presence of the veil," III. 239.

Hazarat mus af ghaiy, "the presence of the mysterious relation," III. 238.

Hazarat shahadet mutlak, "the presence of the absolute evidence," III. 238.


Heramis (Idris, Enoch), establishes fumigations and wine sacrifices, II. 160.


Herevetmâd, name of Zoroaster's father, according to the Desâf, I. 213 n. 290 n.

Hermes al Hermes, III. 105—his epoch, several Hermes, 106 n. 1.

Hermippus, treats expressly of Zoroaster's works, I. 224 n.
Hermodoros, a Platonic philosopher, quoted, I. 212 n.
Hrnán, the founder of a sect, branch of the Sabceans. III. 105 n.
Hrnanites, or Herranites, a sect. III. 105 n.
Heró, son of Armenian, compared to Arda-Viraf. I. 304 n. 1.
Herodotus, quoted, I. 47, 171, 209, 340; II. 37: III. 111.
Hertushad, name for Zarushht, in the Desârî, I. 280 n.
Hêtu, "cause, reason," II. 208.
Hikmet al-āín, "the science of what is essential," III. 218.
Hirbed, ascetic, learned man. I. 17, 18—minister for the purpose of adoration, 241.
Hirbed Sar, the pure high-priest. I. 147.
Hirbed, a descendant from Zarushht, and learned contemporary of Mohsan Fâni. III. 204.
Hitcherasp, an ancestor of Zarushht. I. 215 n.
Hokh shēhchrâtemâ, a short prayer, I. 334—variations of the name, ibid. n. 1.
Holâgu Khan, son of Tului Khan, becomes master of the person of Rukn-Edîn, and of the fort Mâum-diz. II. 449 n.—takes more than forty castles of the Ismâilâhs—completes the conquest of this sect. 450 n.—marches towards Baghdad—takes the town and the khâfit, whom he puts to a cruel death, ibid.
Hom, a tree, its juice employed in sacrifices, I. 315 n. 1.
Hom, the first apostle of the law. I. 335 n.
Hôma, burnt offering. II. 35, 62—when to be performed by a Brahman, 77, 78, 81, 82, 101, 199.
Hônover, "pure desire." II. 26 n. 1.
Hormuz-azar, "a fire-temple." I. 47.
Hormuzd, a person of the Radian sect, I. 203.
Hormuzd (Jupiter), description of his form. I. 36, 37—angel preceding over the first day of every month, 62 n.
Hoshidar, father of Bahram, entitled Hamawand, and, by the nation, Shapur. I. 270.
Hôshwâžhen, "a trance." I. 85.
Hoshyar (Mobed), author of the Sarud-i-Mastan, "the Songs of the intoxicated," his descent—becomes a disciple of Kaivan. I. 110—his mode of devotion—manners, 111, 113—his death, 112.
Hossain, Husain (Imâm), son of Ali, where killed. I. 47—account of his death. II. 330 n. 1.
Hossain, a son of Hassan Sabah, put to death by order of his father. II. 441.
Hossain Fâni, a chief of the Ismâilâhs, defends Mumin-abad. II. 437.
Hossain Fânt, the daâi of Kohistan, put to death by a son of Hassan Sabah. II. 441.
Hossain Mansûr Hallaj, a disciple of Joneid. III. 291 n. 1.
Hossain, son of Mâzîn edîn Mâbedî, III. 247 n. 2, 246.
Hossein (Shaikh), of Khorassan, contemporary of Mahmûd Shebistéri. III. 237 n. 3.
Hostanes Archimagus, makes first known in Europe the Persian religion and philosophy. I. 223 n.
Hotukshshan, name of the fourth class of the people. I. 19 n.
Hrid, "heart," one of the six regions of the human body. II. 130.
Hudâh, son of Jâl Alâd, I. 477.
Hue, the niece of Jamasp, third wife of Zoroaster. I. 281 n.
Hûr, Hûri, "celestial virgin," III. 159, 162.
Huristâr, name of the first class of the people. I. 18.
Hushang, king and prophet. I. 30, 31—son of Siânuk. 88.
Hushiar (Mobed), carries in his arms the author of the Dabistan, in his infancy to be blessed by Chatur Vâpah. II. 145.
INDEX.

Hushian, a sect of the Persian religion, I. 6.
Hoshidar, a descendant from Zardushht, I. 232.
Hushidarmah, a descendant from Zardushht, I. 232.
Hushiar Reifik Nikarindah, a person of the tribe of Maksud chep, II. 361.
Hushyar (Mobed), his works, quoted, I. 72.
Huviyat, "essence," III. 222.
Huz ul Hayat, a Persian work, of Ambaret Kant, containing the sayings of Goraknath, II. 137.
Hyde (Thomas), quoted, I. 47 n. 60, 70, 95, 142, 143, 206, 210, 215, 219, 222, 224, 243, 245, 246, 253, 263, 273, 283, 284, 296, 297, 303, 306, 314, 324, 326, 331, 337.

I.—J.

Jaffriyah, a town in Arabian Irak, I. 307 and n. 3.
Jabel al Hamli, a celebrated theologian, I. 384.
Jabr, Shemsetdin, III. 234 n.
Jaber, Jaberiah, a Muhammedan sect, II. 330 n. 2, 332 n. 1.
Jabilka, a fabulous town, I. 279.
Jablisa, a fabulous town, I. 279.
Jabril, an angel, his functions, II. 337—emanated from the tenth power of intelligence, III. 145—similar to human nature, ibid. —cleaves the breast of Muhammed, and washes his heart, 177 n. 2—his form described, 178, 179—directs Muhammed on his way to heaven, 182, 283—conducts him to his own celestial mansion, 190—to the heavenly tabernacle, 194—remains behind the prophet, 195 n.—he is the highest secretary and first intelligence, 236—brings happy news to Muhammed, 240—figures as the science of divinity, 246—the image of wisdom, 231.
Jacob, son of Joseph (Rabbi), translator of the five books of Moses from Arabic into Persian, II. 300.
Jad, a measure of time, I. 14.
Jadvar, superintendent of police, I. 169.
Jadongois, solicitor of money from the wealthy, I. 292, 320.
Jadu, a Fakir, disciple of Sath rah, H. 110—his free conduct—death, 110, 114, 142.
Jafir Mosudder, son of Muhammed meetum, "the expected," II. 399 n. 1.
Jafir sadik, the sixth Imam, II. 390—son of Muhammed Baker—his birth and death, ibid. n. 1.
Jaganath, a boy, eight years old, who ridiculed idolatry, II. 105, 106.
Jagar prarag, a sect, II. 128.
Jagaravastha, "state of being awake," II. 92.
Jagat ambà, mother of the universe, name of Mayà, II. 150.
Jagganath, town with a holy temple, II. 70.
Jaghir, allotment made by the state to an individual, I. 176.
Jahad, "holy war upon unbelievers," III. 262.
Jahandas, a Sikh, pretender to the dignity of a Guru, anecdote of him, II. 282, 283.
Jahan Navard, an individual of the Paikarian sect, I. 204.
Jahmi Ebn Sefwan, head of a sect, II. 332 n. 2.
Jai Afram, son of Abad, called to the throne, II. 23 — assumes the government and restores the institutions of his father, 21, 88.
Jai Alad, son of Jai Afram, the last monarch of the Jai dynasty, I. 24, 88.
Jalpa, "dispute," II. 208 n. 4.
Jamāatt, "assembly," II. 324 n. 2.
Jamāṭa, a Muhammadan sect, II. 326.
Jamal Gilli, a learned man in Kazvin, and secret Ismaïlah, protected by Ala-eddîn, II. 447.
Jamana, "erucation," II. 133 n. 1.
Jamsap, brother, or minister, of Gushi-asp, prophet, supposed author of a Persian work, translated into Arabic. I. 112 and n. 3 — receives hallowed milk from Zardusht, 239 — Jamsap's words quoted, 338, 339, 360, 361.
Jambilicus, his life of Pythagoras, quoted, I. 277 n. 1.
Jamen, servant of Madar, killed, devoured, restored to life, II. 224, 225 — a saint of that name, proves his virtue, 226.
Jami (Maulavi), the surname of Abdal Rahmen, quoted, I. 83; III. 173 n. 2.
Jam-i-Kai Khusro, work of Azar Kaivan, quoted, I. 76.
Jamshei, also called Yekanabin, a sect, I. 193.
Jamshepsians, a sect, i. 193.
Janka, king of Mithila, a legend of him, II. 235, 236, 246 to 246.
Jana loka, one of the fourteen spheres, II. 12 — region of the sons of Brahma. ibid. n. 5.
Jangamana, sect of Hindus — their belief, II. 218.
Jangranghâchah, master of Jamsap — writes to Gushtasp — disputes with Zardusht, I. 276 — adopts his faith, 277.
Jani (Gosain), founder of a sect of Vaichnavas, II. 234.
Japa, a rite of the Hindus, II. 33 — muttering prayers, 126.
Jarudiya, a branch of the Zaydiyat, II. 363 n. 1.
Jasa, a Brahman, in whose house the Kalki-avatar is to take place, II. 24.
Jashen Sudah, a work of Mobed Hushyar, I. 72.
Jashn-i-Sadah, "festival of Sadah," work of Mobed Hushyar, I. 112.
Jata karma, a rite of the Hindus, II. 35 and n. 2.
Jats, a low class of Hindus, II. 112 — a short account of them, 270 n. 1.
Jaya diva, a Râmânandi, author of a mystical poem upon Krishna and Radhâ, I. 180 n. 1, 182 n. 4.
Jayakari, philosophers, attached to temporariness, III. 308.
Jazbet, "attraction," III. 294 n. 2.
Iblis, "Satan," II. 347 n. 1 — ordered to adore Adam, III. 8 n. 2, 9 n. — the power of imagination, 146.
Ibrahim (Mufti), a zealous adherent to the creed of the Shiah, II. 364.
Idris (or Enoch, see Hermes), III. 106 n. 1.
Jelal Bokhari (Sa'id), III. 236 n. 1.
Jelal-eddin, sultan of Khurasan and other provinces. retires before Jangis Khan, II. 449 n. — gains two battles over the Mughuls — flies towards the Indus — is overthrown in a battle on that river — destroys his whole family, and passes the river, III. 147 n. 1.
Jelal-eddin, son of Miyân Bayezid,
INDEX.

III. 42—succeeds to his father's dignity, *ibid.*—brought before the emperor Akbar—flies—takes Ghizni—cannot maintain himself, 43—is defeated and killed, 44.

Jelal-eddin Bokhara, founder of a sect, II. 226 n. 2.

Jelal-eddin Hassan, ben Muhammed, ben Hassan, the sixth ruler of the Alamutians, II. 446 n. 2—date of his death, 447.

Jelal-eddin Rumi (Mawlana), the most celebrated mystical poet of the Orient, III. 123 n. 4.

Jelal-eddin Rumi (Mawlana), disciple of Mohi-eddin, III. 234 n. 1.

Jelalian, a sect of Muhammedans, II. 226, 227, 228; III. 256 n. 1.

Jemal-eddin masteher, writer upon prophecy and unity, II. 379.

Jemal-an, a sect, III. 256.

Jemshid, king and prophet, I. 30, 31—a law of his quoted, 73—son of Tahmuras, 88—his sentiments expressed to Abtin, 194.

Jemshid, author of many philosophical works, 195.

Jengis Khan, dates of his birth and death, I. 160 n. 1; III. 113 and n. 1, 119 n. 1—destroys the dominion of the Seljuk dynasty, II. 449 n.—divides his empire before his death, *ibid.*—worshipper of the stars, III. 112—subject to trances and epileptic fits—particulars relative to them—practises divination by means of combs, 113—made prisoner, recovers his liberty, 114—is just and equitable, *ibid.*—appoints his successor, 115—he last advice to his sons, 118, 119—duration of his dynasty, 121 n. 1.

Jersht, the fourteenth Nosk of the Zand-Avesta, its contents, I. 274.

Jermagun, a general of Oktayi Khan, sent with a force against Jelal-eddin, king of Khurassan, whom he defeats, III. 116, 117.

Jernushar, name of Jemshid, I. 31 n. Ithlam, how interpreted by the Ismâilahls, II. 408 n. 2.

Jin, "spirits of fire," III. 236.

Jitendriya, "who has subdued the senses," II. 239.

Ijihâd, "rational dialectics," III. 378 n. 2.


Jivânas, son of Sásan, resides in Kabulistan, I. 276 n. 2.

Jivatâma, "the vital principle, or spirit," II. 92.

Ihâshah, followers of the religion of Akbar, III. 48.

Ilam-eddin, named Burzin-Khan (Ha-kim) built Vizirabad, a town, II. 194.

Ilhâm, "inspiration," III. 174 n. 1.

Imâm, Imâmat, a religious dignitary, and office—conditions thereof, II. 362, 363—twelve Imâms, enumerated, 367, 368 n. 1—their prohibitions of science, 375—instructions, 376—seven Imâms of the Ismâilahls, 400; II. 172, 173.

Imânah (The), a class of Muhammedan sectaries, II. 388; III. 12.

Imâmâyat âsûlin, a sect, II. 383.

Imbal, a fort in Kharazm, surrenders to the besieging Moghuls for want of water, at the very moment of a heavy fall of rain, III. 120.


Jâna skandha, "personality," II. 197.

Jânâm vomtam, "the highest state of beatitude," II. 93.

Jânâ, possessor of the Vedanta science, II. 96.

Jânâindra, particular class of Jnânis, II. 103.

Jânâskandha, "the knowledge of animal nature," II. 198.

Indra, "the window of life, the passage of the soul" where placed, II. 154.

Indra, regent of the East (Purva) II. 219.

Indrazarahayog Vaishta, name
INDEX.

given to the instructions of Vasihshta to Rama, II. 28.
Indriya, "exterior senses." II. 204
—six senses, 206.
Insan Kamil, "the perfect man," III. 276 n. 2.
Jolli handi, a sect, II. 128.
Jog-Vasihshta (also Yog-vasihshta, and Vasihshta-yog), name given to Vasihshta's instructions to Rama, II. 28, 96, 236, 268.
Joneid Abu 'l Kasem, III. 273 n. 4.
Jones (sir William), denies the authenticity of Zoroaster's works published in French, I. 223 n.
Jorjani, author of the Commentary upon the Mewakif, II. 323.
Jorjani, author of Definitions, quoted, III. 141 n. 1, 174 n. 1, 224 n. 1, 229 n. 2, 230 n. 1, 231 n. 2, 239 n. 2, 276 n. 2.
Jourdan (Am.), translator of a work of Mirkhoud, II. 423.
Iradet, a mystic term of the Druses, III. 64 n. 2—other definitions of it, 224 n. 1.
Iraj, son of Feridun, permits destructive animals to be eaten, I. 74.
Isana, the north-east region—regent between the north and east, II. 33, 219 n. 1.
Isapucha, worship of God, II. 126.
Isfandamaz-jah, the third additional day of the Persian year, I. 62 n.
Isfendiar, son of king Gushth-asp—promoter of fire-worship, I. 50, 88—his history and death, 191 n. 1—receives one grain of the hallowed pomegranate from Zar drought, and becomes brazen-bodied, 260—allergies ascribed to him, 363, 364, 365, 366—a prisoner in the fort Gambadan, 371.
Isharet, "indications," title of a work, III. 218 n. 3.
Ishmata, one of the five failings, II. 120.
Ishnak Shuhab uddin Maktul (Shaikh), his works translated into Persian, I. 122.
Ishtam, "sacrifice, obligation," II. 135 n. 4.
Iskander (Alexander), seeks the fountain of life, I. 37, 68 and n. 1—explanation of this allegory, ibid.
Islam, the Muhammedan faith, II. 322—its principal part, 341 to 357, 353.
Isma'il (Imam), son of Jafr sadik, II. 297, 398 n.—his disappearance—different versions about it, 398, 399.
Isma'il Bég, a follower of Mazdak's faith, I. 378.
Isma'il Isfahani (Mulla), III. 297.
Isma'il Safavi, king of Persia, his system with regard to hereditary dignity, I. 163.
Isma'il Sufi, of Ardistan, a descendant from Musa, I. 32 n. 200.
Isma'il Suli (Mulla) of Isfahan, quoted, II. 32.
Isma'il Shah (The), II. 397, 399 n. 1—acknowledge the legitimate succession from Jafr to his son Isma'il, 399 n. 1—their creed, 400 to 404 (see Batenian)—different names given to the Ismaliyahs, 421 n. 1—duration of their existence, and overthrow by Holagu, 430 n.—remains of this sect in Persia and India, ibid. n.
Israfil, an angel, his function, II. 337—one of the powers of the sun, III. 145.
Istakhr, town of Persia, I. 48 and n. 8.
Istidid, "the arguers," a sect, II. 390—one called Mashayin, ibid. n. 4.
Istidrak, "a sort of miracle," III. 274 n. 1.
Istinsk, "washing the nostrils," III. 259.
Istinsar, "drawing up water through the nostrils," III. 259.
Isvara, "the necessary being," II. 423.
Ita ahu Virio, a form of prayer, I. 313 and n. 1, 319, 321.
Itlaf sarf, "absolute excellence," III. 283.
Juji, son of Jengis Khan, the countries destined to him by his father enumerated—dies before his father, III. 116 n.
Jush, or Gush, angel presiding over the fourteenth day of every month, I. 62 n.
Justin, I. 33 n. 1.
Jyotish toma, "sacrifice of four "goats," II. 82, 83.
Ized, explained, I. 96 n.
Ized Dahman, a celestial being, who blesses the just man and conducts his soul to heaven, I. 238 n.
Izeshne, the Pehlevi name of a work, part of the Zend-Avesta, I. 225 n.
—translated into French, 226 n.
—explained, 316 n.

K.

Kabah, holy temple of Mecca, by whom built, I. 47 n.; II. 409 n.
2—frequently mentioned as the Kibla of the Muhammedans, see Kiblah.
Kahir, a disciple of Ramakandara, II. 186 n. 2—a Vairagi—his first meeting with his master, 187 to 188—some of his speeches, 189—his charity, 190—after his death Hindus and Muhammedans claim his burial, 191—his corpse disappears, ibid. n. 1.
Kacha, son of Vrisspati, his legend, II. 225 n. 1.
Kadariah, Kadarian, a Muhammedan sect, II. 325 n. 1, 333 n. 1.
Kadr, "God's particular will," II. 352 n. 1, III. 233.
Kaf, a fabulous mount, II. 260 n. 2; III. 249 n. 1 (see Alburz).
Kafiris, called Kafir katirz, a tribe from Kabilia, III. 301.
Kahgur, one of the principal religious works of the Tibetans, II. 291 n. 2.
Kah Zand, "little Zand," I. 352, 353.
Kajak, name of God with the Tibetans, II. 289 n. 1.
Kaim makam, "vice-regent," III. 203.
Kai-kaus, the second king of the Kayan dynasty, his epoch, I. 32 and n. 8—his attempted ascent to heaven and downfall explained, 56.
Kai Khuro, king and prophet, I. 30, 163—resigns the crown—disappears suddenly, 192 n.—kills Afrasiab, II. 130 n. 1—lives still, by means of a peculiar mode of breathing, 136.
Kai Kobad, son of Zab, I. 88.
Kai Nishin, brother of Kai-Kaus, interprets the adventure of his brother, I. 56—son of Kai Kobad, 88.
Kalvan azar, a fire-temple, I. 47.
Kakak (Ibrahim), founder of a sect, his life, conduct, speech, II. 229, 230.
Kakan, a sect founded by Ibrahim Kakak, II. 229.
Kala-dek (Kaladiya), peculiar rite of the Sactians, II. 135.
Kalem, "scholastic theology," definition thereof, II. 327 n. 2, 375 n. 1.
Kalian Bharati, a Sanyasi, his ac—
INDEX.

count of Shah Abas, king of Persia, II. 146, 147.
Kalinga, name of a province in India, II. 3.
Kalinga, a city, in which is the temple of the tortoise, II. 70.
Kalas'kha, sacred tree, II. 80.
Kala-skandha, *ibid.* n. 6.
Kali Warastah (Imam), "the Humble," his verses quoted, I. 138.
Kaliyug, the fourth age of the Hindus, II. 24—when it begins, *ibid.* n. 1—its fixed duration, 48,000 years.
Kalci-Avatar, the tenth Avatar of Vichnau, II. 24—when to take place, *ibid.*
Kalpa, a part of the Vedas, on ceremonies, II. 63 n. 1.
Kamada, sexual love, II. 134.
Kamali, distinguished Vahadhi, killed by Abas, III. 23, 24.
Kamal ed-din, son of Miyan Bavezid, III. 42.
Kamer (the moon), the son of Atri, the Sage, II. 29—bears the title of superior wisdom, III. 200, 201—a mixed light with a particular property, 202—the seal of perfection, 244.
Kam-hihdas, a sect, II. 128.
Kam Joli, a follower of the Samradian doctrine—verses of his quoted, I. 200.
Kamkar, an ascetic of the Samradian sect, I. 197—author of a treatise containing amusing anecdotes, 198—examples of them, *ibid.* 199, 200.
Kamran (Hakim), of Shiraz, performs a supposed miracle, I. 117.
Kamran of Shiraz (Hakim), relates a speech of Chatur Vapah, II. 143.
Kamran, of Shiraz, a Peripatetic, III. 203—his erudition—conduct, 206, 207—death—burial, 208—his opinions, 211, 216—his behavior towards another sect, 217—the books which he read with his disciples, 217, 218, 219.
Kamus, a Khodayi (merchant), I. 201.
Kanesh bhat; a Jnaindra, II. 107.
Kanigaram, a place on the borders of Kandahar, III. 28.
Kanta, wind-pipe, II. 132.
Kapal-asan, a particular rite of devotion, I. 123.
Kar, a class of Sanyasis, II. 139.
Karana, "cause," II. 17.
Karana sarira, "the original frame," II. 177 n.
Karankabanta, a Dakhani word for a sacred tree, II. 80.
Karanyaksha, a demon, carries the earth under water, II. 20.
Kargi, a Telinga word for the Sanskrit Durva, sacrificial grass, II. 80.
Karkh, a quarter of Baghdad, II. 400 n. 2.
Karma, Saturn's stay in each mansion of his orbit, I. 27.
Karmah hormuzi, Jupiter's stay in each mansion of his orbit, I. 27.
Karmatians, a sect, founded by Hamdan, surnamed Karmata, II. 421 n. 1.
Karsal, a Saturnian year, I. 27.
Karsal hormuzi, Jupiter's period, I. 27.
Karun, Korah, the cousin of Moses, according to the Muhammedans, III. 70 n. 1.
Karuna, "tenderness, pity," II. 121.
Kasam Khan, quoted, III. 203.
Kaseb, "acquisition," II. 333 n.
Kashef mani, "inner revelation," III. 274.
Kashef ul mahjub, "the revelations of the veiled Being," III. 265.
Kashef suri, "exterior revelation," III. 274.
Kashial, a place in the mountains of Kashmir, inhabited by a particular sect, their customs, II. 244.
Kashmar, Kichmar, town in Khurasan, where is Zardusht's cypress-tree I. 280 n. 306 and n. 3.
Kasimovsky, translator of the Koran into French, quoted, III. 72 n. 1.
Kasur, its mystical signification, III. 159, 162.
INDEX.

Kasiyapa, a sect, II. 128.
Katha, Krishna's advice to Arjuna, II. 96.
Kavi-sastra, "poetics," II. 165.
Kawser, a river of paradise, II. 344 n. 1—in Gabriel's heavenly mansion, a source like wine, III. 190 n. 1.
Kayastha, the writer cast, belonging to the fourth class among the Hindus, II. 144 n. 1.
Kayomors, name equivalent to Gilshah, etymology of both names, I. 29 n.—son of Yasa Ajam, 88.
Kaz a, God's universal judgment, II. 352 n. 1; III. 233.
Kazil Suruk, a general of Malikshah, besieges Mumin-abad, a fort of the Isma'ilah, his army disperses, II. 437.
Kazlbasch, "red-head," name given to the Persians by the Turks, I. 160 n. 1.
Kazvin, town of Persia, II. 172.
Kehatiyias, the second class of the Hindus, their destination, II. 48—what they are to learn—to perform, 78.
Kermet, "prodigy," III. 173 n. 2.
Keramiah, Keramian, a Muhammedan sect, II. 331.
Kera-Tahitian, the inhabitants of Tibet, their religion, II 289, 292.
Kerb, "proximity," III 294 n. 1.
Kerges, a fabulous bird, I. 36 n. 4.
Kerimdad, son of Jelal eddin, son of Bâyezid, delivered up to his enemies and put to death, III. 47.
Kermahab, place of resort for the Persian kings, III. 107 n. 2.
Kersi, the throne of God, the crystalline heaven, II. 346.
Kesayi Tivari, a Brahman of Be- nares, settled at Lahore, II. 90.
Keserob, the tenth Noak of the Zand-Avesta, its contents, I. 273 n.
Khadija, Muhammad's wife, H. 300, 398 n.
Khadira, (Khandira), sacrificial wood, II. 80.
Khaisar, a town in the Arabian province of Hejaz, III. 51 n. 2.
Khair al Ban, a book of the Roshe- nian, III. 44.
Khair eddin, son of Bâyezid, III. 42 n. 1.
Khâkani (Hakim), quoted, III. 14, 168.
Khaki, merchant of the Shidabian sect, I. 207.
Khala, quitting and reasuming the body at pleasure, I. 86.
Khaled, son of Valid, and general of Abu Bekr, defeats the army of Musaylima, who is killed, III. 4 n. 1.
Kharchang (Crab), constellation which the Persian astronomers represented by a tortoise, II. 19.
Khatar hari, a sacred tree, II. 80.
Khashar, name of a Noak of the Zand-Avesta, I. 275.
Khâtem, "the seal," III. 244.
Kherka, the patched coat of asces- tics, II. 228.
Khesht, the twelfth Noak of the Zand-Ave-ta, its contents, I. 274 n.
Khizir (Elia), discovers the fountain of life, I. 37 n. 2, 38 n. 1.
Khodâddâd (Mobed), founder of a sect, his opinion, I. 201.
Khoda Jâi (Mobed), quoted, I. 76—disciple of Azar Kaivan—his attainments and austerities, 118—author of a Commentary upon Kaivan's poems—his death, 119.
Khozairiyan, a sect, followers of Mobed Khodâddâd, I. 204.
Khogia Shams eddin Muhammed, III. 217 n. 1.
Khur, angel presiding over the 11th day of every month, I. 63 n.
Khurstar, noxious animals, I. 292.
Khurdad, name of an angel and a
INDEX.

month, I. 61, 62 n.—gives

dictions and instructions to Zar-
dusht,242 — appears in Gushtasp's

castle, 257.

Khurramah, a name of the Ismai-
lahs, II. 421 n. 1.

Khurshid chehar, one of Zar-
dusht's three sons, I. 293 n. 1.

Khurshid Pâyah, the solar sphere,
I. 289.

Khuszhundi namah, certificate of
good behaviour, I. 176.

Kia Buzerk umid, successor to Has-
san Sabah in Alamut, II. 436,
441—his conduct, 442—duration of
his reign, ibid. n. 1.

Kiblah, that part, or object, to
which people direct their face in
prayer, 1. 33 n.—term frequently
used in the whole work.

Kic Khan, of the family of Chaghat-
khan, proves his love of practical
justice, III. 119, 120.

Kimiâyî Sâdat, “ alchymy of felici-
city,” a work of Ghazâli, recom-
manded for perusal in Akbar's
ordinances, III. 123.

Kirânya Kâsimpu, a demon slain by
Vichnu, II. 21.

Kifah, “ good deeds,” I. 341, 343
and n. 2.

Kimma, a form of prayer, I. 325
and n. 1, 331.

Kisâlîhâzra, place of pilgrimage in
Kachmir, II. 166.

Kishtovar, a town in Lahore, II. 108
n. 1.

Kitâbal Jafir, III. 234 n.

Klunker (John Frederic), translated
the Zand-Avesta, from French
into German, with Comments, I.
223 n.

Knef, the good principle of the
Egyptians, III. 106 n.

Kobad, the eighteenth king of the
Sassanians, supports the prophet
Mazdak—expelled from Persia,
reovers the throne, I. 193 n. 1.

Koheli, a tribe of Kehatriyas, II.
194.

Kohistan (Khorassan), one of the
principal seats of the Eastern
Ismâilahs, II. 423.

Koran (The), quoted, II. 331, 333—de-
clared the summary of four sacred
books, 340—quoted, 334, 338,
371, 396 n. 1, 400 n. 1, 434: III.
8 n. 2, 68 n. 1, 72, 79 n. 2, 88
n. 1, 104 n. 3, 146, 149 n. 1, 150,
152 n. 1, 161, 166, 212 n. 1,
234, 253, 274, 274 n. 1, 290.

Koshâ, sheaths constituting the sub-
title frame of the rudimental
body, II. 177 n.

Kote, equal to ten millions, II. 35.

Krichna-Avâtâr, the eighth Avâtâr
of Vichnu, II. 24.

Krichna, a Kehatriya, II. 24—when
he appeared, ibid.—has 16,000
wives—explanation of it, 31, 32,
183.

Krichna paksha, the dark half of a
month, II. 18.

Krita yugam, the age of the right-
eous, III. 47 n. 1, 50 n.

Kufah (town), burial-place of the
Imâm Abu Hanifâh—its fire-tem-
pies, I. 51, 52.

Kûlar, a Dakhani word for the
Indian fig-tree, II. 80.

Kumbî, cultivator, II. 78.

Kunda, sacrificial hole or pit in the
ground, II. 79.

Kundeli, snake—a vein of the hu-
man body, II. 134.

Kundish-hûkht, temple erected by
Zohak, I. 50.

Kunti, wife of Pandu, II. 67 n. 4.

Kurban, “ sacrificing,” III. 262.

Kurbet, proximity to God, III. 29,
36, 37.

Kurma-Avâtâr, tortoise Avâtâr, II. 18.

Kuratamân, paradise, I. 200.

Kusa, sacrificial grass, II. 79.

Kushâman, a short prayer, I. 332
and n. 1.

Kutwal, police-officer, or inspector
— instructions for his conduct,
III. 132 to 136.

Kuvala lotus, birth of Braham, II. 16.

Kuvéra, regent of the North (uttara),
II. 219.
INDEX.

L.

Lahid, one of the seven Arabian poets, whose poems were suspended in the temple of Mecca, III. 65 n. 1.

Lachmana, brother of Rama-chandra, II. 36.

Lahjan, a town in the province of Gilan, III. 141 n. 3.

Lajard (Felix), member of the French Institute, quoted, I. 293 n.

Lali, translator of a work of Jamasp, I. 112.

Lamas, "pilgrims," their customs, II. 291.

Lamiser, a fort taken by the Ismailshs, II. 439—destroyed by Holagu, 449 n.

Lanka (Ceylon), II. 23—a fort, built of gold and goits, ibid.

Larang, name of the Divinity, I. 86.

Larakun, place of pilgrimage in Kachmir, II. 166.

Lashkar Navis, "army-registrar," I. 156.

Lassen (Christian), maintains the genuineness and antiquity of the Zand language, I. 223 n.

Lawh-Mahfuz, "the tables of destiny," III. 283.

Leibnitz, quoted, III. 240 n. 2.

Leo X. Pope, III. 208 n.

Leyden (John), quoted, II. 246, 247 n.; III. 42 n. 47, 48.

Lim Sar, "dwelling on high," I. 151.

Linga, "virile organ," II. 152 n. 3—naked rudiment of the body, 177 n.

Lingga purusha, visiona subtile body, II. 178 n. 1.

Lingga sarira, "visional body," II. 177.

Lord (Henry), traveller in the East, I. 225 n.

Lohrasp, son of Arvand, I. 88—cured of a malady, and converted, by Zardusht, 235—imprisons Isfendiar, 191 n. 1—supposed length of his reign, 278 n.—is killed in battle, 371.

Lubbani, author, quoted, II. 193.

Lulies, public women in Persia, I. 118 n. 1; II. 70.

Lucenta-kes a, "hair-pluckers," a class of Buddhists, II. 212 n. 2.

Lunati, "unitarians among the Jats," a class of Buddhists, II. 213.

Lycophron, quoted, 112 n.

M.

Maad, "resurrection," III. 278.


Mahzad, son of Gurgin, although a lunatic, maintained in the government, I. 163.

Mach'a, name of a Nok of the Zand-Avesta, I. 275.

Macrobius, quoted, I. 205.

Mada, "joy, pleasure," II. 121.

Madarian, a sect, II. 223.

Madhu Acharis, a class of the worshippers of Vishnu, II. 179.

V. III.
INDEX.

Madhwâcharya, founder of the sect of Brahma Sampradâyas, II. 179 n. 1. 181 n. 2.

Madhar, a descendent of Gurgin, becomes a lunatic, I. 163.

Mâlid (Shaikh), founder of a system of scholastic theology, II. 379. 380.

Magi, see Mobed, I. 17 n.

Mah (the moon), represented as a man, I. 40.

Mah, angel presiding over the twelfth day of every month, I. 62 n.

Mâh-ab, brother of Mihrab, I. 173 —resigns his person to servitude for another slave, 144.

Mâhâ âsana, peculiar mode of sitting, II. 134.

Mâhâ-atma, a distinguished class of Jatis, II. 213 — the miraculous power of one of them instanced, 214.

Mahâhad, first king, I. 15 — his acts, 16. 17.

Mâhâbad, place of pilgrimage, II. 166.

Mahâbadas, fourteen kings, I. 21.

Mahâbadian dynasty, its duration, I. 14.

Mahabat Khan, III. 216.

Mahâbharat, poem, quoted, II. 42. 67 n. 2.

Mahâbharat, translated by Abû Fazil, III. 101 — quoted, 110. 111.

Mahadeo (Siva), with a serpent round his neck, II. 32. 217 — what it means — what his attribute of destroyer, 32 — proceeds from the navel of Vichu — eight-faced, eight-armed — rides upon a bull — dressed in an elephant’s skin, rubbed with ashes, 217 — three-eyed. ibid.

Mahadeo, a Saktian, sitting upon a dead body, II. 159.


Mahakah, “assertors of truth.” a class of Muhammedan theologians, II. 380.

Mahârito, one of the fourteen spheres, II. 12 — its situation, ibid. n. 4.

Mahâsebi, a learned Muhammedan, II. 329 n. 2.

Maha Singh, son of Bahader Singh, the Raja of Kishôtâvar, disciple of Hara Rampuri, II. 108. 109.

Mahâ talâ loka, one of the fourteen spheres, II. 12 — an infernal region, ibid. n. 12.

Mahâtap indra, a Jnanindra, II. 107.

Mahât tatvam, “essential nature.” II. 10 — whence it proceeded, 13 and n. 3.

Mahâ-azar, a fire-temple, I. 47.

Mahdi, “guide,” I. 130 n. 1 — title of the twelfth Imâm, II. 383.

Mah-dinah, ancient name of Medina, I. 51.

Mahâsh, see Siva, II. 4.

Mah-gah, old name for Mecca, I. 48.

Mahâ-azar, name of a fire-temple, I. 52.

Mahir Chand, a goldsmith, disciple of Akamnath, II. 116.

Mahishâ Asura, a demon, under the form of a buffalo, killed by Durga, II. 163.

Mâhlad, a governor of Khorassan — orders his head to be cut off by the son of a man whom he had unjustly put to death, I. 159.

Mahmud (Shaikh), quoted, II. 191.

Mahmud, son of Malik Shah — his contest with his half-brother, Barkiarok, II. 137 n. 4.

Mahmud of Ghizma, son of Sebek teghin, the founder of his dynasty, I. 197 and n. 4.

Mahmud Beg Timân, disciple of Farzannah Brahâm, a seer of one God — his treatment of a wounded dog, I. 135 — his devotion, 136.

Mahmud Sabak teghin, founder of the dynasty of the Ghânasâvî, persecutor of Avisenna, II. 170 n. 1.

Mahmud Shebisteri, I. 82; III. 225 n. 1. 237 n. 3.

Mahmud Tarabi, head of a sect, III. 12 n. 1.
INDEX.

Mahnah, name of a vein. II. 432.
Mah Payah, lunar sphere. I. 289.
Mahn, mark of a man's former state. III. 20.
Makhsan Khan ghazi, a Moghul chief, defeats Miyan Bayzid. III. 41. 42 n. 1.
Maktra, Mathura, town in India, account of it. I. 33 and n.
Mähýär, a person mentioned in the Samarad namah, I. 201.
Mahyarur Ilm, ancient fire-temple. I. 51
Mah Zand, "great Zand," I. 332, 333.
Magha, January-February, II. 58.
Máihed, a town of Persia, III. 217 n. 2.
Máihedi, see Hossain, son of Máyín eddin. III. 217.
Májeedín Abu Taher Mühamed ben Yakub, compiler of a celebrated Arabic Dictionary, and of other works, III. 94 n. 1.
Májeed-doulah Abu Taleb Bustam, the eighth prince of the Buyi dynasty, II. 172 n. 2.
Májuez, a class of Súfís, III. 251 n.
Májuez salik, a class of Súfís, III. 251.
Máikail (Mikail), an angel presiding the truth of professions, II. 337—proceeds from the moon, III. 145—the greatest of all angels, 193.
Máiku Khan, or Mangu Khan, son of Tuit Khan, son of Jengis Khan—rules in Tartary. II. 449 n.—orders the death of Rukn-eddin, 450 n.
Máimirah, a name of the Ismaílís, II. 421.
Máimun, surnamed Kaddah, the ancestor of Said Muhammad Obeid-alla, Mahdí, II. 418 and n. 1.
Máizad, or Miezd, I. 319.
Mákbil Ben Soliman, a Muhammedan theologian, II. 332.
Manana, name of a vein, II. 132.
Manas, mind, the interior sense, possessing the three attributes of the divinity, II. 99, 100, 204.
Manavi (Manlavi), his verses quoted, I. 115, 130; III. 242.
Mandara, mountain, serving as a churn-staff of the ocean, II. 19 and n. 2.
Mani, painter, son of Faten, his epoch—doctrine—fate, I. 205 n. 3—further account of him, 372, 373 n.
Manjist wa mahelkat, "The Causes of Salvation and Perdition," a work recommended for perusal in Akbar's ordinances, III. 123.
Manicheaism, short account of it, I. 372, 373 n.
Mani parum, pit of the stomach, II. 131 n. 1. 132, 130.
Manir, a learned contemporary of Moheen Fani, III. 204, 205.
Manistan, world of similitude, I. 21.
Manishram, name given to Mars in the Desatir, I. 37 n.
Mankhah, name of a Nosk of the Zand-Avesta, I. 273.
Manus, "physiologists," III. 308.
Mansur I. son of Abdel malek, sixth king of the Samanids, origin of the dynasty, II. 169 n. 2.
Mansur, the son of Aziz, surnamed Alhakem ba amra, II. 422 and n. 1.
Mantek al tair, "the colloquy of the birds," quoted, III. 249 n. 1.
Manthar, a region of the human body, II. 131.
Mantik (Al.), logic, II. 327 n. 2.
Mantra, form of prayer, II. 79.
Manvantara, reign of a Manu, its duration stated, II. 50 n.—Manvantaras innumerable, ibid.
Manuwar Kuchwahah (Rai), quoted, II. 53.
Manu-Rama (Sti), an austere Brahman, in Lahore, II. 89, 90.
Manushya bhakta, worshippers of mankind, II. 244.
Maraga, in Azerbaijan, the residence of Hulagu, famous for its astronomical observatory, under the direction of Nasir eddin, III. 114 n. 1.
Marasfand, angel presiding over the twenty-ninth day of the month, I. 62 n.
Mard, a period of time, I. 14.
Mardad (Amardad), name of an angel and of a month, I. 61, 62 n.—gives instructions to Zarodust, 243.
Marg-irsiba, August, II. 83.
Marifat, "true knowledge," III. 29, 36, 37.
Marih, Mirthik (Mars), son of the earth, II. 38—a demon of a malignant influence, 44.
Marracci, author of the Prodromus, translator of the Koran, II. 323.
Maruf Karkhi, a Sufi, II. 390 n. 2, 276.
Marzaban, ben Abdullah, ben Maimun al Kadah, the founder of the Batenian, II. 400 n. 1.
Marzab, name of a Nosk of the Zand-Avesta, I. 273.
Masak, "metamorphosis," III. 130.
Mashayhin, "Peripatetics," III. 373 n. 2.
Mash had, holy sepulchre, III. 2 n. 2.
Masha and Mashiana, the first man and woman sprung from earth, I. 268 n. 1, 355 n.
Masjed al Nabi, the mosque of the prophet, I. 47.
Masnad, a Guru, or spiritual chief of the Sikhs, II. 271.
Masnad es sahib, work of Muhammed, called Bochari, III. 63.
Masum, "defended, preserved," a name of Muhammed, the Askrite, II. 306 n. 1.
Matii, temporary marriage, III. 62—various opinions about it, 88 n. 1.
Matakalem, Matakallman, Matkalman, II. 327 n. 2, 373, 391.
Matakellam al Asheri, a title of Sheheristani, II. 323.
Matakhir (Sufis), "the modern," II. 389.
INDEX.

Mátalalah, Matalițes, a Muhammadan sect, II. 325—their opinions, ibid. n. 1.
Mátalalah, "separatists," II. 325, 327, 325 n. 2.
Matmed Abası, son of Motavakel, his epoch, II. 384 n. 1.
Materidi, or Abu Mansur Muhammad al Hanefi (Shaikh), II. 349 n. 1.
Máth, "monastery," II. 179 n. 4, 180 n. 1.
Mátris, personified energies of the Gods, eight names of them, II. 220 n. 2.
Matšerán (Súfís), orthodox Súfís, II. 374.
Matsya-Avátar, Fish-Avátar, II. 18.
Mavafek Nishapuri, a very learned Sonnite, II. 424 n. 2.
Mawakif, Stations, Posts, or Theses of Metaphysics, title of a celebrated work, II. 323 n. 328 n.
Maveli (perhaps Mahesvari), an idol in the town of Bister (perhaps Bidzergur), a legend of this deity, II. 163, 164.
Mánuminas, Sanyásis, keeping silence, II. 148.
Máyá, the magic of God, II. 91.
Máyá Sakti, spouse of Siva, II. 149—her seat in the human body—her description, 151.
Mazak, uncommon exaltation of mind, III. 294 n. 1.
Mázda, Maz-dao, Mezd, great, or all-knowing, I. 325 and n. 1—a form of prayer, ibid. 331.
Mazdak, prophet, I. 104 n. 193 n. —unable to injure the pure faith, 267—contemporary of king Kobad, 373—put to death under Nushirvan, ibid.—account of his doctrine, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378.
Mázeri, of Kachmir, quoted, II. 171.
Mázmaza, rinsing the mouth, III. 239.
Medina, town in Arabia, burial-place of Muhammad, its ancient name, I. 81 and n.
Mediomah, cousin to Zardusht, I. 231 n.
Mediozereh, holy oil, I. 290 n. 1.
Meftah al alun, "the key of sciences," title of a work, III. 218 n. 5.
Meiners, denies the authenticity of Zoroaster's works, published in French, I. 223 n.
Merad Baıgh, an enemy of Jalal-eddin, the Roshenian, III. 44.
Meraséd al ánayet, "Observations upon the blessed Favor," III. 294.
Meríkh (Mars), Muhammad's arrival at it, III. 247.
Mershed (Hakim), a disciple of Kamran, III. 219.
Mertebah, "degrees," III. 266.
Mertebah ahadiyat, "degree of unity," III. 222.
Mervan, son of Hakim, son-in-law of Osman, the Khalif, III. 53.
Mervan Muhammad ben Mervan, ben Hakem, the last of the Omniahs, III. 361.
Mian Bâyezid, the head of a sect, III. 26—his lineage; 27, 28—becomes the disciple of Khâjah Ismail, 28—his sayings and principles, 29, 38—his deeds—practises highway robbery, 39—composes works in several languages, 40—said to have been an illiterate man—makes war upon the Moghuls, 41—with various success, ibid. n. 1—date of his death, 42.
Mian Lal, a Vairagi, II. 196.
Mian Mir, III. 297.
Miduyzaram, the first Gâhâmbar, I. 346.
Miduyzaham, the second Gâhâmbar, I. 346.
Mîhîn Farush, author of a Treatise concerning Zardusht, I. 244.
Mîhr Ized (Mithra), name of an angel and of a month, I. 64 62 n.
INDEX.

—his character —how represented—his functions, 286 n. 1. 287. 311.
Mihrab arch attar, symbol of Venus, I. 49.
Mihrab, a disciple of the son of Farchad — how he relieved an old workman, I. 432. 433.
Mihran, physician, follower of the Shidabian faith, I. 207.
Mikat itinas, place of assemblage for the pilgrims of Mecca, II. 409.
Milad, a follower of the Alarion sect, I. 208.
Milan, an Iranian, founder of a sect, his opinion, I. 204.
Milanan, a sect, I. 204.
Minansa, explanation of the word, I. 4 n. 60 n.
Min, a valley, near Mecca, where the pilgrims throw stones, III. 76.
Mina, semen virile, I. 227 — name of a vein, II. 432.
Mino, “azure heaven,” I. 150.
Minucheher, son of Iraj, king and prophet, I. 30. 88.
Minuvan Minu, “heaven of heavens.” I. 152.
Miri, a Telinga word for the fig-tree, II. 80.
Mirkhond, quoted, II. 423 n. 2, 424 n. 1, 2, 425. 427 n. 1, 437 n. 1, 439, n. 4, 444 n. 1, 446 n. 2, 449 n.; III. 234 n.
Mir Said, Sharif of Sarjan (Georgia), quoted, II. 29.
Mir Sadir Sherif Amely, a theological disputant under Akbar, III. 90.
Mirtase (Said), distinguished among the learned of the Imamylrat, II. 379.
Mirza, the son of Nur-eddin, son of Bayezid, killed in battle, III. 47.
Mirza Haidar, a noble Muselman, becomes a Vairagi, II. 193.
Mirza Khan (Mulla), III. 205.
Mirza Safah, a noble Muselman, becomes a Vairagi, II. 193.
Mithra (Mihr), distinct and subor-
dinate to Ormurd—his character among the Chaldeans and Arabs—his religion and worship in later times, I. 286 n.
Mitratu, “friendship,” II. 121.
Miyan Ahmad, son of Omar Shaikh, the son of Bayezid, III. 44—reduced to great straits by the forces of the Moghuls, killed in the defence of a fort, 44, 45—heroic conduct of his daughter, 45.
Mizan, one of the compilers of the Testament of Jemshid, I. 193— a travelling merchant of the Yeknah binaan sect, ibid.
Mizumah, name of an angel, I. 231.
Moalakat, poems suspended in the temple of Mecca, III. 63 n.
Mobed, learned man, ascetic, I. 17, 18.
Moez eddin (also Jelal-eddin, and Jelal daulet) Abu ‘l Fettah Malik-Shah, see Malik Shah, II. 426 n. 7.
Mohajirin, emigrants from Mecca with the prophet, III. 52 n.
Mohib eddin Abu ‘l Valid Muhammad ben Kamal eddin, al Hanefi, known under the surname of ben Shonah, III. 291 n. 1, 312 n.
Mohib eddin Ibn Arabi—his work quoted, III. 91—the date of his death, ibid.—quoted, 232 n. 1, 234 n. 1—his opinion upon Pharaoh’s faith, 257, 265 n. 272, 283, 300.
Mohi-eddin, son of Zangui and Bibi Fatima, III. 235 n.
Mohi (Julius), translator of Mojmel al Tavarikh, I. 29—editor of “Fragnets relative to the Religion of Zoroaster,” 273 n.; III. 245 n. 7.
Mojmel al Tavarikh, quoted, I. 29 n. 33 n. 1—furnishes confirmation of Zardusht’s epoch as given in the text, I. 344 n.
INDEX.

Mokanna, "covered by a veil," surname of Hakem ben Hasham, III. 3 n. 1 — the mode of his suicide, 26 n. 1.

Monachism, III. 18 n. 2, 274 n. 2, 275.

Monkir, an angel visiting the dead, III. 153.

Montasser, "victorious," surname of Ismail Khalif, II. 419.

Montasser (also Moadd Mostanser Billah), receives and protects at his court Hassan Sahab, II. 430.

Moore, author of the Hindu Pantheon, quoted, II. 49 n. 1.

Moses (Musiai), II. 298; III. 274 n. 1, 273 — did not open a passage through the Nile—destroyed Korah from covetousness, 70 — performed false miracles, 71.

Moses Koras, III. 207 n. 1.

Motasem (AI.), Khalif, II. 329.

Muadan Usshaffi Iskandari, a selection taken from several medical treatises, quoted, II. 46.

Mudgha-Avatar, "the Stupid Avatar, tar," the meeting of Parasu Ram and Rama Chandra, II. 26, 27, 28.

Muezin, "crier on the top of "mosque," III. 261 n. 1.

Mujifat Parsi, work quoted, I. 412.

Muhad, "ignorance," II. 205.

Muhammad, the Arabian prophet, selects a class of believers for salvation, I. 324 — ascends to heaven, 339 n. 1 — his spirit first created, 344 — the father of all spirits, 347 — date of his death, III. 4 n. 1, 61 n. 1 — loses some teeth in battle, 54 n. 1 — undergoes an expedition to Tabuk, 56 n. 1 — falls in love with Zeinah — marries her, 59 n. 1 — passages in the Old and New Testament referred to Muhammad, 66 n. 1, 67 n. 1 — he attacked caravans killed animated beings — libidinous, 71 — took nine, even twenty-one wives, 79 nn. 1, 2, 100 n. 2 — his ascent to heaven allegorized, 177, 200 — visited and accompanied by the angel Jabril — bestrides Borak, 178, 181 — leaves the mountains without stopping on his way, enters the temple of Jerusalem, 182, 184 — drinks a cup of milk — sees prophets and angels, 184, 185 — upon a ladder, arrives at the heavens of the universe, 186, 187 — at the second — the third — the fourth — and fifth heaven, 187, 188 — sees hell, 188, 189 — the sixth — the seventh heaven, 189 — the eighth heaven — live mansions — four seas, 191 — angels, how occupied, 192 — a sea without borders — a great desert — the angel Mikail, 193 — the heavenly tabernacle, 194 n. 2 — passes through several thousand curtains — reaches the green rail — receives the Koran, 193 n. 1 — his impressions, 196, 199 — returns to his bed, still warm, 199, 200 — moves about in ecstasy, 240.

Muhammad Abu Jafar Ebn Jerir el Tabari, mentions Zardusht’s revelations upon parchment folios, I. 224 n.

Muhammad Ali, of Shiraz, disciple of Farzannah Bahram: his conversion of a thief, I. 132.

Muhammad Akil, assumed name of Ayin Hosh, see the latter, I. 378.

Muhammad Amin Astabadi, gives currency to the creed of the Akharis, II. 372, 381, 391, 396.

Muhammad, son of Hassan Askari (Imam), still alive and concealed — his absence divided into two epochs, II. 383 — also called Abu l’ Cassem — the expected — the stable — and, in particular, Mahdi, “the guide,” ibid. n. 1 — the duration of the two epochs stated, 384 n. 2, 399 — his other titles, 403 n. 1.

Muhammad Beker damad (Mir), III. 205.

Muhammad ben Abdullah, Mahdi, the last of the age, II. 418.

Muhammad ben Ahmed al Janaid, eminent in analogy, I. 378.
Muhammed Ebn Babuylah Alkami, II. 380.
Muhammed Buzerg Umid, third ruler of the Alamutians, II. 442 n. 2.
Muhammed Ebn Keram, the founder of a Muhammedan sect, II. 331 n. 1.
Muhammed Doulet, successor to Barkiarok, on the throne of Persia, II. 439.
Muhammed Habib, successor of Jaf Mosudde, II. 399 n. 1.
Muhammed Hakim (Mirza), son of Humayun Padeshah, contemporary of Bayezid, III. 41.
Muhammed, son of Hassan, the fifth ruler of the Alamutians—his conduct, and the duration of his reign, II. 446 n. 2.
Muhammed Khan (Shaikh), minister of Sultan Abed Ullah Kateb, II. 296—verses of his Eulogy quoted, *ibid.*—his death, *ibid.*
Muhammed Kuli, friend of Mohsan Fani, gives information about the sect of Mousayima, III. 3.
Muhammed Kuli, a follower of Mazdak’s creed, I. 378.
Muhammed Kuli Salim, his verses quoted, I. 309.
Muhammed Lahihi (Shaikh), see Shems eddin Muhammed ben Yahya ben Ali Lahjami.
Muhammed al mahtadai, ben Abdulullah, ben Ahmed, ben Muhammed, ben Ismail, ben Jafir Sadik, Imam, II. 418.
Muhammed, son of Malik Shah, II. 437.
Muhammed Makim (Mirza), III. 297.
Muhammed Mahadi, the third Khalif of the Abbasides, subdues Mokanna, the chief of a powerful sect, III. 3 n. 1.
Muhammed Mahdi, descendant from Indian parents—the date of his birth and death—left followers in several parts of India, II. 450 n.
Muhammed Hasum (Mulla), of Kasghar, II. 348—also called Shaikh Hossan, *ibid.* 349, 364.

Muhammed Mokhdar, ancestor of Mansur, son of Aziz, II. 422.
Muhammed (Mulla), a Sufi, translator into Persian of some parts of the Jog Vasantha, II. 28.
Muhammed Mumin, an authority added by the author of the Dabistan, II. 364.
Muhammed (Nur baksh), author of Sahifah al Auliya, I. 130.
Muhammed Nurbaksh Mir Said, III. 245 n. 1, 263, 277.
Muhammed Razai Karezin (Amin), quoted by the author of the Dabistan, II. 387.
Muhammed Saida Sarmad, a Rabbi, becomes a Muselman, II. 293—falls in love—behaves like a Sanyasi, 294—verses composed by him quoted, 295—his information concerning the religion of the Jews, 297—revise the Persian translation of the beginning of the Genesis, 300.
Muhammed Saida Beg, assumed name of Farhad, see Farhad, I. 378.
Muhammed Said of Isfahan, disciple of Farzannah Bahram, I. 132—how he received a naked Faker—his death, 133.
Muhammed Said, of Samarkand (Mulla), follower of Bahram, I. 137.
Muhammed Shariz, of Shiraz (styled Amir ul Unra), his verses quoted, I. 144.
Muhammed, Sultan of Kharasm, dies on receiving the intelligence of the fort Imbal having surrendered to the Moghiul, wherein were his mother and several women, III. 120.
Muhammad Yezdi (Mulla), his opinion, III. 92.
Muhammed ben Yakub, compiler of the dictionary Al Kamus, “the Ocean of the Arabic language,” II. 377 n. 2.
Muhammed Yakub Kashmiri, a Vakil of Saida Khan Tekhwan, III. 47.
INDEX.

Mujed eddin Muhammed Balkhi Káderi (Shaikh), III. 300.
Mujmal al Hakmet, "Compendium of Philosophy," quoted, II. 45.
Mujtahid, "Casuist," II. 391—explanation of the term, ibid. n. 3.
Mukasa, allotment made by the state to an individual, I. 176.
Mukiman, a class of Sufis, III. 234.
Mukti, "liberation from the body," II. 8.
Mük Zhup, "four blows," a mode of invoking God, I. 77.
Muladhara, one of the seven (or six) circles of the human body, II.
131 and n. 1. 150.
Mūlana Sháh, III. 286, 287, 296.
Muila Prakriti, the root of all, II. 9 n. 1.
Mulla, Sultan, III. 219.
Múmin-ábád, or Maimun dir, a fort of the Ismá'íliyyah, besieged and defended, II. 437—taken by Hulagu, 449 n.
Mundi, a name of Vairagis, I. 196.
Munji, a sort of grass, II. 53 n. 1, 56 n. 3.
Murad baksh, son of Shah Jehan, imprisoned by Aureng zeb, his brother—dies in prison, II. 285 n. 1.

Murdah Khab, Murdah Khasp, particular mode of sleeping of the Sipasians, I. 141.
Mumin, "right faith," III. 262.
Murid, "he who wills," III. 224.
Murtaza, "the Chosen," title of Ali, II. 454—collected the Koran, for which was however substituted another, compiled by Osman, 437.
Musa (Imám), his tomb—date of birth and death, I. 48 n.
Musa, a Jew, convert and disciple of Farzana Bahram, I. 136, 137.
Musaylima, the founder of the sect of Sadikiah, III. 1. 2—one a
Muslim—declares himself a prophet, 2 n. 1—his miracles—his book—he is killed in battle, 3, 4 n. 1, 10 n. 1.
Múshtery, Jupiter, the director of the angels, and teacher of the system of Brahma, II. 44.
Mussa, son of Jafar Sadik, head of the Saffavayn monarchs of Persia, II. 398 n.
Mutawakal, the tenth Khaliif of the Abbasides, orders Zardousht’s cypress to be cut down, and to be transported from Kasmur to Baghdad, I. 307—cut in pieces by his guards, 308.
Mutavel, "Commentary," title of a work, III. 218 n. 3.

N.

Nabhi chakra, a region of the human body, II. 132.
Nader, the sixth Nosr of the Zend-Avesta—its contents, I. 273 n.
Nafhat al Uns, "the fragrant Gales of Mankind," a work of Jami, quoted, I. 96, 97 n. 1, 289.
Nagakot, a fortress in Lahore, I. 109 n. 1.
Nagmeddin Ali Ben Omar al Karvini, disciple of Nasir eddin, III.
217.
Nahid (Venus), represented in the form of a man, I. 38, 39.
Nahid-azar, a fire-temple, I. 47.
INDEX.

Najf, burial-place of Ali, I. 47—its ancient name, 34.
Nain Javet, quoted by the author of the Dabistan, III. 87, 89.
Nairriti, regent between south and west, II. 219.
Naissan, a Syrian month (April), also spring—rain—fabulous belief about it, II. 239 n. 2.
Nakir, an angel visiting the dead, III. 153.
Nak shatras, twenty-seven stellar mansions, II. 83, 219.
Nama-Karana, a rite of the Hindus, II. 55.
Namaškarā, "respectful salutation," II. 235.
Nam, name of a Nask of the Zand-Avesta, I. 273.
Namac, founder of the Sikh religion, II. 246—a Khatriya—devoted to piety, 247, 248—his creed, 248, 249—favors the Moghul invasion—an anecdote of him, 249, 250, 251—his poems, 252—his children—where he died, 233 n. 2—successors, 232, 233, 234—supposed to have formerly been Janaka, sovereign of Mithila—a legend of the latter, 255, 256, 261 to 267—Nanak appeared successively in the four ages, 268, 269—for saving the former inhabitants of hell, whom he had once brought up to the world, 269.
Nānak, sister of Nanak, II. 247 n. 1.
Nanac-Panthians, or Sikhs, II. 246.
Nanac-paumtāras, descendants of Nānak, extant in our days, II. 232, 233 n. 2.
Naraijn Dasi, a Ramanandi, II. 194.
Narayan, name of God, II. 16—of Vichnu, 17—how represented, ibid.—the lotus rises from his navel, 247.
Narayanian, a sect of the Hindus, II. 232.
Narmendha, sacrifice of a man, II. 82—practised by the Saktians, 135.
Nasir eddin (Khajah), the surname of Muhammad ben Hassan, or ben Muhammad al Tusi, II. 417 n. 2—is sent to Almut, 447—accompanies Buks eddin to the fort Maimundiz, 449—institutes Holāgo to march to Baghdad, 450—directs an assembly of philosophers and astronomers at Maragha, in Aderbijan, III. 114.
Naseb, Navaše, name of a sect, II. 350, 354, 366.
Naser Khurso, a poet, quoted, II. 312.
Nas"er Khusro (Amir), a learned poet, II. 419 n. 2.
Naser Motashem, lord of Kohistan, sends Khajah Nasir to Almut, II. 447.
Nasikh, "obliteration," III. 149.
Nas'ir eddin Abu Said Abdalla ben Omar, III. 218 n. 6.
Nāska, Nask, book, treatise, chapter of the Zand-Avesta—twenty-one enumerated, I. 272, 273, 274, 275 n.—three additional expected, 275 n.
Natik, "speaker, legislator," II. 403—seven Natiks enumerated, ibid. n. 1.
Natiri, a sect, II. 128.
Navghir, a fort of the Roshenian, III. 44.
Naubor, name of a Commander—his conduct on a march, I. 161.
Nauder, son of Minuthenger, I. 88.
Nauroz, great festival on the first six days of the year, I. 268 and n. 1—commemorates several great
events of the world and of Persia, l. 268 and n. 1.
Náuzod, a rite of the Parsees, l. 289 n. 2.
Náya, "ethics," II. 66 n. 1.
Náyari, a sect, II. 128.
Nazar, the eighth king of the Pesh-dadians—its epoch, l. 32 and n.
Nazar, son of Montas'er, is superseded in the succession to the throne by his brother, II. 430.
Nazaratus, perhaps a name for Zoroaster, l. 277 n. 1.
Nazer Ushrf (Maulavi), editor of the printed edition of the Dastan—his epilogue, III. 313 to 319.
Nehajat aleldam fi élm al Kelam, work of Sheheristani, II. 323 n.
Nek Khoir, a person treated of in the Samnad Namah of Kâmnkar, l. 201.
Nerioseng, a genius, guardian of the germ of Zoroaster's posterity, l. 284 n.
Neriosengh, a Dostur, translator of the Yasna into Sanscrit, I. 226 n.
Nezam Thanäsir (Shaikh), II. 273.
Niam, the sixteenth Noksh of the Zend-Avesta—its contents, l. 274 n.
Nicolaus, of Damascus, mentions Zoroaster's works, l. 224 n.
Nigamana, "the conclusion in a "syllogism," II. 207 n. 4.
Nigraha, "subjugation, termination of a controversy," II. 209 n. 5.
Nikudar Ogla, the first of Jengis Khan's successors who professed the Muhammedan faith, III. 119 n. 1.
Nimânujas, a class of Vairagis, II. 185.
Nirang, the world of superior bodies, according to the Sipasians, l. 86.
Nirnâya, "ascertainment," II. 208 n. 2.
Nirnudis, "rationalists," a sect, l. 278 n.
Nirukta, explanation of difficult words, II. 65 n. 1.
Nisâr, "warriors," l. 20 n.
Nish-Kramana, a rite of the Hindus, II. 36 n. 4.
Nivâh-i-chaminah, "quitting and reassuming the body," l. 83.
Niyama, "particular posture," II. 125 n. 2, 126.
Niyätus, a Greek philosopher, interrogates Zardusht, I. 277, 278, 279.
Niyayish, form of prayer, I. 336 and n. 1.
Nizâm al Mulk Tusi, II. 424 n. 2.
Nizâm—his connection with Hassan Sabah, 425, 428—his work, called his "Testament," ibid. n. 1—is assassinated by Abu Taher Adani, a Fedâyi of Hassan Sabah, 437.
Nosari, a town in the district of Gûzerat, inhabited by fire-worshippers, III. 95.
Nuheba, "chosen," III. 265 n.
Nuniar, "vision during sleep," l. 84.
Nurakhî language, the Greek, I. 278 n.
Nurakhîs, a sect, l. 278 n.
Nur allah, of Shoster, author of Mejâlisu'l Mûminûn, II. 451 n. 1; III. 1 n. 1.
Nur eddin, son of Miyen Bayezid, III. 42.
Nur eddin Muhammed Jehangir Padshah, appoints Hindu judges for the Hindus, II. 165.
Nuristan, region of light, l. 7.
Nushirvan, king of Persia, l. 103—account of his reign, 103, 104 n.
Nurus—restores the aged world to youth, 266—praised for his justice, III. 60, 64.
O.

Ohod, a mountain, half an hour's distance from Medina, III. 34 n. 1.

Ohson (O'), quoted, III. 19 n. 257 n. 1, 259 n. 1, 260, 261 n. 1.

Oktäyi khan, son of Jengis Khan, appointed Khalif, III. 116—the countries which he ruled enumerated, *ibid.* n. 1—his behaviour to his brother, who had offended him, 116—date of his death, *ibid.* n.—was liberal and generous, 117.

Olsby, editor of fragments relative to the religion of Zoroaster, I. 275.

Omar Ben al-Khetab, I. 98—account of his deeds, reign, and death, 99 n. 1; II. 332, 344—prevents Muhammed from writing a last will, III. 33.

Omar Khayâm, of Nishapur (Hakim), II. 425 n. 4.

Omar Shaikh, son of Miyan Bâyezid, III. 42.

Omm Hani, daughter of Abu Thâleb, III. 177 n. 2.

Ommiah, son of Abd-ul-Shems, ancestor of the great family of Mâviahs, II. 361 n. 1.

Orcha, a place in the district of Narwar, III. 93.

Ormuzd (Hormuzd), the good principle opposed to the evil—statement concerning both, I. 235, 236 n. 354 n. 2.

Orobio (Isaak), a learned Jew, author of a remarkable work, II. 298 n. 1.

Oshederbâmi, the first posthumous son of Zoroaster—epoch of his appearance and deeds, I. 281 n. —otherwise called Assar Avaster, 293 n. 1.

Oshketerma'h, the second posthumous son of Zoroaster, epoch of appearance and deeds, I. 281 n. —otherwise called Ozwar tür, 293 n. 1.

Osman, I. 98—account of his deeds, reign, and death. 99, 100 n.; II. 332, 344—calls from banishment Hakim, the son of As, III. 54, 55—several blamable acts attributed to him, 55.

Osman, son of Said ul Umruhl Asadi, the first Vakil of the invisible Imâm, II. 384.

Oxkelos, a Hebrew commentator of the Bible, quoted, II. 302.

Oweis, great Shaiks, III. 205 n.

P.


Padma asan, "lotus-seat," a particular position in praying, I. 78.

Pajem, the seventh Nôsk of the Zend-Avesta, its contents, I. 273.

Paikar, a sage from Iran, founder of a sect, his epoch, and opinion, I. 204.

Paikarian, a sect, I. 203.

Paikaristan, image-temples, I. 35.

Paikar Parhu, of the Paikarian sect, I. 204.
INDEX.

Paiman (Payman-i-Farhang), "the code of Mâhâbât," II. 53, 147—several translations of it, by whom made, ibid.

Pâmârak, "sacrificial wood." II. 80.

Pancha-homa, sacrifice of five goats, II. 83 n. 1.

Pancha Kalushani, five failings, II. 130 n. 6.

Panchala, one of the thirty-eight divisions of central India, II. 68.

Pancha tantra, five things, II. 57 n. 3.

Pandu Raja, the nominal father of the five Pandavas, II. 67. 68.

Pankila, the earthen vein, II. 132.

Panthi, tribe, sect, II. 128, 129 n. 1.

Pâpâla, a bird, supposed to drink but rain-water, II. 239 n. 1.

Parama atma, necessary, self-existing Being, II. 96.

Paramâtma, great Spirit, II. 96.

Parantarush, or Partarush, or Turbitarosh, name of a celebrated magician, I. 221—his declaration concerning Zardushth, 221, 222—invited to a feast by Zardusht’s father, 228, 229.

Parasara, father of Vyâsa, II. 67, 68 n. 1, 69.

Parasu Râma, Râma with an axe, the sixth Avâtar of Vishnu, II. 23—exterminator of the Kâchi-riyâs, ibid.

Parbatah, a class of Sanyâsins, II. 139.

Pâri-dokht Roshenak (Parysatis Roxana) I. 278 n.

Pariksha, "evidence," II. 203.

Paristar (Mobed), son of Khurshid, disciple of Azar Kaïvân, and of Mobed Sarosh, author of the Tâp-rah-i-Mobedi — his particular position at prayers, I. 123 — his death, 124.

Parvâd-ar-i-gunah, name of an angel, I. 7.

Parviz (Khusro), son of Hormuz, grandson of Nushirvan, I. 145—expelled from Persia—returns—marries Mary, or Shirin, the daughter of the Greek emperor Mau-ritius — his victories, defeats, death, 145 n. 2—his verses, addressed to the Roman emperor, quoted, 146.

Pâsâyî, the name of a wind, II. 133.

Pashutiner Daji (Dostur), brought the Sadder from Kirman to India, I. 310 n. 1.

Pâtâla loka, one of the fourteen spheres. II. 43—an infernal region, ibid. n. 2.

Patanjali, the Yoga system of philosophy, II. 165.

Patanjali, the Sage, founder of a philosophy and of a sect, II. 165 n. 6, 231—his school and opinion, ibid. n. 4.

Patet Iran, a form of prayer, I. 342.

Patirasp, grandfather of Zardusht, I. 245 n.

Pavaj, a particular rite, I. 331.

Pavanâ bhakta, "worshippers of the wind." II. 243.

Pavanâhari, "wind-eater," II. 248 n. 2.

Pawp Pishna, a saint among the Tibetans, II. 290—singular custom of succession, ibid.

Pausanius mentions Zoroaster’s works, I. 224 n.

Pâ-Zand, a dialect derived from the Zand, I. 223 n.

Philo, quoted, I. 209 n. 1.

Pend-nameh, III. 229 n. 1.

Perah Kaivan, a Zendanian and Vairâgi, II. 192—some of his speeches, ibid.

Peri, a class of Sanyâsins, II. 139.

Pertâmâl Chadah, a Jnani, his dispute with Davârâkh, a Jat, II. 142—his free speeches and actions, 113.

Peshkâr (Mobed), son of Khurshid, disciple of Azar Kaivân, adept in suppressing the breath, I. 124.

Petrus Nicolaus ex Castellaneis Fa-ventinus, III. 207, 208 n. 1.

Phala, "fruit, consequence," II. 203.

Phani, a serpent, II. 58 n. 5.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Text</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>366</td>
<td>INDEX.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pharaoh (Pharaoh), II. 298—mention made of a precept of his religion, III. 91—his faith and character, 272 n. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pílab Panthilán, a sect, II. 233, 234.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pil Azar, a merchant of the Shidra- gian sect, I. 205.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pimasidim, a name for the sixth Gáhambar, I. 347 n. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pinda pradána, a rite of the Hindus, II. 38 n. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pirah-l-Tardan, &quot;the ornament of &quot; God,&quot; I. 451.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Piránah Kohely, a Váfragi, II. 194—his opinion, ibid. 195.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pisácha, demon, II. 72.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pisácha-vivaha, a form of marriage among Hindus, II. 72.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pitishahim, the third Gáhambar, I. 347.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pivar-asp, name of Zohak, I. 33 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plato, shows a knowledge of Zoroaster's works, I. 224 n.—quoted, 237 n. 1, 304 n. 1; II. 374 n. 2, 462 n. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pliny (H. N.), quoted, I. 218 n.—mentions Zoroaster's works, 224 n.—quoted, 244 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plutarch, I. 209, 212 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pokhtanga (Afghanistan), perhaps the country of the ancient Asopagani, III. 41 n. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pocock, quoted, II. 300, 323, 324, 327, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 375; III. 171 n. 1, 173 n. 2, 312 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prahlada, son of Kiranya Kashipu, II. 21.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prakriti, nature, II. 9—explained, ibid. n. 4—according to the Sankhya system, 119 n. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pralaya, catastrophe of the world, II. 51.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pramánas, &quot;proof,&quot; subdivided into four parts, II. 203.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pramiti, &quot;true knowledge,&quot; II. 204.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prána, &quot;breath,&quot; II. 133 n. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pránáyáma, peculiar mode of breathing during prayers, II. 125 n. 4, 126, 135.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prápara paroksha, &quot;absence from &quot; the former body,&quot; I. 85.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Práti, &quot;proposition in a syllable,&quot; II. 208.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pratáhára, &quot;abstraction,&quot; II. 125 n. 5, 126.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Právriti, &quot;activity,&quot; II. 204 n. 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Práyága, &quot;place of pilgrimage,&quot; II. 166—five principal places so termed, ibid. n. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Práyójana, &quot;motive,&quot; II. 207 n. 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prester John, name given by Europeans to the king Awen Khan, or Ung Khan, III. 119.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Práyága bhava, &quot;reproduction,&quot; II. 205 n. 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prithivi bhakta, &quot;worshippers of &quot; the earth,&quot; II. 243.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Puchan-i-Puch, &quot;the hell of hells,&quot; I. 153.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Puja, worshippers of the image of a Deity, II. 213.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pungsavana, a rite of the Hindus, II. 54 and n. 3, 53.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Puranas, II. 66 n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Purkásap, son of Pitarasp, descended from Faridun, the father of Zar- dushth, I. 215.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Purva, the sixteenth day of the month, II. 86.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Purusha, the divine male, Brahma himself, the embodied soul, II. 119 n. 1, 120.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pythagoras, instructed by the Magi, perhaps by Zoroaster, I. 277 n. 1 placed in the time of Guṣhtasp, ibid. 278.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Q.**

Quatremère (Étienne), quoted, II. 430 n. 2.
INDEX.

R.

Ráb-un-naw, name of an angel. I 7.
Rádah, one hundred Aspár, see Aspár, I. 25.
Rádhá Yállábhis, a sect of Vaichnavas. II. 182 n. 1.
Radian, a sect. I. 204.
Raflah, poet quoted. I. 129.
Rafléh Mirzáah, quoted. II. 109.
Ráfí 'l Káder, III. 216.
Rafs, Rávafes. name of a sect. II. 330, 333, 365.
Rágá, mental affection. II. 129—sensual lust. 205.
Ráh beri, "Way-Guides," name of occidental philosophers. III. 139.
Rahmáníah, a name of the followers of Musaylíma. III. 2.
Ráhú, a demon destroyed by Víchnu. II. 42 n. 1.
Rai, the most northern town of Jébal, supposed native place of Zárdusht. I. 264.
Rai, town of Persia. II. 172.
Rája-yogí, a superior Yogi. II. 101.
Rojás, passion. one of the three properties. II. 14, 146, 176, 178.
Rátu sufít, "chieftain." I. 176.
Rákhsá, explained. II. 47 n. 4.
Rákhsá-viváha, a form of marriage among the Hindus. II. 72.
Ram. angel presiding over the twenty-first day of the month. I. 62 n.
Ráma Avátyar. II. 23.
Ramachándra, II. 23 n. 2—son of Dásarátha—when born, ibid.
Ramachandr deo, raja of Orissa, causes an image of Dúrga to be cast by a goldsmith—legend concerning it. II. 161, 162.
Ráma-das, the third successor of Nanak. II. 233, 234, n. 3.
Rámanánda, founder of the sect of the Rámanándis. II. 180 n. 1.
Rámanándis, a sect of Vaichnavas. II. 180 n. 1, 181.
Rámanújá achárya, the founder of the sect of Rámánújás. II. 183 n. 1.
Rámánújás, a class of the Vairágis. II. 183 n. 1.
Ramazán, a fast of thirty days. III. 261 n. 1.
Ramázán, or Ramázan, of Zárdusht, work quoted. I. 569; II. 136.
Ram Bhot, a Hindu, becomes a disciple of the son of Farhad. I. 139—his prediction, ibid.
Ram Chand, a Khatriya, disciple of Ram Bhot. I. 139.
Rámídais, "servants of God," name given by the Sikhs to the deputies of their Gurus. II. 282.
Rang, the elementary world, according to the Sipásiáns. I. 86.
Rang—a-rang, the world of the four elements, according to the Sipásiáns. I. 86.
Ras, the head of the dragon—a demon destroyed by Víchnu. II. 41, 42.
Rasidek, "firmness," III. 150.
Rasan, a linear measure. I. 283 and n. 2.
Rástála loka, one of the fourteen spheres. II. 13—an infernal region, ibid. n. 1.
Rasi, son of Muktédír Abási. II. 384.
Rask, establishes the genuineness and antiquity of the Zand language. I. 223 n.
Rash- Rand, or Rashtí Rand—his representation, character, functions. I. 287 and n. 1, 311.
Rast yug, the age of the righteous, its duration. II. 47.
INDEX.

Rauhîbâr, name of a vein of the human body, II. 134.
Rauyat-us-safa, quoted, I. 33 n. 1, 192 n. 193.
Rauza-us-safa, work of Mirkhond, translated by D. Shea, I. 20 n., quoted, 243 n.
Ravaëts, correspondence between the Dosturs of Persia and India, I. 224 n.
Râvakîn, name of Oriental philosophers, III. 139.
Rawal Bundi, a town on the road from Panjab to Kabul, I. 203.
Ravana, sovereign of the demons—of Lanka, overthrown by Râma, II. 23, 183 n.
Ravand, "courier," I. 137.
Râz, equal to one hundred Arâdah, see Arâdah, I. 23.
Razi ben al Khatib, abbreviator and commentator of Avisénna's work, entitled Shafâ, II. 173.
Razvan, "the porter of heaven," III. 155.
Reflk, "follower," distinctive name of the Ismâ'îlîs. II. 436 n. 3.
Rehtishâran, name of the second class of the people, I. 19 n.
Reise, editor and translator of Abûl'feda (quoted with Abûl'feda). Resalah vajjudah, or Resalah fel vujud, "Treatise upon Existences," work of Jami'. III. 221 n. 1.
Rish, angel presiding over the eighteenth day of the month, I. 62 n.
Reteshthâi, the eighth Nôsk of the Zand-Avesta — its contents, I. 273 n.
Reza (Imâm), son of Musa, the eighth Imâm, his mausoleum—date of his death, I. 48; II. 390.
Richë, a kind of saint, explained, II. 27 n. 2—seven classes of them enumerated, ibid.
Riccioli, quoted, II. 305 n. 2; II. 305.
Richardson, denies the authenticity of Zoroaster's works published in French, I. 223 n.
Rigez, a metre, III. 212 n. 1.
Rig-Vedâ, II. 64.
Roham, a painter of the Milanian sect, I. 205.
Roesius (Franciscus), III. 207 n. 1.
Roshenian, a sect, III. 26.
Rozah, "fasting," III. 262.
Roz-arâz, name of a fire-temple, I. 52.
Roz-gah, place of assembly, I. 182.
Rozistan, "day-station," I. 168, 182.
Rozistan, a place in which the king was seated, surrounded by his ministers, I. 43.
Rubûbiyet, "divinity," III. 342 n. 1.
Rudbar, a fort in the province Jebal, II. 423 n. 1.
Rudra, a name of Mahadeva—eleven of them, II. 34, 218.
Ruhem mar, name of a vein of the human body, II. 134.
Rukun-eddin Khurâsh, son of Allah-eddin, the eighth ruler of the Alamutians, II. 448—vanquished by Holagû Khan — is sent to Maiku Khan (or Mangu Khan), 449 n.—killed on his journey, 450.
Rukva, bowing the head with the hands upon the knees, III. 260.
Rupa-skandha, "whatever is perceived and understood," II. 197, 198 n. 3.
Rustam, a son of Zal, restores Kâ Kaus to the throne—his epoch, I. 57 and n. 1, 410.
Rustam, a disciple of Kaivan—his descent—fight with Farzanah Khiradmand—death, I. 106, 107.
Rûya, vision during sleep, I. 84; II. 93.
Rūzistâr, name of the fourth class of the people, I. 19.
INDEX.

S.

Sa'dah, a tract of Arabia, II. 332 n. 1.
Sa'd eddin Taftarani, III. 218 n. 5.
Sa'dis, a learned Jew, translator of the Old Testament from Hebrew into Arabic, II. 300.
Sabazism, worship of the heavenly bodies, I. 379—an ancient and modern, III. 314 n. 312 n.
Saba', "sound," II. 203.
Sabiah (Sabzans), III. 310—derivation of the word, 310 n. 1—their creed, 311 n.
Sabiana (Sabjani), III. 236, 266, 269, 270, 281, 282, 283, 299, 301, 302, 303.
Saber Mashedi, quoted, II. 140.
Sada, one of the six regions of the human body, II. 154.
Sada asana, peculiar mode of sitting, II. 134.
Sadah, the sixteenth night of the Persian month Rahman, I. 112 n. 2.
Sadah, a disciple of Hargovind, his character, II. 284, 285.
Sadananda, a chief of the Saktiens—uses daughters and wives of his disciples—sits naked, drinking in a burial place, II. 139.
Sad-der, "hundred gates," a summary of their contents, I. 310 to 334.
Sad-der nasem, in prose, I. 310 n. 1—the original in Pehlevi.
Sad-der nasem, in verse, I. 340 n. 1—by whom versified in Persian—when terminated—by whom brought to India—translated into Latin, ibid., n. 1.
Sadder Bundeshesh, work written by a disciple of Zardusht, I. 224 n.
Sa'd eddin Kautivi, III. 300.
Sader Jehan, adopted the Ilahi religion, III. 104.

Sadi (Shaikh), quoted, I. 108, 127; II. 126, 128, 229 n. 1, 269 n. 1, 301.
Sadik, true, sincere friend, or instructor—whose epithet, II. 412 n. 1, 413.
Sadikiah, a sect, followers of Musaylima, III. 1—their creed, 4 to 41.
Sad-wakshur, name of Hushang, I. 32 n.
Sad yuman (Sapet man), "excellent," name of an ancestor of Zardusht, I. 215 n.
Safa, and Marvah, two remarkable rocks, near Mecca, II. 339 n. 409, 410 n.
Safandarmuz, the angel of husbandmen, I. 292.
Safia, a name of the Isma'iliyahs, II. 121 n. 1.
Safin, a plain on the banks of the Euphrates, the field of battle between the armies of Maavia and Ali, III. 60 n.
Saifun, freeman of Muhammed, II. 338 n. 1.
Sag did, "the dog saw," presenting a dog to a dying person, I. 335 n. 2.
Saha deva, son of Vyasa, a legend of him, II. 235, 268.
Saheb-i-kereb-i-ferais, "the masters of proximity to divine persons," a sect of Sufis, III. 294.
Sahi Kesh, "flourishing faith," I. 147.
Sahi Keshan, I. 241.
INDEX.

Sahu, "recovering from ebriety," I. 85, 86.

Said, Abu-Muhammed Obaid ala, the founder of the Fatimites Khali-
lifs in Africa, II. 401 n. — lays the foundation of a new capital, 418 n. 1.

Said ben Hebatallah, abridged and commended Aliusen's work, enti-
titled Shafa. I. 173.

Said (Sayyid) Cabiru 'ddin, a master of the Sadikiyahs in India, 11. 1 n. 1.

Said (Saiyid) Hasan of Shiraz, quo-
ted, I. 90, 91.

Sad Khan Terkhan, puts to death a son of Jelal-ud-din, III. 47.

Saiva-Sanyasis, called also Avadu-
tas, II. 218 — war between them and the Sufis, ibid.

Saivas, worshippers of Siva, II. 217.


Sakah, Sijah, Thegjazis, names of the wife of Musaylima, III. 8 n. 1.

Sakar, a class of Sanyasis, II. 139.

Saklapes, see Serapis, III. 112.

Sakti, power, generic name given to women by the Saktians, II. 154.

Saktians, followers of Siva, of aus-
tere manners, II. 164.

Saktian, a sect of Hindus, their be-
lief, worship, and customs, II. 148 to 168.

Sakti puja, profligate intercourse with women — worship of the Sakti-
ians, II. 133.

Sakunat, "dwelling in God," III. 29, 37.

Salemaiyniat, a branch of the Zay-
diyat. II. 363 n. 1.

Salam, a numerical quantity, equal to one hundred thousand, I. 24.

Salarbar, "usher with a silver mace," I. 169.

Salim, poet, quoted, I. 88.

Sama, tranquility, II. 126.

Samadhanam, "fortitude," II. 125 n. 8, 127.

Samadhi, deep and devout medita-
tion, I. 83.

Samak Asur, stole the Veda, II. 18.

Samam Salar, "head-steward," to be accompanied by two super-
visors and two recorders of occurrences, I. 113.

Samarah, a town in Chaldea, I. 307 and n. 2.

Samartagans, the orthodox of the Hindus, II. 33.

Sama veda, II. 64.

Sameri, a magician, contemporary with Moses, III. 80 — Aaron himself, ibid. n. 2.

Sami, sacrificial wood, II. 80.

Sampradayas, a sect, schism, parti-
cular doctrine, II. 186 n. 1.

Samrad, or Samwad, meaning of it, I. 193, 200.

Samradian, a sect, I. 195.

Samrad namah, work composed by Kamar, I. 201—quoted, II. 98.

Samudras, seas, seven of them, II. 41.

Sanabad, town of Tus, there is the mausoleum of Imam Reza, I. 48.

Sanakaras, "incorporeal beings," II. 237.

Sandebare, a cavern and miraculous spring, in Kachmir, II. 166, 167.

Sandbus, a rite of the Hindus, II. 61 n. 1.

Sangati, assembly of the Sikhs, II. 283.

Sanja nath, an adept in restraining the breath, lived seven hundred years, II. 138.

Sanicher (Saturn), son of the Sun, II. 38.

Sanjnya-skandha, "knowledge or "belief arising from words," II. 198 n. 1.

Sanishin, peculiar mode of sitting, described, II. 133.

Sankara Acharya, a sage, I. 276 n. 1.

Sankara acharya, an author upon
INDEX.

the Vedanta, II. 96, 102—maintains the universality of illusion, 103—preceptor of Saha diva, Raja of Kachmir, 141.
Sankara Vijaya, a work containing an account of various sects, II. 128 n. 4.
Sankhya (The) doctrine stated, II. 119, 123.
Samsaya, "discernment," II. 206, 207.
Sanskara skandha, "whatever enters the mind," II. 198 n. 1.
Sanson (D.), traveller in the East, I. 225 n.
Santu, ancient king, son of Riksha, II. 67 n. 3.
Santarem (viscount), quoted, II. 307 n. 1; III. 87.
Sauyali, book of the Sipasiyans, II. 136.
Sanjasi, one who resigned the world, divided into ten classes, II. 139, 218—battle between Sa- nyasis, and Jelalis and Mandarlis, 231.
Saónos, particular mode of sleeping of the Sipasiyans, I. 114.
Saptachakra, seven circles of the Yogis, II. 131—six chakras of Hindu philosophers, ibid. n. 1.
Sapt anishis, seven Richis, seven stars in the constellation of the Great Bear—name given to holes in a cavern, II. 167—names of the seven Richis, 220 n. 4.
Sarabi, author quoted, I. 9.
Sarai, royal abode, I. 42.
Sarais, a particular rite of devotion, I. 123.
Sarang, the world of human beings, according to the Sipasiyans, I. 87.
Sarpemay, a state of beatitude, II. 95.
Sarat, bridge of judgment of the Mohammedans, I. 285.
Sardas, "primary genus," I. 324.
Sarira, "body," II. 204, 205.
Sarosh (Mobei), son of Kaivan, son of Kamkar, his lineage—conduct, I. 113—his works, supposed miracles, 114—causes rain to cease, phantoms to appear, 118.
Sarsash, a descendant from Zardusht, I. 232.
Sartati, a class of Sanyasis, II. 139.
Sarud-i-Mastan, work of the Moveh Hushyar, quoted, I. 72, 76, 79; II. 136.
Sāturak, or Saruregh, a tyrant, I. 314.
Sarun (Mobei), author of the Zer- dusht Afshar, I. 77.
Sarush (Mobei), a Yazdian—his account of Zardusht's origin, I. 213.
Sasan, five individuals of that name, their lineage, I. 87.
Sasan, the Fifth, the last of fifteen Persian prophets, I. 105—account of him, ibid. n.—his commentary on the Desair, and the code of Zardusht quoted, 277.
Sasun (Azar), or the first son of king Darab the Less, I. 87.
Sastira, institute, science, II. 141.
Sutra Payah, sphere of the fixed stars, I. 280.
Sattes, a widow burning herself with the corpse of her husband, her recompense after death, II. 75—in a future birth appears as a man, 76—not to be forced into lire, ibid.
Sava (Satek), one of the three properties, II. 14, 149, 176, 178, 180.
Saturn, description of his form, I. 35, 36.
Satyam, "truth," II. 125.
Satya loka, one of the fourteen spheres, II. 12—abode of truth, ibid. n. 7.
Satyanath, a sect of Hindus, II. 128.
Satyavati, mother of Vyasa, also called Yojana gandha, II. 67 n.
Satya yugam, the age of the righteous, II. 47 n. 1.
Sātu Mutulk, "absolute sound," I. 81.
Sayah ban, and Sayah dar, umbrella, I. 19.
Schmidt (Isaac Jacob), II. 292 n. III. 113.
 SCHMÖLDER S (doctor), quoted, 11. 391.
Seer, a measure of weight, 11. 223 n. 2.
Sefand, the thirteenth Nosk of the Zand-Avesta—its contents, 1. 274 n.
Selden, author quoted, 1. 18 n.; Ill. 80 n. 2.
Selsebil, a source, sweet like clarified honey, in Gabriel’s heavenly mansion, Ill. 190 n. 1.
Serapis, the sun of autumn—the Egyptian Chnum—Esclapius—has a serpent—is Osiris—Helios Serapis—Jupiter Serapis—his temples in different countries, Ill. 112 n. 1.
Serat ul mustaklim, “the Right Road,” a work composed by Mujeddin Muhammad, son of Yakub, son of Muhammad Firoz-badi, Ill. 94.
Sérosh, Serush, Ized, or angel, etymology of his name, 1. 7 n.—presiding over the seventeenth day of the month, 62 n.—his functions, 287, 288, 289.
Serud nath, an adept in restraining the breath, 11. 437.
Sesha, the king of the serpent-race, 11. 16 n. 2.
Setud-yesht, the first Nosk of the Zand-Avesta, I. 272—its contents, ibid.
Seven, a sacred number, principally with the Ismailis, 11. 400 n. 1.
Sevras, or Sarvakas, name given to the Zains in different parts of India, 11. 212 n. 1.
Sewras, pious mendicants, III. 195 n. 1.
Shabdir, horse of king Parviz, I. 112 n. 3.
Shadbar, a Persian festival, 1. 63.
Shad darsh, “six objects of the six senses,” II. 206.
Shadib, founder of a sect, his epoch—opinion, 1. 207.
Shed Kesh, a person mentioned in the Samrad namah, 1. 201.
Shadmán (Mirza), a chief of the Hazarábs, Ill. 43 n. 1.—wounds Miyan Jelal eddin, 44.
Shafa, a work of Avisenna, Ill. 473 n. 3.
Sháfíya, a Muhammadan sect, 11. 385.
Shafei, surname of Muhammad Ebn Edris al Shafei, the founder of a Muhammadan sect, 11. 329 n. 350.
Shah abad eddin pur, place of pilgrimage in kachmir, 11. 166.
Shahádet, its meaning in the philosophy of the Súfis, III. 238 n. 4.
Shahbáb uddín Makul (Shaikh), quoted, 11. 45.
Shah Badakshi (Mawlana), Ill. 284.
Shah Jhuna, master of the Choharas, 11. 245.
Shah Fattah uula Shirasi (Hakim), establishes the new era of Akbar, 11. 99.
Shah Jahan, opposes Hargovind, 11. 275—sends an army against Harrayi, 282—imprisoned by his son Aureng-zeb, Ill. 283 n. 1—date of his death, ibid.—his whole title, 296.
Shah Mir Kadari, Ill. 284.
Shahnáh, intendant of police, 1. 157.
Shah—namah, poem of Ferdusi, quoted, 1. 20 n. 31 n. 33 n. 50, 32, 53, 58, 163, 185, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 213, 239 n. 344; II. 53, 130.
Shah samah nasar, composed by some of the Magi, I. 213—quoted, 246, 253, 284.
Shah Nasir Khusrau, poet, his verses quoted, 1. 363.
Shah ristan, work of Farzanah Bahram, quoted, 1. 212.
INDEX.

Shah Zadah (The Dostur), author of the volume of Sad der, I. 310.  
Shai or Shayi, "God-worshipper," 1. 24.

Shal Gili, son of Jai Alad, assumed the government. 1. 24, 25, 88, 188.

Shai Mahbul, succeeds to the Shaiyân empire. 1. 24, 25 — son of Shal Gili, 88.

Shal gramme, eagle-stone, II. 54 n. 2.

Shamar, a numerical quantity equal to one hundred salâm, see Salâm, I. 24.

Shams ed-doulah (or Samsamed doulah), the tenth prince of the Boyi dynasty. II. 173 n. 3.

Shamsen ul maili Kabus, son of Vašhamer, king of Giorgia and other provinces, II. 170 n. 2 — imprisoned by his ministers, 171.

Shameyat, minor suns, II. 51.

Shamsiyeh, the title of a work, III. 241 n. 1.

Sham-udder, a surname of Shedab, author of a treatise entitled Raza-bad — a follower of the Akhsijyân doctrine. I. 208.

Shamsirban Shah Jehani (Munshi), III. 286 n.

Shankar bhat, a Jnanindra, II. 107 — his conversation with a goldsmith, ibid.

Shapur, king of Persia, contemporary of Mani. I. 205 n. 4 — and of Azarbad, I. 303 n.

Sharf-eddin al Busiri, author of the Arabic poem Borda, I. 2 n.


Sharh-ī-Gulshen-râz, "Commentary upon Gulshen-râz," III. 144 n. 3.


Sharh movâkef, "Commentary upon the Stations (Theses of Metaphysics)," II. 379 n. 2.

Shat, a title of honor, I. 36.

Shat Desâtir — its prayers recited by the Sipâvis, I. 39, 60 — a comparison from that work quoted, 65.

Shat Kaivan, lord Saturn, I. 142.

Shat Mah, lunar lord, I. 12.

Shat Pirâyî, name of a fire-temple in Bagdad, I. 51.

Shedad, a fabulous personage, contemporary of Jemshid, II. 439.

Shedosh, ancient chief of poets, III. 107 — resists the love of the queen Shuker — sues a woman, adorer of the sun, 108 — is afflicted with a malady — the king sends his wife to him — Shedosh resolves upon a self-sacrifice to the sun, 109 — remains safe in the midst of flames — recites his verses, confesses his fault, but asserts his respect for the queen, 110.

Shedad eddin Omar Sohrawardi, quoted, III. 231 n. 2.

Sheherisâni, the surname of Al Fath Muhammed Ben Abdakerim, a doctor of the Asharian sect. II. 323 n. 1 — date of his death — two of his works mentioned, 323 n. 1; III. 105 n.

Shekunah, an eastern part of Khoristan, II. 336.

Shemsheddin Muhammed ben Yahya ben Ali Lahjani (Shaikh), II. 141 n. 3, 237, 279, 295.

SHERIAT, "Commentary upon "the Bezels," work of Duüs Kaiseri, III. 232 n. 4.

Sheriât, external law, III. 29, 35.

Sherif Khan Atelah, an enemy of the Roshenians, III. 44.

Shesh-kâkh, Persian prayer to the stars and to fire, I. 79.

Shiáts, I. 104 n.; II. 324, 327, 362 — their creed, 364, 365, 366, 368. Shi and lásh, "being and not being," III. 223 n. 4.

Shidid, a sect, I. 207.

Shidid, one of the compilers of the Testament of Jemshid, I. 195 — a travelling merchant of the Yekana-binan sect, ibid.

Shidistan, region of light, I. 9.
INDEX.

Shidayi (Mulla), an eloquent Hindu and poet, II. 107.
Shidistan, abodes of the forms of the luminous bodies, I. 35.
Shidosh, son of Anosh, quoted, II. 31.
Shidosh, son of Anosh, recounts miracles, I. 117—descended from Zardusht—disciple of Azar Kavân, 125—his travels, mode of devotion, 126—vision, mode of life, 128—sickness, 129—his words quoted, 130—his death, 131—verses on his death by the author of the Dabistan, ibid.
Shidrang, founder of a sect, I. 203—his epoch and opinion, ibid.
Shidrangian, a sect, I. 203.
Shid Shidan, effulgence of light, I. 10.
Shirab, a follower of Mazdak's creed, I. 378.
Shirim, wife of king Parviz, I. 112.
Shir Muhammed Khan, governor of Kalinga, II. 70.
Shis, see Hermes, III: 105 n.
Shosteri (or Tosteri), surname of Abu Muhammed Sahal ben And, III. 147 n. 1, 236.
Shudah band, "recorder," two to be attached to every vizir, I. 133.
Shumar Afin, rosary, I. 371.
Siatin, demons, III. 236.
Siddhants, "demonstrated truth," II. 207— is fourfold, ibid. n. 3.
Sifati, "belonging to attributes," a kind of divine manifestation, III. 270.
Sifatiah, attributists, II. 324 n. 4, 330.
Sigar-ul Mutakherin, by Mir Ghoolain Hussein Khan, quoted, II. 289.
Sikh, followers of the religion of Nanak, II. 246—their opinions, customs, character, 283, 288—a short account of them from 1664 to our days, 288 n. 1.
Sikhs, on pronunciation, II. 65 n. 1.
Silpa, "mechanics," II. 65 n. 1.
Silvestre de Sacy (baron), quoted, II. 304, 390, 391, 400 n. 1, 404 n. 411, 421 n. 1, 432, 436, 444; III. 27, 64 n. 229 nn. 1, 2, 230 n. 2, 277 n.
Simal, the universe, II. 13.
Simantômmayana, a rite of the Hindus, II. 55 and n. 1.
Simnad, chapter of the Zand-Avesta, I. 282, 283.
Simûrgh (also called Enka), a fabulous bird, I. 53 and n. 1, 191 n. 4; III. 237.
Sinjar, the sixth Sultan of the Seljuvides, sends an army against the Ismâilah, II. 440 n. 4—finds the dagger of an Ismâilah fixed in the ground near his bed, 440—makes peace with the Ismâilahs, 441 n. 1.
Sipasi, "adorners," I. 147.
Sipasian, sect of the Persian religion—their tenets and ceremonies, I. 5, 6, 32, 33.
Siraj-eddin Ansari, an ancestor of Miyan Bayezid Ansari, III. 27 n. 1.
Sirat, "the bridge of the last judgment," its allegorical signification, III. 151, 152.
Siroz, part of the Zand-Avesta, I. 225 n.
Sitâ, the daughter of the king of Mithila, wife of Râmacandra, II. 23—carried away by Râvana, recovered by her husband, ibid. n. 3.
Sitan, name of a Noak of the Zand-Avesta, I. 273.
Sitad cher, the second Noak of the Zand-Avesta—contains an interpretation of a tree of four branches seen in a vision by Zardusht, I. 265 n. 1—its general contents, 272 n.
Siva râtri, Siva's night, II. 58 n. 4—his followers bound to drink wine on that night, 164 n. 1.
INDEX.

Siva, the destroyer of existences, II. 4—whence he proceeded, 14.
Siyamak, king and prophet, I. 30, 31—a tradition concerning him, 34—his words quoted, 69—son of Kaionors, 88.
Siya Zhup, "the three weights or "blows," a mode of invoking God, I. 77.
Smartas, see Samartagas, II. 53.
Smriti sastra, the written law, II. 165.
Smriti, Hindu institutes, II. 88.
Sodarshan, nephew and pupil of a great anonymous Jñāni, II. 105.
Solaim, the star canopus, the same as Agastya, a saint, II. 34.
Sollius, quoted, I. 218 n.
Somana, the lunar vein, II. 132.
Sonmat, Sonmites, explained, II. 324 n. 1—their creed, 332, 333, 334.
Sosiosb, the third posthumous son of Zoroaster—epoch of his appearance and deeds, I. 282 n.
Srikakul, the capital of Kalinga, II. 3.
Sri Kant, a learned Kachmirian, II. 164, 165.
Srivaras, a class of Buddhists, II. 212.
Stephanus, I. 171.
Sthūla sarira, elementary body, II. 176 n. 2, 177 n.
Stone (black), emblem of Saturn, I. 49 and n.
Strabo, author, quoted, I. 17 n. 209—mentions Zoroaster's works, 214 n.—quoted about the barsom, 319 n. 2, 340 n. 4.
Sva-bhavah, the self-existing, II. 13.
Svāmi prāma, a state of beatitude, II. 93.
Svapna, vision during sleep, I. 84.
Svapna avastha, the state of sleep or dream, II. 92.
Svayukt, a state of beatitude, II. 93.
Subahani, his verses quoted, I. 195.
Suchi, purity, II. 126.
Sud (Sudi, Sudin), name of the fourth class of the people, I. 19.
Sudarshana Kal, a Jnanindra, II. 107.
Sud bar, intercalary days of the Persians, I. 62.
Sudras, the fourth class of the Hindus, their destination, II. 49.
Sulahs, Sūfis, derivations of the word, III. 220.
Sūfis (Muhammadans'), divided into fourteen families, their names, II. 224.
Sūfi uddin, the ancestor of the Safavean dynasty, their origin, 32 and n. 6.
Sugriva, chief of savagetribes, called monkeys, ally of Rāma, II. 23 n. 3.
Subrah, one of the compilers of the testament of Jemshid, I. 193—a travelling merchant of the Yekanah-binan sect, ibid.
Suja, son of Shah Jehan—obliged by Aureng-zeb to fly to Arrakan, where he dies, III. 285 n. 1.
Suidas, quoted, I. 212 n. 224 n.
Sukha, "sexual delight," II. 206.
Sukla pakcha, the light half of a month, II. 20.
Sukhra svāda, enjoyment, I. 85.
Sukshma sarira, rudimental body, II. 177 n.
Sultan Khajah, buried according to the old Persian mode, III. 102.
Sūm, "fasting," how interpreted by the Ismā'ilahs, II. 408.
Sumbul, town where the Kalki-Āvātar is to take place, II. 24.
Sū-Meru, mountain of gold, abode of celestial beings, II. 41—account of it, ibid. n. 1—residence of Brahma, 260 n. 1.
Sumitra, son of the Bay of Kalinga, held Akaz to be space, II. 39.
Sun, description of his form, I. 38.
Sun, the issue of Kārṣapaka, II. 38—twelve suns, 33, 218—attributes and adoration of the sun, 233—prayer to him, 236 n. 237—Muhammad's arrival at it, III. 247.
Sunai, author quoted, I. 88, 140; II. 26.
Suraj nath, an adept in mastering the breath—lived not less than seven hundred years, II. 198.
INDEX.

Sura loka, the heaven of Indra, one of the fourteen spheres, II. 12—one of three spheres, 13.

Suras, gods, whirl the ocean, II. 42 n. 1.

Suristar, name of the third class of the people, I. 19.

S̄r̄var (Söṛyar), a particular sect, II. 241—kill strangers, 242.

S̄r̄ṣaḥ mān̄śaḥ, seraph-hearted, I. 180.

Surya-makhan, worshippers of the sun, II. 235—two classes of them, 237—their conduct and opinion, 238, 239.

Suvapna, revelation during sleep, I. 84, 85.

Su svapna avas̄tha, "the state of "good sleep," II. 93 n. 1.

Sutāla-loka, one of the fourteen spheres, II. 12—an infernal region, n. šabd. 10.

Śūtra, three d, a rite of the Hinduśus, II. 56.

Śvarga loka, heaven, II. 237.

Śvādishtanam, umbilical region, II. 131 n. 1, 150.

Śvetāketa, pronounces an imprecation against adulterous women, II. 69.

Syncellus, I. 33 n. 1.

T.

Tabiāyah, "physiologists," III. 308.

Tab ket Nāseri, "the degrees of "'Nāser,'" a work of Naser Eddin Tūsi, III. 144 n. 1.

Tab̄sar, window, place of observation in a lofty pavilion for the king, I. 42, 43, 168.

Tabūk, a place situated about halfway between Medina and Damascus, III. 56 n. 1.

Taherir, writings (of Euclid), III. 218.

Tahlil, "praise of God," III. 35.

Tahmūras, son of Hushang, king and prophet, I. 30, 31—a saying of his quoted, 73, 88.

Tāj Eddin (Shaikh), son of Shaikh Zakria Jondheni Dahlouyi, exponent of mystic doctrine, III. 91.

Tajjel, "a transitory vision," III. 269 n. 1.

Tajjerid, "divestment of what is "'accessory,'" III. 218 n. 2.

Tājīk, a tribe of a mixt origin—their habitations—enemies of the Rosheniah, III. 48 n.

Takash techin, the Atabek, or lieutenanth-general of Persia, supports Barkiarok, II. 438 n. 1.

Takbir, "pious exclamation," III. 299.

Takviyat māni, "the strengthening "'of sense,'" III. 263.

Talmites, a name of the Ismāi'Iahs, II. 42 n. 1.

Talatala loka, one of the fourteen spheres, II. 12—an infernal region, ibid. n. 11.

Tabliyat, "pilgrimage," II. 409—the principal rites and ceremonies performed by the pilgrims at Mecca enumerated, ibid. n. 3, 410. n.

Talkhis al Meftah, "Explanation "'of the key,'" title of a work, III. 218 n. 3.

Tamas, darkness, ignorance, one of the three properties, II. 14, 149, 176, 178.

Tamīlik, "hereditary property," III. 32.

Tamma, a Brahman, II. 67.

Tamud, a tribe of Arabs, II. 369.

Tamujin, or Temoz Khin, original
INDEX.

name of Jengiskhan, l. 160 n. 1, III. 112.
Tanásokh, "transmigration," III. 277.
Tattmatra, elementary matter, II. 477 n.
Tanzil, revelation from heaven, II. 411 n. 1.
Tapa loka, one of the fourteen spheres, II. 12 — the abode of ascetics, *ibid.* n. 6.
Tapasa, devout austerity, II. 126.
Tapasya, penitents, II. 239 — their practice and opinion, 240, 241.
Taprahi-Mobedi, "the sacerdotal "kettle-drums," work of Mobed Pa-
ristar, l. 123.
Tarab, a distinguished Vahadi — killed by Abás, III. 23, 24.
Tarā lochanā, a Brahman belonging to the Saktians, II. 137 — his relations with Ahsen ulá, the governor of Kachmir, *ibid.* 138.
Tārāvas'tha, the moving state, II. 94.
Tarikat, "religious rule," III. 33.
Tarka-Sāstra, logic and dialectics, H. 163.
Tārnak nath, a sect, II. 128.
Tarsa, a Christian, etymology of the word, II. 305.
Tashīb, rosary, III. 35, 36.
Tasbuah, "ritual profession of "religion," III. 260.
Tasbihā, "assimilators," a Mu-
hammedan sect, III. 350, 401.
Tātīl, Tatilian, "the indifferent," a Mohammedan sect, II. 350, 351 n. 401.
Tatva, reality, truth, II. 11 n. —
intelect, 16.
Tatwas (categories) of the Sankhya philosophy, twenty-five of them enumerated, II. 122.
Tāvalji Khan Bēg, besieges and takes
the fort Bahar, II. 164.
Taverner (J. B.), traveller in the
East, l. 225 n.

Tāwil, the allegorical sense of the
Muhammedan doctrine, II. 411.
Tawīt, "the Old Testament," II. 340
III. 30.
Tair Bahader, a general of the
Moghuls, besieges the fort Arak
in Sistan — a plague among the
Moghuls, III. 417.
Tazkerah, "commemoration," work
of Nasîr ed-dīn, III. 218 n. 4.
Takeret-ul awlia, "The History of "Saints," a work of Fereid ed-dīn
Attar, III. 96 n. 1.
Techechshūnesh, an ancestor of Zar-
dusht, l. 215 n.
Thales Milesius, quoted, l. 205 n. 1.
Thâvesar (Schâtâras), name of Sary-
âsis, standing upon one leg, II. 148.
Theopompus, shows a knowledge of
Zoroaster's works, l. 224 n.
Tholuck (F. A. D.), quoted, l. 82;
III. 241 n. 2, 291 n. 1.
Tedlis, "artificer," a term of the
Ismâ'ili, II. 406.
Tegh Bahader, successor to the Guru
Har Krichna of the Sikhs, II. 288
n. 1 — put to death by the Muham-
medans, *ibid.*
Temiram, name of Mercury, I. 39 n.
Tersün Badakh (Mulla), quoted by
the author of the Dabistan, III.
104.
Timari, one appointed to protect
the helpless, such as children
and the infirm, l. 173.
Timsar, a title of honor, I. 36.
Timür, name of a year and a month,
l. 28.
Tir-arAZ, a fire-temple, I. 47.
Tinab, vision during sleep, I. 84.
Tir (Mercury), description of his
form, I. 39.
Tir, name of an angel and a month,
l. 61, 62 n.
Tirah (mountains of), perhaps the
district of the ancient Thrâni, III.
41 n. 1.
Tirah Kösh, a person of the Radian
sect, l. 203, 292, 294.
Tirth, place of pilgrimage, II. 166.
Tirthah, a class of Sanyâsis, II. 139.
Toftaf ol ebrar, "a present offered
INDEX.

"to the Pious," work of Jāmi, III. 220 n. 1.
Torru, of Busāwāri, a Mobra in Guzerat—his opinion about Zar-
dusht's native place, I. 263, 264.
Touhid, "coalescence with God," III. 36.
Treta yugas, the second age of the Hindus—its duration, II. 47.
Trikaranas, three causes, the three chief deities, II. 17.
Tripujas, worshippers of the three kingdoms of nature, II. 243.
Trismegist, see Hermes, III. 106 n. 1.
Trisula, trident, weapon of the goddess Durga, II. 163.
Tuba, "the tree of heaven," III. 158 n. 1.
Tulas, a small shrub, II. 184 n. 2.
Tuli Khan, fourth son of Jengis Khan, rules the kingdoms Kho-
rasan and Kabul—dies soon after his father, II. 449 n.; III. 116 n.
Tunadil, fierce demon, I. 180.

Tundbar, noxious animals, I. 20.
Turbaratur, or Turbaraturhash, a Turk, kills Zardusht, 371— is
consumed by the splendor of the prophet's rosary, 372.
Turbaraturas, or Tur-Bratur, or Turu-Bratuhash—variations of Pa-
rantarash, the name of Zardusht's enemy, I. 314.
Turkan Khatun, wife of Malik Shah—her contest with Barkiarok, her
step-son, for the succession of her own son, Mahmud, to the throne,
II. 438 n. 1.
Turner, author of "Embassy to "China," quoted, II. 292.
Tus (town), by whom built, I. 32—
two towns of that name, I. 365 n. 1.
Tutianush, a Greek philosopher, interrogates Zardusht, 227 n. 1,
280 n.
Tyagl, one who abandons all exte-
rrior things, II. 240.
Tyrooth, a district in the province of
Bahir, II. 261.

U. — V.

Vād, measure of time, I. 14.
Vāda, "discussion," II. 208.
Vahadiya, a sect, followers of Va-
heh Mahmud, III. 12—their tenets,
14 to 16—their customs, speeches,
traditions, 18 to 22.
Vaheshtush, the fifth additional
day of the Persian year, I. 62.
Vahedeh mabs, " unmixed unity,"
III. 283.
Vahedeh-i-mokam, " solitariness of
' station,'" III. 222.
Vahedeh Mahmud, head of a sect—his
birth, III. 12—placed in perfec-
tion above Muhammad, 13—his
system of the creation of the
world, 17, 18.
Vaidya vidya, the medical science,
II. 163.
Vaiṅkūnta, the heaven, or world, of
Vichnu, II. 178 n.
Vairag, a sect of Hindus, II. 228.
Vairagis, a sect of ascetics, II. 184.
Vaisakha, April-May, II. 24.
Vaiśya, the third class of the Hin-
dus—their destination, II. 49.
Vakam, wrong way of worship, II.
153.
Vakshur, "prophet," III. 209.
Vali, "a saint," III. 264 n. 1.
Valid, son of Akba Abd-ullah, son of Sâd, son of Abi Serh, III. 56.
Vâmana, Dwarf-Avátar, II. 21 — an account of it, 22 and n. 1.
Vans Kennedy, quoted, III. 83 n. 1.
Vard, a measure of time, I. 14.
Varuna, regent of the West (Paśchima), II. 219.
Vaśilet, “union with God,” III. 29, 36, 37.
Vaśi, a class of Sūfis, III. 230 n. 1.
Vaśishta, a holy sage, II. 27—his birth, ibid. n. 1 — instructor to Rama, 28.
Vaśuki, sovereign of the snakes, II. 19.
Vattier, translator of the logic of Avisenna. III. 176 n. 1.
Vāyu, regent between north and west, II. 219.
Vayu-purana, quoted, II. 14 n. 3.
Varu, “ablution,” how interpreted by the Ismâils, II. 408; III. 239.
Udâharaṇa, “the instance in a syllogism,” II. 207 n. 4.
Udâmvara, glorious fig-tree, II. 80.
Udana, pulsation in the head, neck and temples, II. 133 n. 1.
Udâils, ascetics, II. 241.
Vedâ, the generic term for the sacred writings of the Hindus, II. 5 and n. 1 — enumeration of the four Vedas, 64, 63 n. 4 — the constituents parts of a Veda, ibid.
Védânā-skandha, sentiments excited by pleasing or unpleasing objects, II. 198 n. 1.
Vedanta, II. 63 n. 1—defined, 142.
Vedanta sara, work quoted, II. 10 n. 4.
Vedântians, followers of the Vedanta, II. 90 — substance of their creed, 90, 96.
Vehest Mantsre, the third Nosk of the Zand-Avesta, its contents, I. 272 n.
Vendidad, part of the Zand-Avesta, I. 225 n.
Vendidad Sadē, collective name of three works belonging to the Zand-Avesta, I. 225 n.
Vendidad, the twentieth Nosk of the Zand-Avesta, its contents, I. 273 n.
Veshap, Veshasp, the eleventh Nosk of the Zand-Avesta, its contents, I. 274 n.
Vêzhahderun, “internally pure,” title of Sûfis, III. 221.
Vichnu, the Preserver, II. 4—whence he proceeded, 14 — account of his nature and character, 175, 176—four-armed, 217 — his weapons, ibid. — one thousand Vichus, 218.
Viehnunath deo, Raja residing in Naranyapur — by orders of Durga, sacrifices men, II. 162.
Vidura, son of Vyasa, II. 68.
Visya-skandha, “what is perceived by senses,” II. 197.
Virâf-nameh, Persian poem, by a disciple of Zardusht, I. 224 n.
Virâf-nameh, a poem, in Zand, in Pelevi, and Persian, in verse and prose, by different authors. English translation of it, I. 283 n. 1.
Viraj, the primeval and universal manifested being, II. 37.
Visperêh, Khirad, “the knowledge of every thing,” I. 316 n.
Vispered, part of the Zand-Avesta, I. 225 n.
Vispered, a part of the fifteenth Nosk, I. 316 n.
Visavamitra, a Kshatriya saint, becomes a Brahman, II. 229—his speech to Rama chandra, 256 to 260, 266 to 268.
Visuddham, the hollow between the frontal sinuses, II. 131 n. 1.
Vitala-loka, one of the fourteen regions, II. 12— an infernal region, ibid. n. 9.
Vîtan, “controversy,” II. 208 n. 3.
Vitrúvius, quoted, I. 205 n. 1.
Vivâhah, marriage, II. 57—five forms of marriage enumerated,
INDEX.

71, 72—eight forms of Manu, 71 n. 1.
Vizhak, "local director" of a king's private property, I. 453.
Ulemai Islam, work written by a disciple of Zardusht, I. 224 n.
Ulaviha, a sect of Ali I'hahang, II. 437 n. 1—their creed, 438.
Umvisiyah, a sect, II. 336.
Umer Khakani (Hakim), quoted, II. 54.
Umer Khiyam, quoted, III. 131.
Vojud, "existence," III. 223.
Upamaya, "the application in a "syllogism," II. 207 n. 4.
Upangas, four of them, II. 66 n.
Upasthan, II. 65 n. 1.
Upavedas, II. 65 n. 1—four enumerated, ibid.
Upêksha, endurance, patience, II. 121.
Uranian, a peculiar manner of reading Pehlavi poetry, I. 63.
Urli, of Shiraz, author quoted, I. 6, 96, 129; II. 158.
Ursia, sent to death by David, II. 208.
Vritatya, qualities, II. 121.
Usam (Mulla), III. 219.
Ustuvan, "supervisor," two of them attached to every virîr, I. 135.
Utqare (Mercury), the son of the regent of the moon, II. 39.
Utarini, a Telenga word for a sort of sacrificial wood, II. 80.
Uweis Karni, the founder of a monastic order, III. 19.
Vyakaranas, grammar, II. 65 n. 1.
Vyan, wind, expanding through the whole body, II. 133 n. 1.
Vyas, son of Parasara, his works, II. 67 n. 2, 68, 220.
Uttara Mimansa, II. 4 n.

U.

Woj-péya, sacrifice of three goats, II. 82 n. 3.
Wakhtar, "the East," I. 323.
Wakshur-i simbari, surname of Zaratusht, I. 30.
Wakt, "time," its technical signification, III. 211 n. 2.
Wali, or Shah Waliullah, also Shems Waliullah, an author of Hindustani poems, edited in Paris, 1834, II. 114, 115 n. 2—his Persian verses quoted, 115, 116.
Wankanwish, name of a Nok of the Zand-Avesta, I. 275.
Warakt and Khurab-i-Yardan, light of the Almighty, I. 290.
Ward, author of a work on the Hindus, quoted, II. 22, 27, 44, 34, 36, 59, 60, 61, 66, 67, 68, 72, 73.
Wassel Ebn Ata, founder of a Mohammedan sect, II. 325.
Wazda, name of a Nok of the Zand-Avesta, I. 275.
Werkha en Nafl, cousin of Khadija, translator of the Old and New Testament from Hebrew into Arabic, II. 300.
Wilson (Horace), quoted, II. 10, 14, 18, 19, 27, 34, 53, 54, 97, 68, 71, 80, 82, 114, 119, 122, 128, 166, 179, 180, 184, 191, 219, 223.

X.

Xenophon, quoted, II. 37 n. 1.
INDEX.

Y.

Yad Afraz, rosary, 371.
Yahuda, Jews, their religion, II. 293 to 299.
Yajna, sacrifice, II. 79 n. 1—mode of sacrificing a goat, 80, 81—in which months to be offered, 83.
Yajno pavita, "sacrificial cord," II. 57 n. 3.
Yajñash Veda, II. 64.
Yakub (Shaikh), a grammarian of Kashmir, quoted, III. 92.
Yakub Tafani (Tarkhani), II. 349, 335.
Yama, religious restraint, II. 125 n. 1.
Yama, regent of the South (Dakhsha), II. 219.
Yashanom (for Barashnom) a sort of purification, I. 329, ibid. n. 2.
Yasan, son of Shih Mahbaw, I. 24, 25, 58—succeeds to his father in the government, 26.
Yasan Ajam, the last king of the Yasanian dynasty—etymology of Yasan, I. p. 26, 181.
Yasht, a Zand word, signifying prayer, devotion—its etymology, I. 288 n. 1—explanation of it, 312 n. 2.
Yasna, the Zand name of a part of the Zand-Avesta—French translation of it, under the Pehivi name, Iveshine, revised and commented, I. 226 n.—double edition of the lithographed text of this work, ibid.
Yatha abu virio, the three first words of a prayer, I. 272.
Yatis (Jatis), pious mendicants, II. 195 n. 1—a distinguished class among Buddhists and Jainas, 212, 213, 241.
Yazdian, Yazdian, a sect of the Persian religion, I. 6.
Yazdian, "godly," how otherwise called, I. 147.
Yardan Sita, disciple of Mober Sarosh, causes rain to fall, I. 115—other supposed miracles of his, 116, 117, 118.
Yarid, son of Māvīsh, II. 338 n. 1, 339 n. 1—descends from Pharaoh, III. 21.
Yekanah bin, "seers of thirty," a sect, I. 123, 193.
Yeshts Sades, part of the Zand-Avesta, I. 225 n.
Terdejird, son of Sheriar, the last of four Persian dynasties—duration of their reigns, I. 30, 31.
Yoga, devotion, with other significations, II. 124 n. 3, 127.
Yogi, a devotee, II. 100, 101, 127.
Yojana, a measure of distance, II. 10 n. 2.
Yojanagandha, wife of Parassara, mother of Vyasa, II. 67, 68.
Yudisht hira, worshipper of the sun, III. 141—the sun appears to him, provides him with food for twelve years, by means of a miraculous kettle, ibid. n. 1.
Yugmakam, sacrifice of two goats, II. 82.
Yusezazi, a wild tribe in Kabul and Peshawer, III. 48 n.
Zab, son of Nauder, I. 87.
Zabrutus, perhaps a name for Zoroaster, I. 277 n. 1.
Zad, measure of time, I. 14.
Zafer Khan ibn Khaja, Abul Hasen Taramzi, governor of Kachmir—his connexion with Tara-lochana—obliged to quit Kachmir, retires to Kabul, and Lahore, II. 138.
Zaherah, "Venus," Muhammed's arrival at it, III. 247.
Zaid, son of Ali, son of Zain el-abeddin, the founder of the Zaydiyyat sect, II. 363 n. 1.
Zakaria (Moulana), his conversation with Bayazid, III. 32, 33.
Zakat, "alms," how interpreted by the Isma'ilahs, II. 408; III. 33.
Zakum, "the tree of nature," III. 139.
Zamiad, angel presiding over the twenty-eighth day of the month, I. 62 n.
Zamini-Serus, terrestrial angel, I. 9.
Zanab, the tail of the dragon—a demon destroyed by Vichiiu, II. 41, 42.
Zanar, a thread, I. 66 n. 1; II. 53.
Zand, an ancient language, in what countries spoken, I. 223 n.
Zand-Avesta, work of Zoroaster, I. 222—various interpretations of this word, *ibid.* n. 1—translated into French, and German, 223—five books enumerated to which this name properly belongs, 225 n.—when written, *ibid.* quoted. 7, 18, 31, 149, 193, 213, 214, 216, 223, 232, 236, 241, 257, 258, 264, 265, 268, 280, 282, 283, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 297, 310, 319, 321, 325, 331, 332, 334, 335, 346, 347, 357, 358; II. 26, and elsewhere, the chief authority concerning Zoroaster's religion.
Zarbâd, descendant from Zarthusht, disciple of Zar Arivan, I. 125.
Zaratusht, prophet, I. 30.
Zaratusht Bahram (Mohed), author of Zaratusht-namah, his account of Zarthusht's birth, I. 244, 245—son of Parzhu, 276.
Zarthusht, the variations of his name in different languages enumerated, I. 211—various epochs attributed to him, 212, 213 n.—his legendary origin, 213—various opinions about his ancestors, 215 n. 1—he laughed on coming into the world, 218—escapes destruction in all the attempts of the magicians to destroy him, 219, 220, 221, 222, 227—his conduct in his fifteenth year, 229—in his thirtieth year travels towards Iran; his adventures on the road, 229, 230, 231—holds a vision, *ibid.*—is visited by the angel Bahman, and transported to heaven, 232, 233—explanation of the vision, 234—Zarthusht converses with God, 235, 236, 237—sees Ahraman in hell, *ibid.*—delivers a person from hell, *ibid.* n.—undergoes severe trials, 238—receives a mission to king Gushtasp, 239—on his return receives a flock to be protected, 240—further instructions from several angels, 241—puts the magicians to flight by reading one chapter of the Zand-Avesta, 244—destroys two kings rejecting his doctrine, 245—arrives at the court of king Gushtasp, 245—his access and reception, *ibid.* n. 246—plants a cypress before the king's palace.
246 n.—refutes and confounds the sages around the king, 247.
248—presents and reads the Zend-Avesta, 249, 250—scheme of the philosophers against him, at first successful, 251, 252—offers to cure the king’s palsied charger under conditions, to which the whole royal family submits, to adopt his faith, 253, 254—his innocence proved, his enemies punished, 254, 255—cures and converts Lohrasp and Zerir, 255—prays God to grant four wishes to Gushtasp, 256—is declared a prophet by four angels before the king, 257, 258—causes Gushtasp to ascend to heaven, 259—distributes hallowed milk to several persons, ibid.—recites some sections of the Zend to Gushtasp, who orders the fire-worship to be established in every city, 260—Zardusht explains to the king his prophetic mission—equal to that of Muhammad, who acknowledges it in the Koran, 280, 281, 282—Zardusht’s native country and town, 283 and n. 1, 284—his request of immortality, not granted, 284—on tasting something like honey in heaven, he sees in a vision hell, and a tree with seven branches, 284, 285—explanation of it, 286, 287—on the termination of the millennium, many evils predicted, 288, 289—mixed with some consolatory events, 280, 281—is killed by a Turk, 271—abstraction of his doctrines, 279—principal epochs of it, 280.
Zardusht namah, a Persian poem, 1, 213 n. 224 n.
Zarvans akarene, "boundless "time," the parent of the two principles, good and bad, 1, 326 n. 334 n. 2.
Zat, "essence," a kind of divine manifestation, III. 270.
Zatk and fatk, "the shutting and "opening." III. 169.
Zaydiyat, a Muhammedan sect, II. 363—divided into three principal branches, ibid. n. 1.
Zehir-eddin Muhammad Baber, II. 246—short account of him, ibid. n. 2—his Memoirs, 247 n.—his four expeditions towards India, 249 n. 2—conquers India, III. 27.
Zeinah (Zenobia), wife of Zaid—enamors Muhammad—is divorced from Zaid and married to Muhammed, III. 39 n. 1.
Zeman baik, III. 216.
Zemzem, sacred well at Mecca, III. 14 n. 1—an emblem of the sun, 168.
Zena, "coit," how interpreted by the Ismâliyas, II. 408.
Zerdusht Afghar, work of Mohed Surush, quoted concerning a position of a devotee in praying, I. 77, 80.
Zerir, brother to king Gushtasp, cured of a disease and converted by Zardusht, I. 285.
Zering Gushab, a dog in hell—his action, I. 287 n. 2.
Zikâlah, the eleventh Arabian mouth, I. 46.
Zilhajah, an Arabian mouth, III. 257.
Zindbar, innoxious creatures, I. 20.
Zohak, his epoch and empire, I. 33 n.—his two serpents, 53.
Zohrah Venusus, the son of Bharig, II. 39—the director of the demons, author of sciences and religions of the Barbarians, 44.
Zoroaster (see Zardusht), the principal events of his life, in chronological order, I. 280 n.
Zulnarain, surname of the Khalif Osman, I. 98, 100 n.
CONTENTS

OF THE THIRD VOLUME.

CHAPTER VII.
Of the religion of the Sadikiahls................................................. 1

CHAPTER VIII.
Section I. — Of the appearance of the individual Vahed, and an account of his person.................................................. 12
Section II. — An account of some tenets of Vahed............................ 14
Section III. — Upon some of the sayings of Vahed.............................. 16
Section IV. — On certain customs, forms of speech, and traditions of this sect ................................................................. 18

CHAPTER IX.
Of the religion of the Roshenian.
Section I. — Of the appearance of the lord Miyán Bâyezid .................. 26
Section II. — An account of the history of the lord Miyán Roshen Bâyazid ................................................................................. 38
Section III. — Upon the transactions of the sons of the lord Miyán Bâyazid .......................................................... 42

CHAPTER X.
Of the religion of the Ilahiah.
Section I. — On the appearance of the Khalifet of the All-Just .......... 49
Section II. — On the dispute of the people of different religions ....... 50
Section III. — Upon the virtues of the stars, according to reason, manifestation, revelation, and tradition .......................... 105
Section IV. — Upon the sayings of his Majesty (Akbar), dwelling in the seventh heaven ........................................ 121
CHAPTER XI.

Of the religion of the Wise (Philosophers).

Section I.—Of the religion of the philosophers, and of some branches of their questions ........................................... 139
An account of the pages of human actions and their recorders, and of the descent of angels and demons to the good and the wicked ................................. 133
An account of mountains and seas, and of what occurs upon the earth at the last judgment ................................. 155
Account of the tree Tuba, which is in heaven, and the tree Zakum, which is in hell ........................................... 158

Section II. — Of the reputation and the truth of the prophetic dignity
Upon the meaning of revelation and inspiration ..................... 175
Upon the interpretation of the miracles of the prophet .................. 177

Section III.—Of the successors of these philosophers, and the chief followers of this creed ........................................... 204

CHAPTER XII.

Of the religion of the Sufiaks.

Section I.—Of some of their tenets ........................................... 220

Section II.—Of the prophetic office, and explanation of the public declarations conformable to the revelation of inspired persons ........................................... 241

Section III.—Of some of the Saints among the moderns, and of the Sufis whom the author of the work has known .................. 284

EPILOGUE

Of Moula Nazer Ushruf, editor of the Persian text of the Dabistán, printed in Calcutta ........................................... 315
Index ........................................... 321

THE END.
ERRATA.

Volume I. page 41, note 1, line 8, instead of Venus read Mercury.

192. l. 2. Khurshid r. Khursad.
214. n. 1, l. 1. Runzat r. Runzat.
215. n. 1, l. 7. Jeth r. Yench.
216. l. 10. Kuchvar r. Kishvar.
271. l. 19. Ashtawand r. Asta wanzand.
298. n. 3, l. 1. p. 235 r. 246.

Volume II. page 27, l. 10. Mudgha r. Moghil.
94. n. 3, l. 8. सावास्या r. शारावास्या
96. l. 3. Jinni r. Jinmi.
110. n. 1, l. 1. Parasha r. Purna.
124. l. 12. abhasayoga r. abhyasayoga.
137. n. 1, l. 1. धलोंक r. धलोक.
173, note 2, referring to Abu Ali's work, ought to be note 3, and n. 3, referring to Jafer Kakayah, ought to be n. 2.
184. l. 17. tretasi r. tulasi.
204. n. 4, l. 1. हल्दि r. हल्दूर.
215, l. 25 is transposed and should be l. 24.
217. n. 2, last line. ग्रह r. घट.
220. l. 11. bhr r. Iter.
268. l. 11. trut r. truth.
289. n. l. 2. Sagar r. Siyar.

Volume III. page 42, l. 8. after Omar Shaikh, add comma.
47. l. 16. Ahtedad r. Ahdad.
96. n. 1. 2. r. 2.
153. l. 1. Run fa yakan, r. Kusaya-Kus.
238. l. 10. at the word things—reference to note 1.
1. 11. instead of reference 1 read 2.
1. 14. 2 — 3.
1. 17. 3 — 4.

note 1. l. 1. left blank, ought to be see pp. 223, 230, 233.
1. 2. instead of 1 read 2.
1. 3. 2 — 3.
1. 4. 3 — 4.

ibid. مطلب r. مطلب.
265 note l. 9. Futasal r. Favatal.
284 r. 234.
281 l. 8. Futasal r. Favatal.
1844.

THE

Oriental Translation Fund

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

Founded, 1828.

Patron:

HER MOST GRACIOUS MAJESTY

QUEEN VICTORIA.

Vice-Patron:

HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS PRINCE ALBERT.

Officers:

CHAIRMAN:
The Right Hon. Sir GORE OUSELEY, Bart., Vice-President
R.A.S., F.R.S., &c., &c.

DEPUTY CHAIRMEN:
SIR G. T. STAUNTON, Bart., M.P., Vice-President R.A.S.,
F.R.S., &c., &c.
The Right Hon. Sir E. H. EAST, Bart., F.R.S., &c.

Treasurer—BERIAH BOTFIELD, Esq., M.P.
Secretary—The Rev. JAMES REYNOLDS, M.R.A.S.

* * It is requested that those Individuals, or Institutions, who are
willing to subscribe to the Oriental Translation Fund, will send their
Names, addressed to "The Secretary of the Oriental Fund, Royal
Asiatic Society's House, No. 14, Grafton Street, Bond Street, London;"
and inform him where their Subscriptions will be paid. The amount of
Subscription is Ten Guineas, annually, for large paper copies; and
Five Guineas for small paper copies.
Subscriptions for Royal Paper Copies.

HER MOST EXCELLENT MAJESTY THE QUEEN.
His Royal Highness the Prince Albert.
His Majesty the King of the Netherlands.
His Majesty the King of the Belgians.
His Majesty the King of the French.
His Imperial and Royal Highness the Grand Duke of Tuscany.
His Royal Highness the Duke of Cambridge.
His Grace the Archbishop of Canterbury.
His Grace the Duke of Somerset.
His Grace the Duke of Richmond.
His Grace the Duke of Buccleuch and Queensbury.
His Grace the Duke of Devonshire.
His Grace the Duke of Northumberland.
His Grace the Duke of Wellington.
The Most Honble. the Marquess of Lansdowne.
The Most Honble. the Marquess of Bute.
The Most Honble. the Marquess of Northampton.
The Most Honble. the Marquess of Anglesey.
The Most Honble. the Marquess of Cholmondeley.
The Right Honble. the Earl of Shrewsbury.
The Right Honble. the Earl of Clare.
The Right Honble. the Earl of Glasgow.
The Right Honble. the Earl of Carlisle.
The Right Honble. the Earl Brownlow.
The Right Honble. the Earl Amherst.
The Right Honble. the Earl of Powis.
The Right Honble. the Earl of Ripon.
The Right Reverend the Lord Bishop of Winchester.
The Right Honble. Lord Pruhoe.
The Right Honble. Lord Bexley.
The Right Honble. Lord Lyndhurst.
The Lady Charlotte Guest.
The Honble. Mountstuart Elphinstone.
The Honble. R. H. Clive, M.P.
The Right Honble. Sir Gore Ouseley, Bt.
The Right Honble. Sir G. Warrender, Bt. M.P.
The Right Honble. Sir E. H. East, Bt.
Sir George T. Staunton, Bt. M.P.
Sir Charles T. Metcalf, Bt.
The Honble. the East India Company.
The Royal Institution of Great Britain.
The Athenæum, London.
The Wesleyan Missionary Society.
The Asiatic Society of Bengal.
The Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society.
The President and Fellows of Magdalen College, Oxford.
The Library of Exeter College, Oxford
The Provost of Trinity College, Dublin.
The Royal Irish Academy.
The Royal Library, Hanover.
The Royal University, Leyden.
The Royal Library, Munich.
The Royal Library, Berlin.
The Imperial Library, Vienna.
The Imperial University of Kasan.
The Imperial Academy of Sciences of St. Peters burg.
Nathaniel Bland, Esq.
Beriah Bottfield, Esq., M.P.
Lieut.-Colonel James Caulfield, C.B.
Charles Purton Cooper, Esq.
James Ewing, Esq.
Major-General Edward Frederick, C.B.
Hudson Gurney, Esq., F.R.S.
Major-General vans Kennedy.
Louis Hayes Petit, Esq.
Alexander Raphael, Esq.
Richard Simmons, Esq.
A. Spottiswoode, Esq.
John Walker, Esq.

Subscriptions for Demy Paper Copies.

E. E. Salisbury, Esq.
George Smith, Esq.
James Whatman, Esq.
Sir Thomas Phillips, Bart.
The Imperial University, Dorpat.
The London Institution.

The Right Reverend the Lord Bishop of Calcutta.
H. J. Baxter, Esq.
Sir G. G. de H. Larpent, Bart.
William Morley, Esq.
The Rev. G. C. Renouard, M.A.
List of Works

PRINTED FOR THE ORIENTAL TRANSLATION FUND:

W. H. ALLEN & CO., LEADENHALL STREET, LONDON.

M. DUFRAT, NO. 7, RUE DU CLOÎTRE, PARIS.

N.B. The Title-pages of all works printed for the Fund are ornamented with a Vignette, bearing the motto "Ex oriente lux."

1. THE TRAVELS OF IBN BATUTA,
Translated from the abridged Arabic Manuscript Copies preserved in the Public Library of Cambridge, with NOTES, illustrative of the History, Geography, Botany, Antiquities, &c., occurring throughout the work.

By the Rev. S. LEE, B.D. Quarto, 1l.

2. MEMOIRS OF THE EMPEROR JAHANGUEIR,
Written by Himself; and Translated from a Persian Manuscript.

By Major DAVID PRICE. Quarto, 12s.

3. THE TRAVELS OF MACARIUS, PATRIARCH OF ANTIOCH,
Written by his Attendant Archdeacon, Paul of Aleppo, in Arabic.

Translated by F. C. BELFOUR, M.A.

In two Vols. Quarto, 4l.

4. HAN KOONG TSEW; or, the SORROWS of HAN:
A Chinese Tragedy, translated from the Original, with Notes, and a Specimen of the Chinese Text. By JOHN FRANCIS DAVIS, F.R.S. Quarto, 5s.
5.
HISTORY OF THE AFGHANS.
Translated from the Persian of Neamet Ullah.
By BERNHARD DORN, Ph. D. Quarto, 28s.

6.
THE FORTUNATE UNION;
A Romance, translated from the Chinese Original, with Notes and Illustrations; to which is added, a Chinese Tragedy.
By JOHN FRANCIS DAVIS, F.R.S. Two Vols. Octavo, 16s.

7.
YAKKUN NATTANNAWA;
A Cingalese Poem, descriptive of the Ceylon System of Demonology: to which is appended, the Practices of a Capua or Devil Priest, as described by a Buddhist; and KOLAN NATTANNAWA, a Cingalese Poem, descriptive of the Characters assumed by Natives of Ceylon in a Masquerade. Illustrated with Plates from Cingalese Designs.
Translated by JOHN CALLAWAY, late Missionary in Ceylon.
Octavo, 8s.

8.
THE ADVENTURES OF HATIM TAI;
A Romance, translated from the Persian, by DUNCAN FORBES, M.A.
Quarto, 16s.

9.
THE LIFE OF SHEIKH MOHAMMED ALI HAZIN,
Written by Himself: translated from two Persian Manuscripts, and illustrated with Notes explanatory of the History, Poetry, Geography, &c., which therein occur.
By F. C. BELFOUR, M.A.
Octavo, 10s. 6d. For the Persian Text of this Work, see No. 15.
10.
MEMOIRS OF A MALAYAN FAMILY,
Written by Themselves; and translated from the Original.
By W. MARSDEN. Octavo, 2s. 6d.

11.
HISTORY OF THE WAR IN BOSNIA,
During the Years 1737-8 and 9.
Translated from the Turkish, by C. FRASER. Octavo, 4s.

12.
THE MULFUZÁT TIMURY; or, AUTOBIOGRAPHICAL MEMOIRS OF THE MOGHUL EMPEROR TIMÚR.
Written in the Jagtai Turki Language; turned into Persian, by Abú Tálib Hussain; and translated into English,
By Major CHARLES STEWART,
With a Map of Transoxania. Quarto, 12s.

13.
THE HISTORY OF VARTAN, AND OF THE BATTLE OF THE ARMENIANS;
Containing an Account of the Religious Wars between the Persians and Armenians, by Elisæus, Bishop of the Amadunians.
Translated from the Armenian, by C. F. NEUMANN. Quarto, 10s.

14.
THE LIFE OF HAFIZ UL MULK, HAFIZ REH MUT KHAN,
Written by his Son Nuwáb Mustújáb Khán Bahadar; and entitled Gulistán-i-Rehmut.
Abridged and Translated from the Persian, by C. ELLIOTT, Esq. Octavo, 5s.
15.

THE LIFE OF SHEIKH MOHAMMED
ALI HAZIN,

Written by Himself; edited from two Persian Manuscripts, and noted
with their Various Readings.
By F. C. BELFOUR, M.A. Octavo, 10s. 6d.
For the English Translation of this Work, see No. 9.

16.

MISCELLANEOUS TRANSLATIONS FROM
ORIENTAL LANGUAGES.

Volume the First. Octavo, 8v.

I. Notes of a Journey into the Interior of Northern Africa. By Haji Ibn-ud-din Al-
Aghwaati. Translated from the Arabic, by W. B. Hodgson, Esq.

II. Extracts from the Sakas Thevan Saasteram, or Book of Fate. Translated from the
Tamil Language, by the Rev. Joseph Roberts.

III. The last days of Krishna and the Sons of Pandu, from the concluding Section of
the Mahabharat. Translated from the Persian Version, made by Nekkoli Khan, in the
time of the Emperor Akbar. By Major David Price.

IV. The Vedala Cadas: being the Tamil Version of a Collection of Ancient Tales in
the Sanscrit Language; popularly known throughout India, and entitled the Vedala Pan-
havinsatli. Translated by B. G. Babington, M.D.

V. Indian Cookery, as practised and described by the Natives of the East. Translated
by Sanford Arnet.

17.

THE HISTORY OF THE MARITIME WARS
OF THE TURKS;
Translated from the Turkish of Haji Khalifeh, by JAMES MITCHELL.
Part I. Quarto, 7s.

18.

TRANSLATIONS FROM THE CHINESE AND
ARMENIAN,

By CHARLES F. NEUMANN. Octavo, 12s.

I. History of the Pirates who infested the China Sea from 1607 to 1810. Translated from
the Chinese Original, with Notes and Illustrations.

II. The Catechism of the Shamans; or, the Laws and Regulations of the Priesthood of
Buddha, in China. Translated from the Chinese Original, with Notes and Illustrations.

III. Vaibram’s Chronicle of the Armenian Kingdom of Cilicia, during the time of the
Crusades. Translated from the Original Armenian, with Notes and Illustrations.
19. THE ALGEBRA OF MOHAMMED BEN MUSA, ARABIC AND ENGLISH;
Edited and translated by FREDERIC ROSEN. Octavo, 10s.

20 & 21. THE GEOGRAPHICAL WORKS OF SA'DIK ISFA-HAN'I; AND A CRITICAL ESSAY ON VARIOUS MANUSCRIPT WORKS, ARABIC AND PERSIAN;
Translated by J. C., from Original Persian MSS. in the Collection of Sir WILLIAM OUSELEY, the Editor. Octavo, 10s.

22. THE SHAH NAMEH OF THE PERSIAN POET FIRDAWSI;
Translated and Abridged in Prose and Verse, with Notes and Illustrations,
By JAMES ATKINSON, Esq. Octavo, 15s.

23. THE TEZKEREH AL VAKIAT; OR, PRIVATE MEMOIRS OF THE MOGHUL EMPEROR HUMAYUN.
Written in the Persian Language, by JOUCHER, a Confidential Domestic of His Majesty.
Translated by Major CHARLES STEWART. Quarto, 10s.

24. THE SIYAR-UL-MUTAHERIN;
A History of the Mahomedan Power in India, during the last Century,
By MIR GHOLAM HUSSEIN-KHAN.
Revised from the Translation of Haji Mustafa, and Collated with the Persian Original, by General BRIGGS. Vol. I. Octavo, 14s.

25. HOËI LAN KI; OR, L'HISTOIRE DU CERCLE DE CRAIE.
Drame en Prose et en Vers; traduit du Chinois, et accompagné de Notes,
Par STANISLAS JULIEN. Octavo, 7s.
26.
SAN KOKF TSOU RAN TO SETS; ou, APERÇU GÉNÉRAL DES TROIS ROYAUMES.
Traduit de l'Original Japonais-Chinois, par M. J. Klaproth.
(Ouvrage accompagné de Cinque Cartes.) Octavo, 15s.

27.
ANNALS OF THE TURKISH EMPIRE, FROM 1591 TO 1659 OF THE CHRISTIAN ERA;
Translated from the Turkish, by CHARLES FRASER.
Vol. I. Quarto, 17. 11s. 6d.

28.
RAGHUVANSA, KA'LIDA'SÆ CARMEN,
Sanskrité et Latiné.
Edidit ADOLPHUS FRERICUS STENZLER. Quarto, 17. 1s.

29.
CUSTOMS AND MANNERS OF THE WOMEN
OF PERSIA, AND THEIR DOMESTIC SUPERSTITIONS;
Translated from the Original Persian Manuscript.
By JAMES ATKINSON, Esq. Octavo, 5s.

30.
HISTORY OF THE EARLY KINGS OF PERSIA,
From Kaïomars, the first of the Peshdádian Dynasty, to the Conquest
of Irán by Alexander the Great.
Translated from the Original Persian of Mirkhond, entitled the Rauzat-
us-safa, with Notes and Illustrations, by DAVID SHEA. Octavo, 10s.

31.
THE TUHФAT-UL-MУJAHIDIN;
A History of the First Settlement of the Mohammedans in Malabar, and
of their subsequent Struggles with the Portuguese.
Translated from the Arabic, by Lieut. M. ROWLANDSON. Octavo, 5s.
32.
ALFIYYA;
Ou, La Quintessence de la Grammaire Arabe; Ouvrage de Djemal-ed-Edin Mohammed, connu sous le nom d’EBN-MALEC.
Publié en Original, avec un Commentaire, par LEBARON SILVESTRE DE SACY. Paris. Octavo, 8s.

33.
NARRATIVE OF TRAVELS IN EUROPE, ASIA, AND AFRICA,
In the Seventeenth Century, by EVLIYA EFENDI. Translated from the Turkish, by the RITTER JOSEPH VON HAMMER.
Part I. Quarto, 16s.

34.
A DESCRIPTION OF THE BURMESE EMPIRE;
Compiled chiefly from Native Documents, by the Rev. FATHER SANGERMANO; and Translated from his MS. by WILLIAM TANDY, D.D. Rome. Quarto, 16s.

35.
ESSAY ON THE ARCHITECTURE OF THE HINDUS.
By RĀM RĀZ, Native Judge and Magistrate at Bangalore.
With 43 Plates. Royal Quarto, 1l. 11s. 6d.

36.
ANNALES DES EMPEREURS DU JAPON;
Traduites par M. ISAAC TITSINGH.

37.
HARIVANSA;
Ou, Histoire de la Famille de Hari; Ouvrage formant un Appendice du Mahabharata; et traduit sur l’Original Sanscrit, par M. A. LANGLOIS.
Deux Tomes. Quarto, 2l. 16s.
38. MISCELLANEOUS TRANSLATIONS FROM ORIENTAL LANGUAGES.
Volume the Second. 7s.

CONTENTS.


II. An Account of the Siege and Reduction of Chaitur; by the Emperor Akbar, from the Akbar Nameh of Shaki Khan Abul Fazl. Translated by Major David Price.

III. Short History of the Secret Motives which induced Mustafa Pasha, and the Leaders of the Imperial Camp, to march from the city of Adrianople to Constantinople; with the stratagems they employed in order to depose Sultan Mustafa, and restore to the throne Sultan Selim the Martyr. Translated by Col. T. Gordon.


V. Translation of an Extract from a Horticultural Work, in Persian, by Baboo Radhakant Deb, of Calcutta.

VI. Account of the Grand Festival, held by the Amir Timur, on the Plains of Kanesh Gul, or Mine of Roses, after his return from Asia Minor, and the defeat of Iderum Bayazid, or Bajazet, A.H. 903. Translated from the Mufuzat Timuri, by Colonel Franklin.

39. THE DIDASCALIA; OR, APOSTOLICAL CONSTITUTIONS OF THE ABYSSINIAN CHURCH.
Translated from the Ethiopic, by THOMAS P. PLATT, Esq., M.A. Quarto, 10s.

40. LES ADVENTURES DE KAMRUP,

41. THE CHRONICLES OF RABBI JOSEPH BEN JOSHUA BEN MEIR, THE SPHARDI.
Translated from the Hebrew, by C. H. F. BIALLOBLOTZKY. In Two Vols. Octavo, 11. 4s.

42. THE POLITICAL AND STATISTICAL HISTORY OF GUJERAT.
Translated from the Persian, by JAMES BIRD, Esq. Octavo.
43. LE LIVRE DES RECOMPENSES ET DES PEINES.
Traduit du Chinois, par STANISLAS JULIEN. Paris. Octavo, 12s.

44. HAJI KHALFÆE LEXICON ENCYCLOPÆDICUM ET BIBLIOGRAPHICUM.

45. CHRONIQUE D’ABOU-DJAFAR MOHAMMED TABARI.

46. LAILI' AND MAJNU'N.
A Poem. From the original Persian of Nazámi. By JAMES ATKINSON, Esq., London. Octavo, 5s. 6d.

47. THE HISTORY OF THE TEMPLE OF JERUSALEM.

48. THE SÁNHKYA KA'RÍKA'; or, MEMORIAL VERSES ON THE SÁNHKYA PHILOSOPHY;
Translated from the Sanscrit, by H. T. COLEBROOKE, Esq. Also, THE BAHSHYÀ; or, COMMENTARY OF GAURAPADA;
Translated and illustrated by an original Comment. By H. H. WILSON, Esq., &c. &c. Oxford. Quarto, 10s. 6d.
49. HISTOIRE DES SULTANS MAMLAKS DE L'EGYPTE;
Ecrite en Arabe par Taki-eddin-ahmed-Makrizi:
Traduite en Francais, par M. QUATREMERE. Tome Premier.
Paris.

50. RIG VEDA SANHITA;
Sanskrit et Latin.
Edite FREDERICK AUGUSTUS ROSEN, Ph. D. Quarto, 1l. 1s.

51. KUMA'RA' SAMBHAVA;
Sanskrit et Latin.
Edite ADOLPHUS F. STENZLER. Quarto, 10s. 6d.

52. PRACTICAL PHILOSOPHY OF THE MUHAMMADAN PEOPLE,
Exhibited in its professed connexion with the European, so as to render
either an introduction to the other; being a translation of
THE AKHLAK-I-JALAILY,
The most esteemed Ethical Work of Middle Asia, from the Persian of
FAKR JANY MAHAMMAD ASAAD;
(With References and Notes) by W. F. THOMPSON.
Octavo, 15s.

53. HISTOIRE DE LA LITTERATURE HINDOUI
ET HINDOUSTANI.

54. THE VISHNU PURA'NA;
A System of Hindu Mythology and Tradition.
Translated from the original Sanscrit, and illustrated by Notes derived
chiefly from other Puranas,
By PROFESSOR WILSON. Quarto, 2l. 2s.
55. THE HISTORY OF THE MOHAMMEDAN DYNASTIES IN SPAIN;
    From the Text of Al-Makkari;
    Translated by PASCUAL DE GAYANGOS.
    In Two Vols. Quarto.

56. EL-MAS'UDI'S HISTORICAL ENCYCLOPÆDIA,
    Entitled "Meadows of Gold and Mines of Gems;"
    Translated from the Arabic by ALOYS SPRENGER, M.D.
    Vol. I. Octavo, 16s.

57. TRANSLATION OF THE SANHITA' OF THE SAMA VE'DA.
    By the Rev. J. STEVENSON, D.D. Octavo, 7s.

58. SPECIMENS OF THE POPULAR POETRY OF PERSIA.
    As found in the Adventures and Improvisations of KURROGLOU,
    the Bandit-Minstrel of Northern Persia;
    And in the Songs of the People inhabiting the Shores of the Caspian Sea.
    Orally Collected and Translated by A. CHODZKO, Esq.
    Octavo, 16s.

59. IBN KHALLIKAN'S BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.
    Translated from the Arabic by Baron MAC GUCKIN DE SLANE.
    Vols. I. and II. Quarto.

60. HISTORY OF HYDER NAIK,
    Otherwise styled NAWAUB HYDER ALI, &c., &c., &c.
    Written by MEER HUSSEIN ALI KHAN KIRMANI.
    Translated from an Original Persian MS. in the Library of Her Most
    Gracious Majesty,
    By Colonel W. MILES, of the Hon. East India Company's Service.
    Octavo, 16s.
List of Works in the Press.

Mas'udi's Meadows of Gold and Mines of Pearls; collated with several MSS., and translated by A. Sprenger, M.D.

This work, which was written in the beginning of the fourth century of the Hejira, evinces the intimate acquainances of the author with the Arabic, Persian, Coptic, and Greek literature of that time; and the ancient traditions, collected by Mas'udi during his extensive travels, which it contains, have given to it the reputation of being the best historico-geographical work in the Arabic language. Vol. II.

Haji Khalfah's Bibliographical Dictionary; translated by Professor Gustavus Flügel. Vol. IV.

This valuable Arabic work, which formed the ground-work of D'Herbelot's "Bibliothèque Orientale," contains accounts of upwards of 13,000 Arabic, Persian, and Turkish Works, arranged Alphabetically.

The Divan of the Huzailis; translated by Professor Kosegarten.

This is a Collection of ancient Arabic Poems, similar to the Hamasa. The Translation will be accompanied by the Arabic Text and Scholia.

Chronique d'Aboun-djafar Mohammed Tabari; translated by M. Dubeux. Deuxième Livraison.

A highly esteemed and very authentic History, written in Persian, containing Accounts of the Patriarchs, Prophets, Philosophers, of Mohammed and of the Khalifs.

The Khatai Nameh; translated by Dr. Fleischer.

This curious Turkish Work contains a description of China, with Accounts of its Government, Laws, &c. The Translation will be accompanied by the Original Text.

Makrizi's History of Egypt; translated by M. Quatremère. Tom. II.

An interesting portion of Makrizi's works, commencing with the fall of the descendants of Saladin.

Ibn Khallikan's Biographical Dictionary of Illustrious Men of Islamism; translated from the Arabic by Baron Mac Guckin de Slane. Vol. III.
List of Translations

PREPARING FOR PUBLICATION.

Class 1st.—THEOLOGY, ETHICS, and METAPHYSICS.

The Li-ki; translated by Professor Stanislas Julien.

This ancient Chinese Work, which is attributed to Confucius, was the original Moral and Ceremonial Code of China, and is still the principal authority on those subjects in that Empire.

A Collation of the Syriac MSS. of the New Testament, both Nestorian and Jacobite, that are accessible in England; by the Rev. Professor Lee.

This Collation will include the Various Readings of the Syriac MSS. of the New Testament in the British Museum, and the Libraries at Oxford, Cambridge, &c.

Class 2nd.—HISTORY, GEOGRAPHY, and TRAVELS.


This Arabic Work, composed by a contemporary, contains a detailed and copious account of the conquests of Sultan Mahmud of Ghazna, &c., and the successes of the Ghaznavides in Hindustan.

The Jam'i al Tawarikh, by Rashid al Din, translated by William H. Morley, Esq.

This celebrated Persian History was composed in A.H. 710. It gives a copious account of the origin of the Turks, the reigns of Changis Khan and his descendants to the author's own time; an abridged History of the Prophets, Muhammad and the Khalifs, to the year of the Hijra 700; a Chronicle of the Jews and Christian princes, and also an interesting geographical and historical description of the various countries of the earth.

This Translation will comprise the whole Work, including the previously unknown portions discovered since the year 1835.

Ibn Koteiba's History of the Arabsians; translated by Dr. J. H. Møller.

This celebrated work contains the History of the Arabsians from the time of Ismael the son of Abraham to near the end of the third century of the Mohammedan, or the ninth of the Christian era.

This celebrated Persian work comprises the Annals of Hindustan from the time of the Emperor Aurungzebe to the administration of Warren Hastings in Bengal.

The Chronicle of Abulfat’h Ibn Abulhasan Alsamari; translated by the Rev. T. Jarrett, M.A.

This rare Arabic work, of which only one perfect copy is known to be in Europe, is a History of the Samaritans from the Creation to the Middle of the Fourteenth Century.

Class 3d.—BELLES-LETTRES, BIOGRAPHY, and PHILOLOGY.

Haft Paiker, an Historical Romance of Bahram Gur; translated by the Right Hon. Sir Gore Ouseley, Bart.

This Persian Poem of Nasimi of Ganjah contains the romantic history of Bahram, the fifth of the Sassanian Dynasty of Persian Kings.

Mihr-u-Mushteri; translated by the Right Hon. Sir Gore Ouseley, Bart.

This Persian Poem, of which an abridgment will be published, was composed by Muhammad Assar; and celebrates the friendship and adventures of Mihr and Mushteri, the sons of King Shapur, and his Grand Vizier.

A Mythological, Historical, and Bibliographical Dictionary, alphabetically arranged, of the Hindu Deities, Kings, Heroes, &c., extracted chiefly from the Puranas; with Notices of the principal Works in Sanscrit Literature. By Professor Wilson.

The Siddhanta Kaumudi, or Sanscrit Grammar of Bhattoji Dikshita; translated by Professor Wilson.

The Rig Veda; translated into English, with Notes, Critical and Explanatory, by Professor Wilson.
“A book that is shut is but a block”

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY

GOVT. OF INDIA
Department of Archaeology
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book clean and moving.